INDIA OF THE BRAHMANIC AGE

4384

J. Talboys Wheeler

WITH REFERENCE TO THE RAMAYANA

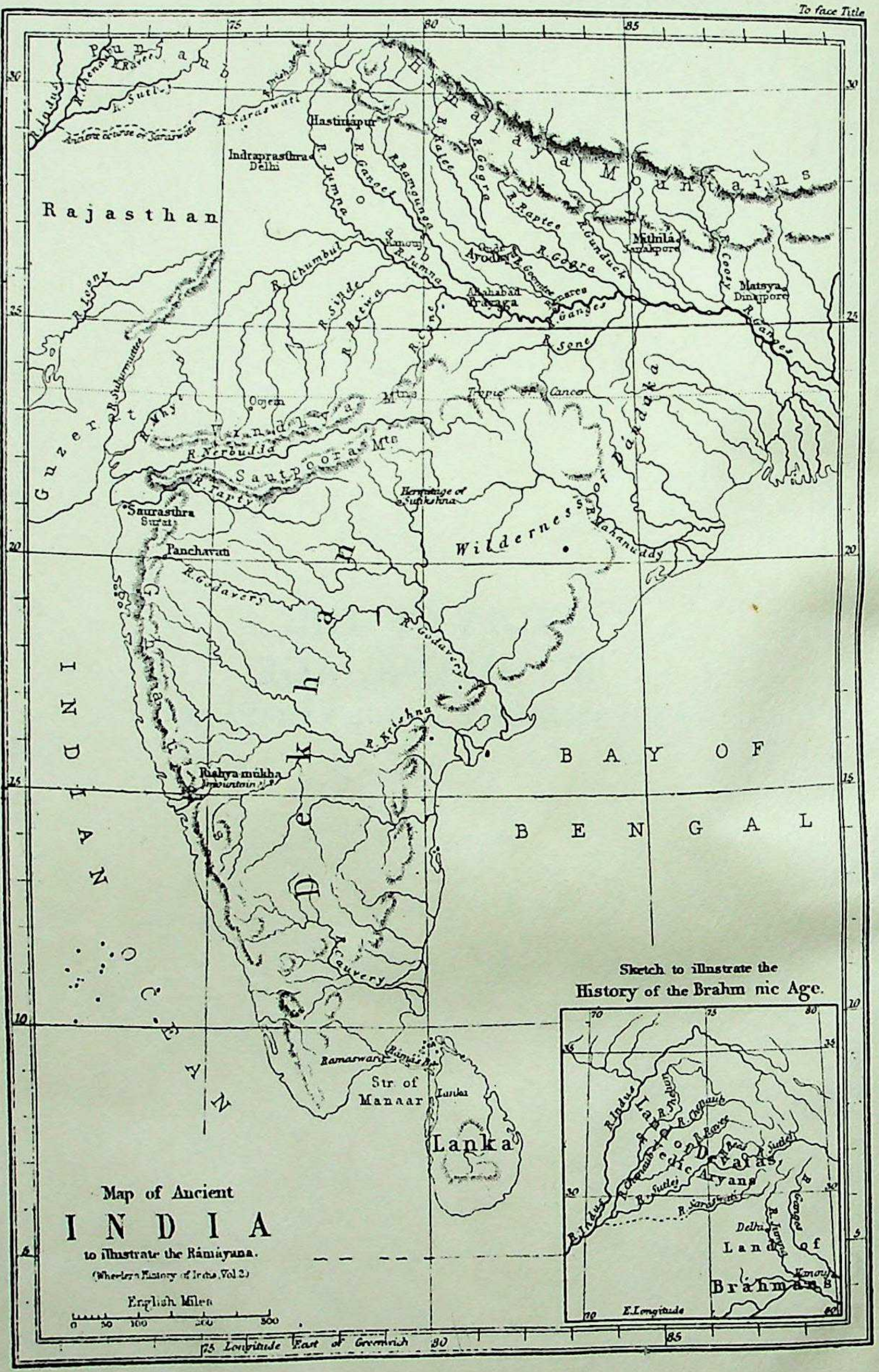
VOL. II OF THE HISTORY OF INDIA
Part II

STUDIES IN INDIAN HISTORY NO.5

INDIA OF THE BRAHMANIC AGE

WITH REFERENCE TO THE RAMAYANA

To face Title



Map of Ancient

INDIA

to illustrate the Rámáyana.

(Wheeler's History of India, Vol 2)

English Miles
0 50 100 200 500
75 Longitude East of Greenwich 80 85
Punjab
R. Indus
R. Chenaub
R. Ravee
R. Sutlej
R. Saraswati
Ancient course of Saraswati
Hastinapur
Indraprastha
Delhi
Rajasthan
R. Jumna
R. Ganges
R. Ramgunga
R. Kalee
R. Gogra
Doab
Himalaya Mountains
R. Raptee
R. Gunduck
Mithila
Janakpore
R. Coosy
Matsya
Dinajpore
Kanouj
Oude
Ayodhya
R. Goomtee
Allahabad
Prayaga
Benares
R. Chumbul
R. Sinde
R. Betwa
R. Cane
R. Sone
R. Loony
R. Suburmuttee
Tropic of Cancer
Oojein
R. Mhye
Vindhya Mts
R. Nerbudda
Sautpoora Mts
Guzerat
R. Tapty
Hermitage of Sutikshna
Wilderness of Dandaka
R. Mahanuddy
Saurashtra
Surat
Panchavati
R. Godavery
Ghauts
Dekhan
R. Krishna
Rishya mukha mountain
BAY OF BENGAL
INDIAN OCEAN
R. Cauvery
Ramaswaram
Rama's Br.
Str. of Manaar
Lanka
Sketch to illustrate the
History of the Brahm nic Age.
70 75 80 35 30
R. Indus
R. Jhelum
R. Chenaub
Land of the Vedic Aryans
R. Ravee
R. Beas
R. Sutlej
R. Saraswati
Delhi
R. Jumna
R. Ganges
Kanouj
Land of Brahmans
E. Longitude

INDIA OF THE BRAHMANIC AGE

WITH REFERENCE TO THE RAMAYANA

VOL. II OF THE HISTORY OF INDIA

Part-II

BY

J. TALBOYS WHEELER

COSMO PUBLICATIONS
DELHI 6 • INDIA
1973

COSMO PUBLICATIONS
10178 LIBRARY ROAD, DELHI-6

4384

©
First published in India 1973

State Museum Library
Lucknow

SBN 336 00406 0

Printed in India

Published by Mrs. Rani Kapoor, Cosmo Publications, 10178, Library Road, Delhi-6 and printed by K. L. Sachdeva, Skylark Printers, 11355 Id-Gah Road, New Delhi-55

CHAPTER XXII.

RÁMA'S WAR AGAINST RÁVANA.

Story of Ráma's war against Rávana, forming the second portion of the narrative of the expedition. Character of the combats

THE second portion of the narrative of Ráma's expedition against Rávana comprises the story of the actual war. The description of the combats, like the description of the great war in the Mahá Bhárata, occupies a very large space in the original poem, the narrative being interwoven with a mass of supernatural detail which has been largely cut away without damage to the narrative. Some incidents, however, have been preserved on account of their popularity amongst the Hindús, although they are otherwise devoid of historical value.

Events and scenes in the story of Ráma's war.

The principal events and scenes in Ráma's war against Rávana are as follows:—

1st, Commencement of hostilities by Ráma's army.

2nd, Great battle between the Monkeys and Rákshasas without the city.

3rd, Indrajit's first sacrifice, and confinement of Ráma and Lakshmana in the noose of snakes.

4th, Rávana takes the field in person against Ráma.

5th, The awakening and death of Kumbhakarna.

6th, Indrajit's second sacrifice and successful charge of the Monkey army.

7th, Restoration of the dead Monkeys to life.

8th, Rávana shuts himself up in Lanká.

9th, Third sacrifice and death of Indrajit.

10th, Rávana again takes the field without the city.

11th, Hanuman's adventure with Kála-nemi.

12th, Rávana's sacrifice.

13th, Final overthrow of Rávana.

The narrative of these events may now be related. It will be remembered that the armies of Monkeys and Bears are encamped without the city of Lanká, and that any hope that Ráma may have entertained of a peaceful solution of the quarrel has been frustrated by Rávana's obstinate refusal to restore Sítá. The story now proceeds as follows:—

1st, Commencement of hostilities by Ráma's army.

The Monkeys fill up the great canal.

After this Ráma said to the Chiefs of the Monkeys and Bears:—"O my Counsellors, act now as you think best." At this command the Monkeys set up a loud shout, and divided themselves into different companies, and began to fill up the great canal which surrounded the city of Lanka. As soon as the Rákshasas saw what the Monkeys were about, they went and informed Rávana; and Rávana went to the top of his palace followed by his Counsellors, and thence began to survey the whole army of Ráma. When the army saw the ten-headed Raja of the Rákshasas, they set up a loud shout as if in derision; and Rávana immediately ordered his Rákshasas to fall upon them, and a small battle took place, in which many were slain on both sides. When Ráma beheld Rávana, he took up his bow and discharged eleven arrows at him; and with one arrow he cut down his royal umbrella, and with the other ten arrows he cut the ten crowns from his ten heads.

Rama sees Rávana, and carries away his umbrella and ten crowns.

2nd, A great battle between the Rákshasas and Monkeys without the city.

Now when Rávana found that he had been deprived of his ten crowns and his royal umbrella, he was much ashamed, and he descended from the roof of his palace, and

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

ordered his army of Rákshasas to march out of the city and bring him the heads of Vibhíshana, Ráma, Sugríva, and Lakshmana. And the Rákshasas arrayed themselves for the battle, and marched out of the city into the plain; and Ráma and his army of Monkeys set out to meet them. And the two armies were arrayed against each other, and they abused each other for a long while; and at length the Monkeys attacked the Rákshasas with trees and huge stones, and the Rákshasas returned the charge with a shower of arrows. After fighting a long time, the two armies came to close quarters, and the Rákshasas gained the victory, for very many Monkeys were slain upon the field, and the remainder betook themselves to flight; but at this moment Sugríva seized a large tree by the roots, and hurled it forwards in the direction of Indrajit, the famous son of Rávana, and conqueror of Indra; and the tree crushed the chariot of Indrajit to pieces, and killed his horses and charioteer.[1]

Rout of the Monkey army.

---

[1] The story of the battle between the Rákshasas and the Monkeys is told at an interminable length in the Rámáyana. The following graphic description of the two armies, and of the encounter in the plain, which is extracted from the Adhyátma Rámáyana, will be sufficient to indicate the popular idea of the war:—"The army of demons marched out of the fort, striking up their kettledrums and warlike instruments, the sound of which resembled the thunder that will roll on the day of dissolution. Some were mounted on buffaloes, others on camels, on lions, on elephants, on asses, on hogs, on hyenas, and on wolves. Their arms consisted of swords, tridents, clubs, bows and arrows, maces, beams, spears, and various other offensive weapons. They marched forward in lines as the waves of the sea, one rolling after another, while numerous bodies remained within the walls to protect the town.

"Meantime Sugríva in obedience to the commands of Ráma had marshalled the Monkeys in ranks, and now placing himself at their head he led them forward to the attack. Some tore up trees by the roots, some carried in their arms immense rocks, while others depended on their teeth and nails, sharpened as swords for the occasion. Some had teeth like long arrows, others seemed as if they had thirty-two pointed daggers in their mouths. Thus were the Monkeys drawn up in lines according to the colour, each line consisting of ten millions in number, in complete order and array. They sounded their shells, they sang war songs on the plain, their flags and ensigns were displayed without number; each Monkey as he advanced cried out, 'Victory to Ráma!' 'Victory to Lakshmana!' 'Victory to Sugríva!' So loud were their shouts, that the sound of them was heard at the utmost extremity of the earth. Some leaped, some danced, such was their joy; each Monkey resembled a red, a white, a green, a black, or a blue mountain, according to his colour. The Chiefs, such as Raja Sugríva, Hanuman, 3rd. Indrajit's first sacrifice, and confinement of Ráma and Lakshmana in the noose of the snakes.

After this Indrajit himself took to flight, and resolved to make the offering of homa to the god of fire, before recommencing the battle. Arraying himself in red clothes and garlands of red flowers, he kindled the sacred fire with twigs of sacred trees. He then sacrificed a black goat, and taking its blood in an iron pot, he offered it as homa to Agni, and the sacrifice burned propitiously. Suddenly there came out of the fire a golden chariot drawn by four horses, and filled with every kind of weapon; and Indrajit rejoiced greatly, for he knew that when he was seated in that chariot he could see others whilst he himself remained invisible. Indrajit then mounted the chariot, and appeared before Ráma, and he discharged many arrows at Ráma and Lakshmana; and the two brothers could not perceive him, neither could they discern whence the arrows came. At last Indrajit took the noose which had been given to him by Brahma, and which was made of serpents; and he threw the noose

---

Angada, Níla, Nala, and others, beyond the power of calculation, placed themselves at the head of their respective lines. Beside them stood Ráma, the protector and supporter of them; he inspired them with a portion of his own mighty power.

"The army of Demons appointed by Rávana marched out of the Fort; the Monkeys on beholding them could not restrain their fury; they rushed forward to attack them. Some hurled trees and rocks on their foes; others confiding in their teeth, rushed on the Demons, who fought with equal fury. The battle was tremendous to the sight; the Monkeys at every blow called out, 'Ráma! Ráma!' Thousands of Monkeys fell by the hands of the Demons, thousands of Demons by the hands of the Monkeys. By each tree ten enormous giants were felled to the ground, by each rock hundreds of Demons were crushed to atoms. Some of the Monkeys springing on their enemies tore them to pieces with their teeth and nails; each party crying out, 'Strike! Strike! Kill! Kill!' The air resounded with their shouts. Millions of broken war-cars were scattered over the plain; thousands of elephants, lions, hogs, and other animals, fled about covered with blood and deprived of their riders. A river flowed from the blood of the Demons and of the Monkeys; a mountain was formed of their bodies; so great was the heap of bones and limbs as if an immense hill was formed in the sea. In this manner did the battle rage until mid-day, while Ráma looked on, and beheld his heroes and warriors active in the combat. He knew them to be incarnations of the gods, and the reflection of his favour shone upon them; through the blessing of his kindness the strength of each Monkey was extended a hundred-fold. The crime of Rávana in stealing Sítá was about to receive its merited punishment; his fortune was on the decline; when the fortune of the sovereign is lost that of his army becomes hopeless. A fourth part of Rávana's troops were slain that day on the field of battle."

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

over the two brothers, and caught them in its meshes. After a while the gods in heaven perceived the condition of Ráma, and they sent Váyu to remind him that he was Vishnu, and to advise him to call for the aid of his own Bird Garura. Váyu did as he was commanded, and Ráma then remembered the name of his Bird Garura; and Garura instantly appeared before him; and the snakes that formed the ties of the noose fled at the smell of the mighty Bird, and the two brothers were released from the toils. Then Garura rose in the air, and went his way.[2]

The gods send the Bird Garura to deliver Ráma and Lakshmana from the noose.

4th, Rávana takes the field in person against Ráma.

After this Rávana ordered his army of Rákshasas to gather together, and prepared to go out with them and do battle against Ráma. And Mandodarí, who was his favourite wife, tried to dissuade him, but he refused to hearken to her words. And he marched out of Lanká with a vast array of horsemen and footmen, and elephants and chariots, and there was a great battle;[3] and the Rákshasas discharged their arrows whilst the Monkeys hurled down trees, and stones, and mountains. And there were many single combats, and Rávana fought first with Hanuman, and then with Lakshmana, and last of all with Ráma. After a while Ráma discharged a crescent-shaped arrow which again cut off the ten crowns from the ten heads of Rávana; and Rávana was greatly ashamed, and left the field, and returned to Lanká.

---

[2] Garura is worshipped as the sacred bird upon which Vishnu is accustomed to ride. Thus it was Garura who is said to have carried Krishna from Hastinapur to Manipura after the defeat and death of Arjuna. Garura is described as a great devourer of serpents, and was father of Jatáyus, the Vulture who was slain by Rávana. The myth in the text has a religious meaning, which is not without value. Indrajit was the conqueror of Indra, but still he could only gain a temporary ascendancy over Ráma by the aid of Brahma. But Brahma is inferior to Vishnu, and consequently his noose of serpents was devoured by the bird Garura. These puerilities are a characteristic of much of the popular religious teaching amongst the Hindús. It is a curious fact that no pious Hindú will commence the story of Ráma and Lakshmana being caught in the noose, unless he is enabled to continue it to the happy conclusion when the two heroes are delivered by the snake-devouring Garura. A native friend was on one occasion interpreting the story to the author as it appears in the Bengalee version; and was taken so unwell in the middle as to be unable to proceed. He appeared, however, the next day rather earlier than usual, and finished the remainder of the incident, much to his own satisfaction, disclosing at the same time his reasons for doing so.

[3] The appearance of Rávana on this occasion is described in the Adhyátma Rámáyana in the following graphic passage:—"A thousand horses were harnessed to Rávana's car, on which he deposited various weapons, the messengers of fate. As he passed through the gates thousands of kettledrums and shells sounded on the walls, and the shouts of his followers resembled those which will be heard on the last day. Clouds of dust hid the sun from the Demons, in the like manner as Ráma is concealed from the ignorant. Rávana marched out of Lanká in great pomp, state, and magnificence; his ten heads appeared as ten mountains, his twenty eyes as dark ovens, his teeth as anvils, his twenty arms as the branches of the largest trees, his breast as a broad terrace, his belly as an enor-

5th, The awakening and death of Kumbha-karna.

Rávana then entered his Council-hall, and sat upon the throne, and he was much discomforted; and he thought upon the power of Ráma, and sighed heavily. He then sent for his Counsellors, and desired them to guard the city with the utmost vigilance; and he gave orders that his brother Kumbha-karna should be awakened from his deep sleep, saying:—"My brother Kumbha-karna is very brave and powerful, and I have no doubt but that the moment he wakes he will relieve us from the terror of Ráma: By the blessing of Brahma he sleeps for six months, and then wakes up for one day, and for that day he is invincible: Awake him, therefore, without delay: Fear him not, show him no mercy, but beat him, if it be necessary; only wake him up; for of what use can he be if he does not arise, and save us from destruction!"[4]

Extraordinary efforts to awaken Kumbha-karna.

At this command, the Rákshasas prepared enormous quantities of flesh meat, together with garlands of flowers, incense and other perfumes, and carried them to the apartment where Kumbha-karna lay sleeping. And they kindled a fire, and threw incense thereon, and began to dance and

---

mous jar, the colour of his body as a blue mountain, his eyebrows and whiskers as black serpents. On his ten heads he wore crowns of gold, studded with the richest gems. In his twenty hands he bore the following weapons:—1. A sword; 2. a shield; 3. a bow and arrows; 4. a battle-axe; 5. a trident; 6. a battering-ram; 7. a noose; 8. a wooden club; 9. a short lance; 10. a spear; 11. a bludgeon with an iron head; 12. a mace; 13. a fork; 14. a two-edged sword; 15. a poignard; 16. a dagger; 17. a javelin; 18. a tremendous scourge; 19. a circle; 20. a mace, the head of which was studded with long and sharp spikes.

[4] According to the legend Kumbha-karna had practised great austerities like his brother Rávana. Brahma then offered him a boon, upon which he asked for the power of long slumber; sleep being regarded by many Hindús as a state of happiness. After this Kumbha-karna slept for six months at a time; and at the expiration of every period awoke up and devoured an enormous meal, and then went to sleep again.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Success of the women.

sing round his bed, but still he slumbered on. Then they began to shake the gigantic Rákshasa with all their might; and some sounded the shell of triumph in his ears, whilst others beat him with all sorts of weapons, but still they could not awaken him. They then brought in a thousand elephants, and permitted them to walk over his body, but still he continued sleeping. At last they brought in a number of beautiful women, and directed them to sing and dance round his bed, and to caress him with their arms; and when he felt their gentle touch, and smelt the sweet fragrance of their lips, he began to quiver, and presently he opened his eyes, and rose up with a loud roaring.

Rage of Kumbha-karna.

His prodigious meal.

Threatens to devour the Monkeys.

Takes the field and carries away Sugriva.

Slain by Ráma.

Then Kumbha-karna, with eyes red with rage, demanded the reason of his being awakened, and the Rákshasas replied with joined hands:—"O Yuvaraja, you spend so much of your time in sleep, that you know nothing of the dangers which environ your elder brother: Arise now and satisfy your hunger." So saying, the Rákshasas spread the provisions before Kumbha-karna, and he began to make a prodigious meal. First he took an immense quantity of rice and vegetables, then in four mouthfuls he devoured a great many roasted hogs and deer, and then he ate two thousand human beings, and drank a thousand pots of wine. When he had finished, the Rákshasas informed him that the city of Lanká was threatened by two human beings and an army of Monkeys; and he cried out:—"Let me go and devour them." Then he proceeded to the Council-hall, and his stature was loftier than the walls of Lanká; and when the Monkeys saw him in the distance they were sore afraid. And Rávana told his brother Kumbha-karna all that had taken place; and Kumbha-karna rebuked him for having excited the enmity of Ráma. Nevertheless Kumbha-karna mounted his chariot, and went out against the Monkey army, and put them to rout; and he crushed Sugríva with a large stone, and carried him away in triumph to the city of Lanká. Then Kumbha-karna again took the field, and Ráma went out to meet him; and after much fighting Ráma severed the head of Kumbha-karna from his body, and the whole army of Monkeys rent the air with mighty shouts of "Victory to Ráma!"

6th, Indrajit's second sacrifice and successful charge of the Monkey army.

When Rávana heard that his brother Kumbha-karna had been slain by Ráma, he was exceedingly grieved; but his son Indrajit arose and said:—"This is not a time for idle lamentations, for your enemies are roaring at your gate like lions: Behold, I will go out myself against Ráma, and kill him and all his army." Indrajit then determined to render himself once again invisible; and he drove his chariot towards the sacrificial pit, and ordered all things to be made ready for the homa, and performed the homa with the blood of a black goat; and the fire burnt propitiously, and Agni took the offerings with his own hands; and when the sacrifice was completed, a chariot filled with all kinds of weapons came out of the fire. Indrajit then mounted the chariot and again became invisible; and he returned to the field of battle, and dismissed his army, and ascended into the air, and discharged a heavy shower of arrows upon the Monkeys; and he slaughtered thousands upon thousands, for no one could tell whence the arrows came. Then Ráma and Lakshmana fell down upon the earth, and feigned themselves to be dead, and Indrajit returned in triumph to the city of Lanká.

Ráma and Lakshmana feign to be dead.

7th, Restoration of the dead Monkeys to life.

After this, Hanuman and Vibhíshana took torches, and surveyed the army of Monkeys, and found that they had been desperately cut to pieces by the arrows of Indrajit. Some were without heads, others without legs, others without arms, many were dying from thirst, and sixty-seven crores of Monkeys were dead. Then Sushena, the physician, came up and said to Hanuman:—"Go you to the northern mountain Gandha-mádana, and bring hither four different sorts of herbs which are growing there: The first will restore the dead to life, the second will drive away all pain, the third will join the broken parts, and the fourth will heal all wounds caused by the arrows: If you bring these herbs before sunrise, Ráma and Lakshmana and the whole army will recover; but if the sun rises before you return, nothing on earth can heal them." Hanuman replied:—"By the blessing of Ráma I shall accomplish this journey." Hanuman then rose up

Hanuman's journey through the air.

to the Subala mountain and swelled out his body to a prodigious size, and ascended into the air, and with a mighty leap he passed over mountains, forests, rivers, and cities, until he came in sight of the Himalaya mountains, sparkling with gems and medicinal herbs, and he alighted upon the medicinal ridge between Kailása and Rishava. There Hanuman looked for the herbs, but he could not find them; so he took up the mountain-ridge by the roots, and carried it with all its inhabitants to the battle-field before Lanká. And Sushena found the herbs; and when Ráma and Lakshmana and the Monkey army smelled the herbs, they were all immediately healed. And Ráma praised Hanuman; and Hanuman then carried back the mountain to its proper place.[5]

Hanuman carries away the mountain by the roots.

8th, Rávana shuts himself up in Lanká.

After this Rávana said to his Counsellors:—"All the Rákshasas I send against the Monkeys are slain upon the field, and never return to Lanká; but all the Monkeys who are slain by the Rákshasas are restored to life, and are again ready for battle: Such a war profits me nothing: Shut therefore the gates of the city, and we will remain within the walls." So the gates of the city were closed, and Rávana and his Rákshasas remained within the walls. Now when Ráma saw that Rávana would not come out to battle, he commanded Hanuman and the other Chiefs of the Monkeys to go into Lanká in the night-time with lighted torches, and to set the city on fire; and the Monkey Chiefs did so.[6] Then Rávana sent out the two sons of Kumbhakarna to fight against Ráma and Lakshmana, but they were slain by Sugríva and Hanuman. Then he sent out the son

Ráma orders Hanuman to fire the city of Lanká.

---

[5] An absurd story is told in the Rámáyana, respecting the difficulty which Hanuman experienced in bringing the herbs to the battle-field before the rising of the sun, according to the direction of Sushena. Whilst Hanuman was flying through the air he perceived that the sun was about to rise. Accordingly he requested the sun to conceal its light until he should reach Lanká, saying:—"Reflect upon Ráma's will, and dread his vengeance!" The sun granted Hanuman's request, and stood still and did not rise till mid-day.

[6] This firing of Lanká seems scarcely in accordance with the previous representation of the destruction of Lanká by Hanuman's tail. But such inconsistencies are by no means unfrequent in the Hindú epics, and are easily reconciled in the national mind by the arbitrary interpretations of the commentators.

of Khara; and he was slain by an arrow which was discharged by Ráma.

9th, Third sacrifice of Indrajit

When Rávana heard that his nephews were slain, he sent once again for his favourite son Indrajit, the same who had conquered Indra; and Indrajit vowed that he would go forth to the plain, and never leave it until he had rid the world of Ráma. And his mother Mandodarí prayed him not to fight against Ráma; but he remonstrated with her, and told her not to be afraid for that he would speedily fulfil his vow. He then proceeded to a thick jungle to perform a sacrifice to the god Agni, which should ensure him the victory. But Lakshmana discovered his design, and let fly a shower of arrows at the Rákshasas who guarded the place; and the Rákshasas fled, and the Monkeys rushed in and spoilt the sacrifice. And Lakshmana and Indrajit abused each other, and then they fought for a long while, until Lakshmana took the arrow which had been given to him by Indra at the hermitage of Agastya, and repeated the proper mantras, and discharged it at his enemy; and Indrajit fell down dead, and his head was severed from his body. Then Lakshmana and all the Monkey army roared like lions and shouted:—"Victory to Ráma!" And the gods in heaven began to shower flowers upon the head of Lakshmana.

Lakshmana slays Indrajit.

10th, Rávana again takes the field without the city

When Rávana heard that his son Indrajit was dead he was seized with an agony of grief, crying out that he had now no son to perform his funeral rites. And he ordered his army of Rákshasas to make ready, and early on the morning of the new moon he marched out of the city; and he pressed through the Monkey army until he approached Ráma and Lakshmana. Then Rávana and Ráma abused each other for awhile, and at last fell too desperately; and they discharged arrows at each other which broke up chariots, or turned back other arrows, or possessed many wonderful powers which were marvellous to behold. Some arrows impelled an enemy to sleep, or to sing, or to dance, or to swoon away, or rendered him hungry or athirst; some had terrible mouths, such as the mouths of tigers, lions, bears, crows,

Combat between Rávana and Ráma.

Extraordinary arrows.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

jackals, dogs, vultures, herons, and hogs; some produced strange things, such as peacocks, snakes, Garuras, wind, water, fire, or rocks; some were shaped like the sun, whilst others resembled bells, comets, monkeys, maces, chakras, knives, swords, and hatchets. At length, after much fighting, Rávana took up a mace which had been obtained by virtue of a sacrifice, and was infallible. And Rávana threw this mace at Lakshmana, and it pierced his breast, and pinned him to the ground; and none of the Monkeys, nor Ráma himself, could draw out the mace from the heart of Lakshmana. Ráma then fought against Rávana, and compelled him to return to his city of Lanká.

Rávana pins Lakshmana to the earth with his infallible mace.

11th, Hanuman's adventure with Kála-nemi.

When it was midnight, Hanuman, at the request of the physician Sushena, set out once again to bring medicinal herbs before sun-rise from the mountain Gandha-mádana, which should recover Lakshmana; and a Rákshasa spy carried the news to Rávana. Then Rávana sent for his uncle Kála-nemi, and said:—"If you can put Hanuman to death I will reward you with the half of my Raj." And Kála-nemi went that moment to the Gandha-mádana mountain, and assumed the form of a devotee, and created a magic hermitage upon the mountain.[7] Meantime Hanuman was passing through the air, and soon reached the place called Nandigráma, which was without the city of Ayodhyá; and he saw Bharata there mourning the absence of his beloved Ráma; all else were asleep, but Bharata was awake, and was fanning the sandal of Ráma. Bharata saw Hanuman pass through the air, and would have shot an arrow at the strange animal; but Hanuman called out who he was, and told Bharata all that had taken place, and then went his way to the mountain.

Kála-nemi proceeds to the mountain and creates a magic hermitage.

Hanuman's adventure with Bharata at Nundigráma.

---

[7] The magic hermitage is thus described in the Adhyátma Rámáyana:—"Fruit trees and flowers of every kind and colour sprang up at his command to form an enchanting garden, and birds of every hue flew about chaunting the praises of Ráma. Kála-nemi assumed the form of a man rigorously devout, and by the force of charms he created others similar to himself, whom he stationed in various parts under the appearance of being employed in devotion. Some seemed to be deeply engaged in religious meditation, some in ceremonies of worship, others in reading holy books; some were praying over rosaries consisting of a thousand beads, and some entirely naked were employed in various occupations; in this manner he waited in expectation of Hanuman's arrival."

Kála-nemi plots Hanuman's death by a crocodile.

Now when Hanuman set his foot upon the mountain, he beheld the hermitage of Kála-nemi, and perceived Kála-nemi seated like a devotee upon a deer-skin, absorbed in meditation, with various rosaries round his neck, his body smeared with ashes, and his eyes closed. A form of the Linga was before him, so that Hanuman supposed that he was a devout sage worshipping the Linga. Presently Kála-nemi opened his eyes and beheld Hanuman, and welcomed him as his guest, and conducted him to his hermitage; but Hanuman would neither take food nor drink, but would only bathe in the pond which was near. Then Hanuman dipped his foot into the water, and it was seized by a crocodile; but he jumped out of the water and killed the crocodile; upon which a lovely figure arose from the body of the fish, and assumed the form of a beautiful Apsara, and told him how she had offended the sage Daksha by her pride, and had been cursed by him that she should become a crocodile until she should be delivered by Hanuman. She then thanked Hanuman for her deliverance, and bade him beware of Kála-nemi, and then took her leave and ascended to heaven.

Hanuman kills the crocodile.

Legend of the crocodile.

Meantime Kála-nemi being assured of the death of Hanuman, was pondering over the division of the Raj of Lanká, which had been promised to him by Rávana; when Hanuman suddenly appeared before him and said:—"O you false hermit, I know who you are; there is no use in your disguising yourself any more." So saying, Hanuman took him by the feet, and hurled him round his head, and suddenly let him loose; and he flew through the air, and fell before the throne of Rávana in the Council-hall of Lanká, to the utter surprise of Rávana and his Counsellors.[8]

Hanuman hurls Kála-nemi into the Council-hall of Rávana.

Meantime Hanuman had searched the mountain for the medicinal herbs, but could not find them; and he took up the whole mountain as before, and carried it to Sushena;

Hanuman carries away the mountain a second time.

---

[8] Kála-nemi is a Hindú Alnaschar. He counts upon the pleasure he shall enjoy when taking half the Raj, without considering that Hanuman may be still alive. To this day when a Hindú thinks of future profit without being sure that he will get it, he is often compared with Kála-nemi.

Lakshmana healed.

and Sushena took the herbs, and beat them into a paste, and put it to the nose of Lakshmana, and he was immediately healed as before. Then all the Monkeys shouted aloud :—"Victory to Ráma!"

12th, Rávana's sacrifice with closed doors.

After this Rávana sent several warriors, one after the other, against Ráma, but they were all slain; and he determined to go himself once again, and take the field against Ráma. But before going forth he went with joined hands to Súkra, who was the preceptor of the Rákshasas, and implored his aid; and Súkra taught him certain mantras, and directed him to offer sacrifice in a secret place, and repeat the mantras, whereupon certain weapons would come out of the fire, and render him invincible; but Súkra warned him that he must observe a strict silence throughout, or the sacrifice would be devoid of all power. So Rávana returned to his palace, and ordered that the gates should be shut; and he went to his own apartment, and placed guards all round it, and carried the sacrificial materials into the room, and barred and locked the doors; and he dug a large hole in the centre of the room, and commenced the ceremony. Meantime Ráma was informed by spies what his enemy was about to do; and he commanded Angada and Hanuman to go with an army of Monkeys, and obstruct the sacrifice. Then the Monkeys swarmed into Lanká, and forced their way into the palace, and defeated the Rákshasa guards, and broke open the doors of the Raja's apartment, and assailed Rávana on all sides, but still he persevered in the sacrifice. Then Angada went to the inner apartment, and seizing Mandodarí by the hair, he dragged her into the presence of Rávana, and ill-treated her before his face; and Mandodarí began to cry aloud for help, saying :—"Behold the difference between you and your enemy Ráma! See what he is doing for the sake of his wife, and what you are doing, while your own wife is being hurt and insulted?" At these words Rávana was aroused, and he abandoned the sacrifice, and drew his sword and struck a blow at Angada; and Angada having spoiled the sacrifice, relinquished his hold of Mandodarí, and returned with the other Monkeys to Ráma.

The Monkeys break open Rávana's apartment.

Angada ill-treats Mandodarí.

Rávana abandons the sacrifice.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Then Mandodarí again implored her husband to make his submission to Ráma, but he was still inexorable, and resolute to take the field.

14th, Final overthrow of Rávana.

Rávana cursed by Súrpa-nakha.

Rávana reaches Ráma.

Indra sends his own chariot to Ráma.

Combat between Rávana and Ráma.

Second combat.

Ráma cuts off Rávana's heads without effect.

Ráma kills Rávana with a Brahma arrow.

The gods praise Ráma as Vishnu.

Now, when Rávana was going forth to the battle, he met his sister Surpa-nakhá, and turned away from her; and she was enraged, and cursed him, saying:—"As you have turned away from me without sufficient cause, you shall never again return from the field of battle." But Rávana heeded not her words, but went forward in his chariot, and drove the Monkey army before him, until he came into the presence of Ráma; and the god Indra, looking down from heaven, and seeing that Ráma was without a chariot, sent him his own chariot with Matáli for his charioteer, together with his own armour and weapons. Then Ráma and Rávana fought on equal terms for a long while, and sometimes the victory inclined to the side of Rávana, and sometimes to the side of Ráma. At last Rávana became fatigued, and could no longer draw his bow, and he dropped down in his chariot, and his charioteer seeing him in that condition drove him back towards Lanká. When Rávana recovered his senses, he ordered his charioteer to return to the field, and there he renewed the battle with Ráma; and the conflict became very desperate. At length after much fighting, Ráma took up a sharp arrow and cut off one of Rávana's heads; but no sooner did the head fall upon the ground than another sprung up in its room. When they had fought together this way without intermission for seven days and nights, Matáli the charioteer advised Ráma to take up the Brahma arrow and discharge it at Rávana, as Rávana was destined to die by no other weapon. Accordingly Ráma took from his quiver the arrow which Brahma had made in former times from the spirit of all the gods, and which Indra had left for Ráma in the hermitage of Agastya. Ráma then propitiated the Brahma arrow by suitable mantras, and discharged it at Rávana; and it entered his breast, and came out of his back, and went to the ocean and washed itself, and then returned to the quiver of Ráma. Meanwhile Rávana fell to the ground and expired; and the gods sounded celestial music in the heavens, and assembled in the sky, and praised Ráma as Vishnu, in that he had slain that evil Rávana, who would otherwise have caused their destruction.[9]

Review of the foregoing narrative of Ráma's war against Rávana.

Character of the war.

The scenes in the foregoing narrative of the war between Ráma and Rávana, the besiegers and the besieged, can be realized with comparative ease. The armies of Ráma were encamped upon a plain or maidan without the city, and there the battles appear to have taken place; whilst Rávana remained within the city, where he directed the sorties which were made by the Rákshasa army, and overlooked the combats from the roof of his palace. When, however, Ráma and Lakshmana escaped from the noose of Indrajit, Rávana took the field in person, and engaged in turns with Hanuman, Lakshmana, and Ráma; but he seems to have suffered so much on that occasion that he did not again go without the city walls until his cause had been rendered desperate by the deaths of his brother Kumbha-karna and his son Indrajit.

---

[9] The rejoicings on the death of Rávana are thus described in the Adhyátma Rámáyana:—"The shout of victory, and the cry of 'May thy prosperity endure for ever,' resounded through the conquering armies. They erected their tails in triumph, and laughing and rejoicing they danced around. The gods showered down parijata flowers on Ráma and beat their kettledrums; the Gandharvas struck up their musical instruments; the Apsaras danced before Ráma. The gods who had experienced great oppression and injustice from Rávana rehearsed the praises of Ráma; their joy was unbounded. During this period, a small flame, bright as the sun, issued from the mouth of Rávana, and in the sight of all present it entered into Ráma's foot. The gods then descended to the plain and paid, their adorations to Ráma, saying:—'Praise and glory be to thee, O Lord! blessings everlasting be upon thy Monkeys; we this day have been relieved from the hand of the oppressor, we are restored to new life.' They communed, however, among themselves, saying:—'This Rávana was the destroyer of the sages and of the Bráhmans who worshipped God, the persecutor of the gods, the violator of other men's wives; there never yet has been, nor will there ever be any one who committed such enormous crimes, yet have we seen his soul enter into the foot of Ráma, to obtain that distinguished degree of salvation which those who pass myriads of ages in worship and in meditation cannot hope to acquire. How can we account for this wonderful event?' Nárada, the sage, who had attended to their conversation, then addressed the gods as follows:—

"'Listen to me, ye spirits of heaven! while I explain this circumstance. Rávana, though outwardly bearing the appearance of enmity towards Ráma, ever worshipped him in his heart, and remembered his name. He listened with pious attention to the history of Ráma's wondrous works; he feared him; he has this day received his death from the hand of Ráma: On his soul's quitting his mortal frame he beheld the full form of Ráma standing before him, and his sins, how great soever they might be, were remitted: It ought not to be a matter of surprise that he should obtain so distinguished a mark of salvation: If any one, casting an evil eye on the possessions and on the wives of others, through fear or faith pronounces the name of Ráma, he will instantaneously be purified from sin, and at his death he will find a place prepared for him in an abode difficult even for the gods to reach. Such will be his fate who utters the name of Ráma; of the truth of this circumstance there cannot exist a doubt.'

"Ráma, having exterminated Rávana, stood on the plain in the height of beauty and of glory. In his left hand he held his bow, in his right an arrow which he was returning to the quiver. His hair, braided in a knot on the crown of his head, adorned his forehead, and the splendour of his countenance surpassed the light of the sun and moon."

Rávana's reluctance to take the field.

Number of single combats.

The battles in general, like those in the Mahá Bhárata, involve a large number of single combats, in which most of the exploits performed are of a supernatural character.

Weapons endowed with supernatural powers.

Many weapons are also used which are said to have been endowed by the gods with supernatural powers. In this direction indeed the Hindú bard has indulged in marvellous flights of fancy.

The noose of snakes.

Ráma and Lakshmana are said to have been caught in a noose which was made of snakes, from which they are delivered by a sacred bird, who is known in India as a devourer of snakes, and who is invested with a divine character as the vehicle of the god Vishnu.

Fantastically-shaped arrows.

Arrows are described of the most fantastic forms. One shaped like a mace pierces the breast of Lakshmana; another shaped like a crescent carries away the ten crowns of Rávana.

Utterance of mantras over the arrows.

Mantras or incantations are uttered over the charmed arrow before it is discharged; a superstitious practice which is evidently of Brahmanical or priestly origin. The consecration of weapons by divine rites, and the utterance of spells or prayers over the consecrated arms, are customs which would naturally exist amongst a credulous and priest-ridden people; inasmuch as they directly tend to increase the power of the priestly hierarchy, and to establish their authority over the warrior class of the community. Besides the belief in the efficacy of mantras, there appears to have been another belief which was equally well calculated to exalt the authority of the priesthood; namely, faith in the efficacy of certain sacrifices to secure the victory over an enemy. In this respect the sacrifices offered by Indrajit and Rávana are very remarkable; and it should be borne in mind that these warriors perform such religious rites, not as patriarchal heads of a family or community, but as actual Bráhmans, the descendants of the sage Pulastya. As regards, however, Indrajit's offering of the blood of a black goat to Agni, the deity of fire, there appears to be some difficulty. In the hymns of the Rig-Veda there seems to be no reference to the sacrifice of goats to Agni, but only to the presentation of such simple offerings as ghee, soma wine, cakes, parched barley, and other similar materials. In all probability the deity to whom blood offerings were made was a god or goddess of war, who is generally supposed to delight in slaughter, and who consequently may be propitiated by the sacrifice of animals or even of human beings. Such practices were not unknown to the ancient Syrians, as is evidenced by the horrible story of the King of Moab, who offered up his eldest son as a burnt-offering upon the city wall in the presence of a besieging army. In India such offerings have been generally made to Kálí, the most blood-thirsty deity in the Hindú pantheon; and it may be remembered that during Hyder's war against the

Belief in the efficacy of sacrifice to insure victory.

Sacrifices performed by Indrajit and Rávana in virtue of their being Brahmans.

Indrajit's sacrifice to to Agni.

Probable substitution of Agni for Kálí.

Human sacrifices in ancient times.

Offering of human heads to Kálí.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Poligars in the neighbourhood of Mysore, the Poligar of Chittledroog had set up a shrine to Kálí on the highest part of his citadel, to whom the heads of slaughtered enemies were offered in profusion, in the firm belief that so long as these bloody offerings were duly made, the place could never fall.

Agni substituted as the deity who can render himself invisible.

The substitution of Agni for Kálí in the sacrifices of Indrajit is also rendered probable by the following circumstances. According to the fancy of the Hindú bard, the sacrifices of Indrajit were performed, not so much for the direct purpose of ensuring victory, as for that of rendering himself invisible during his attacks upon Ráma's army. The god of fire is not merely the deity who blazes at the domestic hearth, or upon the sacrificial altar; but the deity of light of every description, who sometimes in the form of lightning conceals himself in the clouds, and thus renders himself invisible. Consequently, as the poet represented Indrajit as becoming invisible through the efficacy of sacrifice, it was necessary to represent him as sacrificing not to the deity of war, but to that god who possessed the power of rendering himself invisible. The sacrifice of Rávana seems to have referred more directly to victory; and its efficacy was evidently admitted by Ráma, inasmuch as its performance excited Ráma's alarm; and every effort was made for its obstruction.

Indrajit sacrifices for the purpose of becoming invisible.

Rávana's sacrifice.

Authority of the priesthood increased by the belief in the efficacy of sacrifice.

Modification of the belief in modern times.

A belief in the power of sacrifice to secure victory must have added largely to the authority and influence of the priesthood in ancient times. In the present day it is explained that such power has been neutralized by the national transgressions; that it has in a great measure passed away on account of the growing want of respect for the Brahmanical caste, and to the increasing disregard of caste observances and other rules and regulations insisted upon by the Sástras. Indeed there seems to be no other way from an Hindú point of view by which it is possible to account for the inefficacy of Brahmanical sacrifices in the face of British Artillery and bayonets. But in olden time, when the Kshatriyas were a conquering race, the belief in the efficacy of sacrifice was universal and unquestioned; and thus it is that the obstruction of Rávana's sacrifice is regarded as one of the most critical scenes in the narrative of the war.

Ancient belief.

Popularity of the story of the awakening of Kumbha-karna.

The story of the awakening of Kumbha-karna is chiefly remarkable on account of its extreme popularity with the Hindus. In all dramatic representations of the siege of Lanká, the huge slumbering giant is one of the favourite characters; and in this respect he is almost a rival to Hanuman with the burning tail. Indeed immoderate powers of eating or sleeping have always been a subject of mirth with a primitive people; and Kumbha-karna is a pantomimic exaggeration of both capacities, which never fails to bring down shouts of laughter from young and old.

Capacity for eating and sleeping a subject of popular mirth.

It is however by no means improbable that the episode of Kumbha-karna was originally intended as a satirical hit at the Buddhist dogma of Nirvána; and that the heavy slumbers of the gluttonous giant are a caricature of that state of eternal rest for the soul, which in the teachings of Sákya Muni was represented as the acme of felicity, and the final aim of every true follower of Buddha.

The remaining portion of the narrative is so largely mixed up with supernatural matter, that

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

much of what has been retained might have been omitted from the present version without detriment to the story. Glimpses of the original tradition are however occasionally perceptible, as in the account of the ill-treatment of the wife of Rávana by the Monkeys, which is related with considerable amplifications in the Rámáyana. Moreover, notwithstanding the mythical character of many of the incidents, they are deeply enshrined in the memories of the Hindú people; and consequently serve as illustrations of that love of the marvellous, which is peculiar to an ignorant and credulous population, and which has indeed been carried to such an extent as to induce some European critics to dismiss the whole mass of Hindú legend as mere fable or allegory.

CHAPTER XXIII.

TRIUMPHANT RETURN OF RÁMA.

Death of Rávana the climax of the story of the Rámáyana.

Natural ending according to European ideas.

Difficulty as regards Sítá's purity after her imprisonment in the palace of Rávana.

The story of the Rámáyana reaches its climax in the death of Rávana. The women of the deceased Raja indulge in bitter lamentations over the remains of their departed lord; but otherwise the air is filled with the rejoicings of gods and men and all living creatures, who alike exult in the downfal of Rávana and the victory of Ráma. Here, according to European ideas, the poem would be brought to a natural conclusion with the restoration of the faithful wife to her devoted husband, and the triumphant return of the happy pair to the city of Ayodhyá, there to be enthroned as Raja and Rání. But one hidden sore still remained, which may have had its origin in some Brahmanical scruple of the Hindú bard, but which more probably found a place in the original tradition, and festered as a sad reality in the jealous breast of Ráma. Sítá, although really as pure as snow, had nevertheless resided many months in the palace of Rávana, and had been touched, however involuntarily, by a man who was not her husband. The ideas of physical chastity which prevail amongst the Hindus have already been indicated; and now they will receive a further illustratration from the cruel coldness which Ráma exhibited for a while towards his faithful and devoted wife. In this portion of the story the estrangement is said to have been only of a temporary character; and after a touching ordeal Ráma took Sítá to his bosom, and the royal pair proceeded in joy and triumph to the city of Ayodhyá. How far this happiness proved to be lasting will be gathered from the subsequent chapter.

Narrative of the ordeal of Sítá and return to Ayodhyá.

The narrative of the ordeal of Sítá, and the triumphant return of Ráma and Sítá to the city of Ayodhyá, may now be related as follows :—

Lamentations of Vibhíshana.

Lamentations of the widows of Rávana.

When Vibhíshana saw that his brother Rávana was slain, he fell down by the dead body, and began to lament loudly. Meanwhile the tidings that Rávana was dead reached the inner apartments of the palace at Lanká; and all the wives of Rávana came out of the palace with dishevelled hair and loose garments, and went out of the northern gate of the city, beating their breasts with their hands. When the women saw the dead body of Rávana lying prostrate upon the ground, they fainted away, but after some time they recovered, and began to caress him as though he had been alive. One would embrace him, another would take up one of his arms, and put it round her neck, another would put his hand to her breast, another would place his feet upon her bosom, another placed one of his heads in her lap, whilst others laid their heads upon his breast. All of them then began to cry :—"What miserable wretches are we to lose such a husband!" Whilst the lamentations of Mandodarí, who was the chief Rání, rose above them all. And Ráma was touched by her sorrow, and desired Vibhíshana to take the women back to the inner apartments, and to perform the funeral rites for his brother Rávana. And Vibhíshana took away the women, and returned to Ráma, and said :—"This Rávana was my enemy; he kicked me before all his Council, and I have therefore no desire to perform his funeral ceremony." Ráma replied :—"I am much grieved to hear these words

Lamentations of Mandodarí. Vibhíshana removes the widows of Rávana.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

from you: Rávana is now dead, and he is therefore no longer your enemy, but your elder brother, and it is proper for you to perform all his funeral rites." So Vibhíshana listened to the commands of Ráma, and performed all the funeral ceremonies of his elder brother Rávana, with the grandeur and magnificence which befitted the Raja of Lanká.

Vibhíshana performs the funeral rites.

Installation of Vibhíshana in the Raj of Lanká.

When the days of the mourning were over, Ráma threw off his war-dress, and dismissed Mátali with sweet words, and directed him to drive back the chariot of Indra to his master. He then commanded that Vibhíshana should be installed Raja of Lanká; and when this was done, he requested Vihhíshana to bring Sítá from the Asoka garden. Then Vibhíshana went away in great delight, and commanded thousands of women to attend upon Sítá, and to dress and adorn her. When all was ready, a litter was brought to the entrance of the Asoka garden, and Sítá took leave of Saramá, the wife of Vibhíshana, who had attended upon her ever since her own husband had been exiled by Rávana. And Sítá spoke affectionately to Saramá, and gave thanks for all the services and favours which Saramá had rendered her during her captivity. Sítá then took leave of the other women, and entered the litter, and in this manner she was carried from the Asoka garden to the plain without the city. Now as the litter approached the camp of Ráma, all the Monkeys gathered round to see Sítá; and Ráma commanded that she should alight and walk, so that the Monkeys could see her; and Sítá did so. When Sítá entered the presence of Ráma, she stood with joined hands, and bowed down to his feet; but Ráma heeded her not, and spoke with harsh words, saying:—"I have killed all my enemies, and I have delivered you from captivity; and now that I have removed my shame I care not to behold you: I can never again receive you as my wife, for you have lived in the house of Rávana."

Vibhíshana conducts Sítá to Ráma.

Sítá's parting with Saramá.

Sítá enters the presence of Ráma on foot.

Ráma's cruel words.

Sítá's appeal.

At these cruel words of Ráma, the eyes of Sítá became red with fire, and raising her moonlike face, she said:—"O Maháraja, I do not deserve the harsh language which you have uttered to me: I swear by my own virtue that I am chaste and unpolluted: If you had formed a wish to cast me aside, you should have told me so long ago, that I might have put myself to death, and thus have been spared this indignity."

Sítá requests Lakshmana to prepare a funeral pile.

Sítá then turned to Lakshmana and said:—"O you, who are the younger brother of my husband! prepare for me a funeral pile that I may put an end to all my sorrows by entering the fire." Lakshmana looked at Ráma for his commands, and Ráma assented; and Lakshmana prepared a funeral pile, and set it on fire. Then Sítá offered up her prayers to Agni, to Ráma, to her father and mother, and then to the father and mother of her husband; and she entered the fire in the presence of all the inhabitants of Lanká and the whole Monkey army. Then all present reproached Ráma, and Ráma became lost in grief, and his mind wavered to and fro, and he said:—"Mad with rage I have committed a great sin: Having delivered Sítá after so much trouble and pains, I have become the cause of her untimely death: I reproached her for nothing: I shall never find such a faithful wife again." At this moment the gods and the Gandharvas appeared in the air, and Ráma beheld his own father Dasaratha amongst them; and Ráma bowed down his head to the gods. Then, whilst all were gazing upon the funeral pile, the god Agni came forth out of the flame, bearing Sítá upon his knees as his own daughter; and she was more beautiful than ever she had been before. And Agni gave her to Ráma, and said:—"Take her as your wife! She is without a stain! I know the hearts of all, and had she the shadow of a stain upon her chastity, she would never have passed in safety from me." And Ráma took his wife, and said:—"I knew that my beloved Sítá was chaste and true, but I put her to the test lest men should blame me, and now I am free from all censure." And Ráma took Sítá by the hand, and made her sit upon his left side upon his own throne; and Hanuman offered flowers to Ráma and Sítá, and all the Monkeys and all the gods did the same.[1] After this Dasaratha pronounced

Sítá offers up her prayers and enters the fire.

Ráma's remorse.

Sudden appearance of the gods and Ráma's father Dasaratha.

Agni bears Sítá upon his knees and attests her purity.

Ráma receives Sítá as his wife.

---

[1] The story of Sítá's ordeal is somewhat differently told in the Adhyátma

blessings on his son Ráma, and then returned accompanied by the gods to the abodes of bliss.

Ráma prepares to return to Ayodhyá in the Pushpaka chariot.

Next morning Vibhíshana, who was now Raja of Lanká, prayed Ráma to abide for a while in that city; but Ráma said:—"My exile of fourteen years is drawing to a close, and I must return with all speed to Ayodhyá: My brother

---

Rámáyana, as will be seen from the following extract:—"Sítá burst into tears at the unkind expressions of Ráma, who then said to Lakshmana:—'Prepare without delay a large fire that I may cast Sítá into it to prove her chastity, and whether she has continued continent; she has dwelt a long time in the house of a Demon; it is therefore necessary that the purity of her mind and body should be ascertained.'

"Lakshmana, conceiving Ráma's design, prepared a fire, and when ready he informed him, on which Ráma remained silent. Sítá, acquainted also with her husband's intentions, rose up and having made her obeisance to Ráma she advanced towards the fire. The gods assembled in the heavens; the Monkeys and inhabitants of Lanká stood by the fire to behold the event; the Bráhmans and others of the four castes looked on. Sítá then raising her hands bowed to the spectators. She approached the flames, and paying her adorations to the god of Fire, she thus addressed him:—'Thou, Fire! art comprehended and included in all things in this world; from thee nothing can be concealed: If I have never erred in thought, word, or deed; if the recollection of Ráma has never even for an instant strayed from my mind; if my tongue has never ceased pronouncing his name; if I have never entertained a thought of any other man but Ráma; if all that I have said be just and true, I shall enter into and pass through thy element without sustaining the least injury: I call on thee, god of Fire! to bear witness to my truth, and to do away that shame which has fallen on me.' Having thus spoken she entered into the fire with undaunted steps. There is nothing in this world that purifies equal to fire. The gods from the heavens beheld with astonishment this wonderful event; they said to each other:—'Let us bear witness to the chastity and purity of Sítá, that her sorrows may be done away, and that the praises of Ráma's name may be spread abroad throughout all ages.'

"The thirty-three crores of the celestial spirits assembled in the heavens to behold the ordeal of Sítá's chastity, and sung the praises of Ráma. Brahma then rehearsed from his four mouths the noble endowments and praises of Ráma. When Brahma had concluded the repetition of Ráma's praises, the god of Fire rose from the flames, bearing Sítá on his knees, as if she had been his daughter, clothed in red garments and adorned with jewels. The god of Fire advanced towards Ráma, who is the witness and observer of the universe, and who had appointed him to prove the chastity of Sítá, and thus addressed him:—'Thou, O Lord! didst entrust the real Sítá to my care; thou didst through thine own power create a delusive form resembling her, which form Rávana carried off. Him hast thou slain with his children and his kindred; thou hast rendered light the burden of the world. The fictitious form has disappeared; receive from my hands the real Sítá, whom thou didst confide to my care.' Ráma then paid his adorations to the god of Fire, from whose hands he joyfully received his beloved Sítá. He placed her on his knee, and clasped her with sincere affection to his bosom. The gods beholding the joy of Ráma filled the heavens with their acclamations, and each god came in turn and paid his adorations to Ráma."

Bharata has vowed that he will enter the fire unless I return immediately after my exile has been fulfilled." After this Ráma commanded Lakshmana to destroy the bridge of rocks, lest there should be constant strife between the people of the Island and the people of the Main. And Ráma ordered the Pashpaka chariot to be made ready, in order that he might return to Ayodhyá with his wife Sítá. Then Sugríva and all the Monkeys, and Vibhíshana and all the Rákshasas, prayed Ráma that they might behold his inauguration at Ayodhyá; and Ráma bade them all ascend the Pushpaka chariot,[2] and he mounted the chariot likewise, together with his beloved Sítá, and the chariot rose high in the air, and flew towards the north. And Ráma described to Sítá the field of battle in which he had fought against Rávana; and he pointed out to her all the places whither he had journeyed from the day when Rávana carried her away from the hermitage at Panchavatí.

The Monkeys and Rákshasas accompany Ráma.

Ráma describes his adventures to Sítá.

Ráma arrives at the hermitage of Bharadwája.

Now on the fifth day, after the expiration of the fourteen years of Ráma's exile, the chariot Pushpaka arrived at the hermitage of the sage Bharadwája, which was at Prayága, near the Chitra-kúta mountain; and the sage welcomed Ráma, and informed him how his brother Bharata passed his days in a pit without the city of Ayodhyá, reigning in the presence of Ráma's shoes, subsisting on fruits and roots, lying on the bare earth, and allowing the hair of his head to grow into knots. Bharadwája also informed Ráma that Bharata would put himself to death on the morrow unless he heard that his elder brother was returning to Ayodhyá; so Ráma sent a swift messenger to inform him of his arrival, and prevent his entering the fire.

Bharadwája entertains Ráma.

Then the sage Bharadwája summoned the divine architect Viswakarma, and desired him to prepare lodgings and entertainment for all the Monkeys and Bears. The sage then conducted Ráma, Lakshmana, and Sítá, to his own hut, and set before them fruits, roots, and water; for Ráma refused to partake of sweetmeats until he had seen his brother Bharata.[3]

---

[2] The chariot named Pushpaka had been originally obtained by Kuvera from the great god Síva, as the reward of his austerities, but Rávana had deprived Kuvera of the chariot and appropriated it to his own use.

Joy of Raja Guha at hearing of Ráma's arrival.

Next morning Ráma despatched Hanuman to inform Guha, the Bhíl Raja, of his arrival, and also to go on to Ayodhyá, and carry the glad tidings to Bharata. Then Hanuman went his way and told Guha of the coming of Ráma; and Guha gave himself up to delight, and his whole city was filled with rejoicings. Hanuman then proceeded with all speed to Ayodhyá, and Ráma followed shortly afterwards, and was received with all joy by Guha, and then took his leave and departed for Ayodhyá.

---

[3] The entertainment of the Monkeys and Bears at the hermitage of Bharadwája occupies an important place in the Bengali version of the Rámáyana, and may be reproduced here as a curious illustration of the modern Hindú sense of humour:—

"Now Viswakarma prepared the lodgings for the Monkeys and Bears in the twinkling of an eye. And hundreds of beautiful damsels went forth to attend upon the guests; but the Monkeys and Bears were affrighted at them, and fled away, and climbed the trees and began to grin. The damsels then pacified them, saying:—'Why are you fearful of us? At the command of Bharadwája we have come hither to attend upon you: Bathe yourselves therefore, and array yourselves in the rich apparel and ornaments we have brought for you: Then eat and drink to your heart's content, and behold us dance and sing before you, and we will pass the night with you.' At these words the Monkeys and Bears were greatly delighted, and they all came down from the trees, and permitted themselves to be bathed and perfumed. They then took up the ornaments, but as they knew not how to put them on, some of them began to wear anklets on their heads, whilst others put bracelets on their waists, and necklaces on their feet; and when they found that the jewels would not suit, they crushed them to pieces in their anger, and threw them away. At length when the time for eating arrived, the Monkeys and Bears were allowed rich carpets of gold, but were afraid to sit upon them because of their richness; so they lifted up the carpets and placed them upon their heads, and seated themselves upon the bare earth. Then, when they saw the different kinds of provisions that were placed before them, they first tasted the pungent dishes, and were afraid to partake of any more, thinking that they might be poisonous. Then they threw away some of the sweetmeats, because they resembled coiled snakes; and they mistook others for stones; and in this ridiculous manner they brought their repast to a close. Then the attendant damsels explained to the Monkeys and Bears the nature of the different kinds of sweetmeats, and they fell to and feasted sumptuously. Betel was next served to them; but when they had chewed a little, and saw what they thought was blood issuing from their mouths, they were greatly alarmed, and feared that Bharadwája desired to put them secretly to death; but the attendant damsels counselled them to wipe their mouths, after which their fears were over. When they had finished the betel, they entered the sleeping apartments, and saw their own reflections in the mirrors; and they prepared for battle and broke all the mirrors in the attempt to fight their own reflections; and then the matter was explained to them, and they retired to rest."

Preparations of Bharata for the triumphant return of Ráma.

Meantime Bharata had heard from Hanuman that Ráma was approaching; and he summoned Vasishtha and all his other Counsellors, and imparted to them the welcome news; and he ordered the following proclamation to be made known throughout the city by the beating of drums:—"Know all men that Ráma is returning from his exile; that to-day he is with Raja Guha, and that to-morrow morning he will enter Ayodhyá: Cast aside all sorrow and grief, and prepare to receive Ráma: Let the whole city be adorned, and let worship be offered to every god: Let every horse and elephant and chariot be got ready, and let every man go out to meet Ráma on his return to Ayodhyá."

Preparations of the people of Ayodhyá.

When the people of Ayodhyá heard this proclamation they rejoiced with exceeding joy. They weeded and levelled all the streets and roads, and swept them very clean, and watered them with sandal water, and strewed them with flowers, and planted trees and betel nut on each side of the highway. And they placed golden pots of water at the foot of each tree, with branches of mangoes in the mouths of the pots, and cocoa-nuts upon them; and the necks of the pots were adorned with garlands. All the houses were made clean in like manner, and music sounded on all sides, and many coloured flags waved in the air throughout the city. Then the whole army of the Raj marched out of the city, and every one was happy, and arrayed in a rich dress. First went the chariots newly painted, then the elephants richly caparisoned, then the horses with embroidered saddles, and last of all the infantry. All the women of Ayodhyá put on their best clothes to receive Ráma; and every man placed auspicious things, such as plantains, mangoes, and pots of water, before his own door.

Joy of Kaikeyí.

When the news of these preparations reached the ears of Kaikeyí, and she heard that Ráma was about to return to Ayodhyá, she rejoiced exceedingly; and she went to the apartment of Kausalyá, and was received with every re-

The ladies, accompanied by all the people of Ayodhyá, go out to meet Ráma.

spect. Next morning Kausalyá and Kaikeyí, and all the ladies and women of the palace, prepared to go forth and meet Ráma, some in chariots, and some in carriages drawn by bullocks. At the same time nearly all Ayodhyá went out in procession to Nandigrama to receive Ráma. First went the musicians sounding different instruments of music, then followed the dancing-girls, then the singing-men and singing-women, then the courtesans, then the heralds, eulogists, and bards, and then the Bráhmans singing Vedic hymns with Vasishtha at their head. After them went the people of the city of Ayodhyá, carrying every sort of auspicious thing, such as curds, parched paddy, garlands, ghee, flowers, fruits, red powder, and other festive articles. After them went Bharata carrying the sandals of Ráma upon his head, with the royal umbrella spread over the sandals, and two men fanning the sandals with milk-white chámaras; and Bharata was surrounded by the Ministers and Counsellors of the Raj, and by all the Rajas who had come to Ayodhyá to welcome back Ráma.

Bharata carries Ráma's sandals.

Meeting between Ráma and Bharata.

Meantime Ráma had taken leave of Raja Guha, and was on his way to the city of Ayodhyá, when he met with the mighty procession which had come out to meet him. And all those who accompanied Bharata cried out with a loud shout:—"There is Ráma returning from his exile." And Ráma and Bharata approached each other, and embraced each other with their arms; and Ráma said to his brother:—"Is all well with your Raj, and your subjects, and with my mothers?" And Bharata replied:—"All is well!" Bharata then greeted Lakshmana, and Ráma greeted Satrughna and his father-in-law Janaka. And Vasishtha and all the other Bráhmans came forward with grass and grains in their hands, and blessed Ráma, and said:—"Now that you have served the gods by killing their great enemy, it is the desire of all that you take your Raj, and seat yourself upon the throne of your father." And all the people shouted "Victory to Ráma!" And Ráma went and bowed down to the feet of his mother Kausalyá, and to the feet of his mothers-in-law Sumitrá and Kaikeyí; and they embraced and

Vasishtha and the Bráhmans offer the Raj to Ráma.

Ráma bows to his mothers.

Dismisses the chariot Pushpaka to its master Kuvera.

wept aloud for joy. Then when they reached Nandigrama, Ráma dismissed the chariot Pushpaka, and bade it return to Kuvera, who was its former master; and Bharata prayed Ráma to undertake the charge of the Raj; and Ráma agreed, but commanded Bharata to become once again reconciled to his mother Kaikeyí, and to treat her with the same kindness as he had done before the exile.

Ráma casts aside the garb of a devotee and assumes that of a Raja.

After this Ráma and his brothers were anointed with fragrant oils, and bathed in perfumed water; and they cast aside their dresses of bark, and put on yellow garments, and adorned themselves with every variety of ornaments; and Sítá was arrayed in like manner by the ladies of the palace. Then Bharata commanded that all the chariots and horses and elephants and litters should be brought up; and Ráma directed the Monkeys to select what conveyances they pleased.[4] Ráma then took Sítá in his own chariot, and placed her by his left side; and Satrughna held the royal umbrella over their heads; and Hanuman and Lakshmana fanned them, with fans of rich embroidered silk cloth; and Sugríva and Vibhíshana waved the chámaras on either side, whilst Jambuvat and Angada in like manner waved the peacocks' tails. Then Bharata himself took the reins of the horses in his left hand, and the whip in his right, and acted as charioteer; and the music began to sound, and the singers and dancers followed the musicians, and in this manner the procession moved on towards the city of Ayodhyá. All those who had remained in the city now came out to behold the entry of Ráma; and the women threw flowers on Ráma and Sítá as they passed along the street; and when they arrived at the royal palace, Bharata ordered gold and jewels to be brought without stint, and distributed them amongst the poor, the Bráhmans, the eulogists, and the musicians.

Ráma and Sítá proceed in a royal chariot surrounded by the insignia of sovereignty.

Entry into Ayodhyá.

When Ráma entered the royal palace, his soul was oppressed with grief, as he called to mind his father Dasaratha. Meanwhile Bharata said to Vasishtha:—"O wise sage, it is our desire that Ráma should be installed in the Raj of Ayodhyá: Look, we pray you, for an auspicious day, and see that our wish is accomplished without delay." Vasishtha replied:—"The gods are propitious, for to-morrow is a very auspicious day, and all the Rajas are already assembled in Ayodhyá: Make all things, ready, therefore, for the installation of Ráma on the morrow: Bring hither the five purifying things of the cow: Bring also the white flowers, the white garlands, the honey, the parched paddy, the garments new and clean, the white chámaras, the white flags, the golden mace, the embroidered umbrella, the paddy, the grass, the different ornaments, the gold, the silver, the precious stones, the jewels, the golden pots filled with sacred waters from the holy rivers and the four oceans, and all other things which are necessary for the ceremony." And Bharata did as Vasishtha commanded, and he ordered that worship should be offered to all the images of the gods and goddesses throughout the city, and that all the Rajas assembled in the city should attend the installation on the coming day. And Vasishtha desired Ráma and Sítá to fast for that day, and to pass the night without sleep; and throughout that night Sítá was engaged in the inner apartments in reciting the whole story of her adventures to the ladies of the palace, whilst Ráma was in the outer chamber relating the story to Vasishtha the sage.

---

[4] In the Bengali version the proceedings of the Monkeys during the procession are described in a humorous manner. "Some of the Monkeys," it is said, "mounted the chariots, and some suspended themselves over the wheels, whilst others curled their tails round the tusks of the elephants, and rocked themselves, or hung themselves to the manes of the horses."

Bharata requests Vasishtha to prepare for Ráma's installation.

Vasishtha orders that all things be made ready for the ceremony.

Worship of all the images of gods and goddesses.

Ráma and Sítá fast and keep awake all night.

Next morning at early dawn the music was sounded, and the morning devotions were performed, after which all the inhabitants of Ayodhyá put on their best attire, and came out to witness the installation of Ráma; and the gods came down from heaven to behold the ceremony, and all the Rishis and Bráhmans assembled in like manner. When all was ready Bharata requested Vasishtha to install Ráma on the throne, and Vasishtha desired Ráma to array himself for the inauguration. Then Ráma was dressed by his mothers, and Sítá also was magnificently dressed by them; and Ráma and Sítá proceeded to the Court-hall of the palace, and all

The installation of Ráma.

Arraying of Ráma and Sítá.

The enthroning.

the ladies of the palace looked on from places where they could not themselves be seen. Ráma then requested the permission of all the Rishis, Bráhmans, Rajas, Counsellors, and Ambassadors present, and seated himself upon the throne with his face towards the east, and Sítá sat upon his left hand. Then the music struck up from all quarters, and the assembled multitude shouted aloud:—"Long live Mahá-raja Ráma! May his reign be prosperous and endure for ever!" And celestial music was heard in the sky, and the gods showered down flowers upon the head of Ráma. Then Vasishtha and the other Rishis came forward with pots of sacred water, and repeated the proper mantras, and poured the water upon the head of Ráma. Then the Rishis poured the water over the head of Sítá in like manner. And when the Rishis had finished, the Bráhmans came forward, and poured water over the heads of both Ráma and Sítá; and after them came first the Kshatriyas, and then the Vaisyas, and then the Súdras, and then all the other people, and lastly the women, and each class in turn poured water upon the heads of Ráma and Sítá. Then Ráma and Sítá rose up and went away to change their garments, but they presently returned and took their seats in the Council-hall; and Lakshmana took up the royal umbrella, and held it over the head of Ráma, whilst Sugríva and Vibhíshana fanned him on either side with white chámaras. Then all the assembled multitudes filled the air with their joyful shouts and acclamations; and all the Bráhmans and all the other inhabitants of Ayodhyá, came to bless Ráma with paddy and kusa grass, and poured the paddy and grass upon the head of Ráma. And all the inhabitants of Ayodhyá gave themselves up to rejoicing. And Ráma dismissed the Bráhmans with rich presents of gold, cows, ornaments, clothes, lands, villages, and gardens; and he dismissed the dancing-men and dancing-women, and the musicians, eulogists, bards, and buffoons, in like manner, with similar presents; and to Sugríva he gave a set of rich gold ornaments, and to Angada he gave his own bracelets from off his waist. Then Sítá took the necklace from her own neck, and with the consent of Ráma

Music and acclamations.

The purification with sacred water.

Water poured over the heads of Ráma and Sítá by all the castes.

Ráma and Sítá change their garments and again take their seats in the Council-hall.

Paddy and kusa grass poured upon Ráma's head.

Distribution of presents.

Sítá gives her necklace to Hanuman.

she gave it to Hanuman.[5] Ráma then made suitable presents to all the Monkeys and Bears who had assisted him in his war against Rávana; and then having installed Bharata as Yuvarája, he began to rule the Raj of Ayodhyá to the great happiness of all the people.[6]

---

[5] A strange myth is here added, that Hanuman broke every one of the pearls which composed the necklace, because they did not contain the name of Ráma.

[6] The following curious details respecting Ráma and his rule are extracted from the Adhyátma Rámáyana:—"From that time Ráma as an inhabitant of this world entered into the pleasures and enjoyments of life; in reality he delighted not in such amusements, but as he had assumed the human form he deemed it necessary to perform worldly actions as a man. . . . . .

"During the government of Ráma grief and trouble were unknown to mankind; the pillars of justice were raised and firmly established, they sustained no injury. Truth, internal and external purity, worship and charity, are the principal supporters of justice; these were kept up by Ráma. No one in the three worlds presumed to dispute his authority; loyalty and deference to his will reigned in every heart; mankind feared and loved him. The rain through his clemency fell in due season; all living creatures enjoyed happiness to its fullest extent. The age of man extended to ten thousand years, during which period no one died, children served their parents, wives were faithful and obedient to their husbands. Those trees which had hitherto been barren and unfruitful produced in abundance, the mines in the mountains abounded with jewels and treasures, and the sound of grief was never heard.

"Ráma and Sítá went from the city one day with their three brothers to take the air; on the borders of the wood they perceived a Bráhman bearing in his arms the dead body of his son, then only one thousand years old. The Bráhman lamenting over his son brought him to Ráma, and thus addressed him:—'Some sin, O Mahárája! must have been committed by our Prince, or how could my son have perished in his infancy?' Ráma at this speech remained some time absorbed in thought; at length he said:—'Preserve, learned Bráhman, the body of thy son for some days in oil, let it not be burnt; I will discover the cause of this misfortune, I will afford thee redress.' The Bráhman in obedience to these orders preserved the body of his son. Ráma, from whom the most hidden secrets of the world cannot be concealed, summoned the car Pushpaka, and leaving Ayodhyá he went towards the south. On entering a forest he observed a man of the Súdra tribe, who had concealed himself and was engaged in certain penances which are restricted to the Bráhmans. His feet were bound to the branches of a tree, his head on the ground, surrounded by four fires, the sun the fifth above him, and he took into his mouth the smoke as his only aliment. Ráma knew him from a distance to be a Súdra, nevertheless he sent forward a spy to ascertain who and what he was. The spy informed him that this person was a Súdra performing religious austerities, on which Ráma, irritated at his audacity, drew his sword, and smote off his head. From the body of this Súdra rose a beautiful form, which fell at Ráma's feet, who dismissed him to paradise. No sooner was the Súdra slain than the son of the Bráhman was restored to life.

"Whatever actions the pure and chaste Ráma performed they were for the

Happiness of Ráma and Sítá.

Their mode of life in the palace at Ayodhyá.

After this Ráma reigned in the city of Ayodhyá in great felicity with his beloved Sítá. Every morning they were awakened by the eulogists who came to the palace and sounded their praises; and whilst Sítá joined her maidens, Ráma performed his morning devotions, and then sat upon his throne in the Council-hall, and administered the affairs of the Raj, assisted by his three brethren, and the aged Ministers and Counsellors of his father Dasaratha. When it was noon he went to the apartments of his mother Kausalyá, and then took his meal in her presence. In the evening he went to his garden-house, and sent for Sítá; and he sat upon the same couch with his beloved wife, and the maidens of the palace sang and danced before them until it was the hour for repose.

Review of the foregoing narrative of the return of Ráma and Sítá to Ayodhyá.

Picture of a Bráhman reading the Rámáyana to Hindú villagers.

Deep interest of a Hindú audience.

The foregoing narrative of the triumphant return of Ráma and Sítá to the city of Ayodhyá, and the installation of Ráma in the Raj, is received by a Hindú audience with an enthusiasm which is rarely exhibited in colder climes. To apprehend it aright the European should picture to himself a Hindú village far away from the noise and bustle of city life, where a Bráhman takes his seat every evening beneath a tree to read or chaunt to the villagers a portion of the divine poem, until in process of time the whole has been gone through. He should watch, day by day, the countenances of young and old, and especially those of the women, and observe the deep and lively interest which is taken by all

---

service of mankind. He established and set up a thousand forms of the Linga of Síva for the benefit of the world. He distributed justice in the mode prescribed by the Dharma Sástra. He conducted the affairs of his government according to the divine ordinances of the Vedas. Brahma and Mahadeva paid their adorations at his feet. During the ten thousand years he continued on the earth he never cast his eyes on any woman excepting Sítá; the idea of embracing other women was to him as the most deadly poison; he was eminent for his chastity. Mankind esteemed his government as the government of the saints, his operations were guided by the Vedas and Sástras."

present in every turn of the story, from the opening description of a glorious ideal of a Hindú city, and the promise of four sons to Dasaratha at the Aswamedha sacrifice, down to the exulting climax when Rávana is slain by Ráma amidst the rejoicings of the gods. He should see with his own eyes how the birth and boyhood of Ráma, the marriage, the exile, the abduction of Sítá, the lamentations of Ráma, and the invasion of Lanká, have each in turn roused the sympathies of the audience, and excited the smiles and tears,—hot indignation, dreamy wonder, and a deep mysterious awe.[7] Indeed so great is the enthusiasm that the whole of the villagers will identify themselves with every scene in the story; and when the evening approaches on which the triumphant return of Ráma and Sítá to the city of Ayodhyá is to be chaunted by the Bráhman, every preparation is made to enable the audience to imagine themselves actors or spectators on that exultant occasion. The neighbouring huts and trees are decorated with garlands of flowers and leaves, and all present are arrayed in clean garments and bridal ornaments; and in this manner the simple-minded people fondly make believe to take a part in the public rejoicings which accompanied Ráma's entry into the city of his fathers.

Preparations of the Hindús for listening to the story of the return of Ráma and Sítá to Ayodhyá.

The incidents which immediately precede this

Incidents immediately preceding the return.

---

[7] That such sympathetic emotions are not wholly wanting in Europeans, is proved by a story, which was told by Sir John Herschel, of a certain village blacksmith, who was accustomed to read aloud Richardson's novel of Pamela every evening, whilst his neighbours stood around and listened with child-like interest to the progress of the story. At length when the climax arrived, and the virtue of Pamela was rewarded by her marriage with the squire, the primitive villagers had so thoroughly identified themselves with the narrative, that they ran off to the church and rung the marriage-bells. Such enthusiasm is still exhibited by a Hindú audience in the story of the Rámáyana.

Lamentations of Rávana's women.

Site of the ordeal of Sítá still shown in the Island of Ramisseram.

joyous climax call for but little remark. The lamentations of the women of Rávana for their departed lord, will excite the sympathies of Hindú wives and mothers, even while rejoicing in the downfall of the ten-headed giant. The description of the ordeal of Sítá is very affecting, and to this day the weary pilgrims, who perchance have journeyed a thousand miles to behold the sacred locality, are shown the very spot on the Island of Ramisseram where Sítá passed untouched through the fire, and never fail to bathe in the sea which washes the place, as if the efficacy of the waves in purifying souls from sin was more potent there than elsewhere. The chariot named Pushpaka is, of course, a mere creation of the imagination, and is probably introduced to remove the geographical difficulties connected with the vast interval which separates the Island of Ramisseram from the city of Ayodhyá; and which might otherwise have interfered with the amalgamation of the tradition of Ráma, the Linga worshipper of the Dekhan, with Ráma, the incarnation of Vishnu.

The Pushpaka chariot introduced to remove a geographical difficulty.

Incidents connected with the triumphant return to Ayodhyá and installation of Ráma.

But, as already indicated, the crowning event in the story is undoubtedly the triumphant entry of the city of Ayodhyá, and subsequent installation of Ráma; and every incident in that portion of the narrative is deeply impressed upon the memory of the Hindú like the pictured scenery in a panorama. The royal exiles throwing off their jungle garments and arraying themselves in regal attire; Ráma and Sítá seated in a chariot side by side, whilst the royal umbrella and chámaras are carried by the most distinguished Chieftains; the grand procession moving into the city, accompanied by musicians and dancing-girls ; the acclamations of the assembled thousands ; the installation at which pots of sacred water are poured over the heads of the Raja and Rání, as well as green rice and sacred grass ;—all pass before the mind's eye of the Hindú with a vividness and reality, which none but those who sympathize with human nature in all its varied manifestations can hope to apprehend.

CHAPTER XXIV

EXILE OF SÍTÁ.

Sequel to the Rámáyana.

THE Rámáyana seems thus far to have been brought to a happy conclusion by the triumphant return of Ráma and Sítá to the royal palace at Ayodhyá, and their installation in the Raj of Kosala. But there is a sequel to the story, which would seem to imply that the reign of Ráma, like that of Yudhishthira, was not to end in this world in perfect felicity; and that both Ráma and Sítá were to be visited in the height of prosperity by an avenging Nemesis. The question of authenticity will be treated hereafter. For the present it will suffice to say that no doubt as to the truth of the narrative is felt by the Hindús. The story is rapidly passed over in the Bengali version, but merely on the ground that it is too affecting to be dwelt upon; whilst in the Adhyátma Rámáyana an attempt is made to explain away the tragic details as a divine mystery. The narrative itself calls for no preliminary explanation, and may be briefly related as follows:—

The narrative.

Sítá desires the sacrificial cakes of the Rishis.

When some months had passed away in perfect happiness, Síta felt that she was about to become a mother; and she said to her husband:—"I have no relish for any food in this world except the sacrificial cakes which the wives of the Rishis offer in the forest; and I much desire to visit the Rishis once again that I may eat the cakes as we did when dwelling in the jungle." Ráma replied that he would think over the matter in his mind, and tell her what she was to do on the next day. And he went out of the inner apartment, and sat upon his throne in the Council-hall. Then one of his Ministers, who was very harsh in his language, arose and said:—"O Ráma, there is poverty amongst your subjects because of your sin in taking back Sítá after she had been ten months in the palace of Rávana; and it is proper that you should put Sítá away."

Complaint of a Minister that the people are poor because Ráma took back Sítá.

At these words Ráma was thunderstruck, but he said nothing; and when the Council broke up, he returned to the inner apartments, and went to bathe in the tank which was near the palace. Now a certain man dwelt on the opposite side of the tank, and he was a washerman; and this man had a daughter who was married. And it so happened that on the evening of the preceding day, the daughter had left the house of her husband, and passed the night in the house of her father. When Ráma was bathing in the tank he heard the father say to the husband of his daughter:—"Take back your wife, I pray you!" But the husband replied:—"Not so! Your daughter went from my house in the evening, and I know not where she passed the night, and I cannot take her back again to be my wife: Were I a great Maháraja like Ráma, then indeed I might receive her, even though she had been many months in the house of a strange man; but I am a poor man, and may not do this thing lest my kinsmen turn me out of my caste."

Ráma hears a dialogue between a washerman and his son-in-law.

The son-in-law refuses to take back his wife who had deserted him in the night-time.

When Ráma heard these words he was sorely troubled, and knew not what to do; and he returned to the inner apartments. And it so happened that at that time Sítá was describing Rávana to her maids, and she had drawn a figure resembling him upon the floor of the room. When Ráma saw the likeness of Rávana, he was enraged against Sítá, for he thought that she still carried the remembrance of Rávana in her heart. And he sent for his three brothers, and informed them that he had resolved to put away his wife; but

Ráma sees Sítá drawing a figure of Rávana.

Determines to put away Sítá.

they all interceded for Sítá, and reminded him how she had passed through the fire, and how the gods had testified to her purity. Then Ráma acknowledged that his wife was innocent, but said that he could not endure the taunts of the people; and he commanded Lakshmana, on pain of seeing him commit suicide, to take her out of the city very early in the morning, and conduct her to the opposite bank of the Ganges, and abandon her there.

Commands Lakshmana to conduct her to the opposite bank of the Ganges.

Sítá supposes she is going to visit the Rishis.

Then Sítá was told that Lakshmana would take her away in his chariot to the abodes of the Rishis, and she supposed that it was in fulfilment of her desire to eat the sacrificial cakes; and she took leave of all her mothers-in-law, and prepared to depart. When it was morning she ascended the chariot, and Lakshmana drove out of the city towards the river Ganges, and they met with many evil omens; the jackals appeared howling in open day, and the deer fled from them on the left hand, and many serpents appeared; and Sítá seeing these omens, prayed very heartily to the gods in behalf of Ráma, for she feared that she should never see him more. In this manner they arrived at the Ganges, and Lakshmana procured a boat, and they went over the river together; and when they landed on the opposite side, they pressed forward into a thicket near the hill Chitra-kúta, where they had resided in former times, but where the fruit trees were now decaying with age, and snakes had made holes to burrow themselves. And Lakshmana and Sítá went on until they came within four miles of the hermitage of Válmíki, and then Lakshmana wept very bitterly, and told Sítá of the cruel orders he had received from Ráma, and counselled her to take refuge in the house of Válmíki; and thus having obeyed the commands of his elder brother he left her in the jungle, and returned to Ayodhyá and prostrated himself before Ráma in silence and in tears.

The departure.

Evil omens.

Passage of the river Ganges.

Chitra-kúta.

Lakshmana abandons Sítá near the hermitage of Válmíki.

Sufferings of Sítá beneath the burning sun.

Meanwhile Sítá was in a panic of surprise and fear. She was already in the pains of travail, and in this condition she was left alone on the sandy plain in the hottest season of the year; and the mid-day sun was blazing like a furnace over her head, and she walked slowly on in an agony of grief. Her feet, tender as the newly-blown rose, were torn with blisters; her throat was parched with thirst; and no tree was in sight to shelter her from the heat of the sun. Sometimes she walked a little way, and sometimes she fell to the ground. She had no friend near her to whom she could tell her sorrows, or from whom she could receive consolation. The wild beasts, who came from the jungles, and surrounded her on all sides, were her only guards. The birds descended from the sky to afford her shelter with their wings, while others dipped their pinions into the water of the Ganges, and fanned her with them, to prevent her fainting from the heat. Thus did she proceed by slow steps towards Chitra-kúta, but at last she fell down in a swoon, which was like death; and in this state she was found by Válmíki the sage, who had been the Bráhman preceptor of her father Janaka; and Válmíki restored her, and took her to his own house, and placed her in charge of his wife and female servants.

Wild beasts guard her and the birds fan her.

Taken into the house of Válmíki.

And Sítá gave birth to two sons in the house of Válmíki, and the splendour of their countenances surpassed the sun and moon. Válmíki gave them the names of Lava and Kusa, and brought them up, and educated them with the greatest care. At the age of five years he invested them with the sacred thread, and he taught them the Vedas and the Vedangas, and he also taught them to repeat his own work, the poem of the Rámáyana, which comprised the whole history of Ráma down to his capture of Lanká and triumphant return to Ayodhyá. And Válmíki likewise taught them the use of bows and arrows, so that they became invincible.

Sítá gives birth to Lava and Kusa.

The two brothers educated by Válmíki and taught the Rámáyana.

Now when Lava and Kusa were about fifteen or sixteen years of age, Ráma became troubled in his mind at having slain a Bráhman; for Rávana was the grandson of Pulastya, and consequently was by birth a Bráhman. Accordingly, by the advice of Vasishtha and other learned sages, he resolved on performing an Aswamedha, and all things were made ready for the occasion; and as it was necessary that he

Ráma prepares to perform an Aswamedha to atone for having slain Rávana.

The golden image of Sítá.

should sleep with his wife for one entire year with a drawn sword between them, without so much as touching her, a golden image was made to resemble Sítá, and Ráma passed his nights with the golden image by his side. Then the horse was procured and let loose with the usual ceremonies; and Ráma's younger brother Satrughna followed the horse with an army. Then the horse went on until it came to the place in which Sítá was residing; and her two sons Lava and Kusa saw the horse, and carried it away, and defeated Satrughna and all his army, and so wounded Satrughna that he could not move. When Ráma heard what had occurred he was filled with wrath, and sent Lakshmana with another army to recover the horse, but he was defeated in like manner by Lava and Kusa, and left for dead upon the ground. Then Bharata set out to bring back his two brothers if he could not recover the horse, and Hanuman went with him; and they found Satrughna and Lakshmana on the other side of the Ganges, and sprinkled water upon them, and placed them in a chariot; but Lava and Kusa again came up and defeated them as they had done the others. Then Hanuman saw the two youths who had been so victorious, with their cheeks all on fire, and their hair flowing, and bows and arrows in their hands; and he told Bharata that they were the living images of Ráma, as he had known Ráma to be when of the same age.

Lava and Kusa carry away the horse, and defeat the armies sent against them.

Hanuman suspects that Lava and Kusa are the sons of Ráma.

Ráma goes out against his sons, and asks their mother's name.

When Ráma heard the dismal tidings, he prepared to go himself to the field against an enemy so powerful; and when he reached the place he encamped his army, and went alone to meet the two youths, marvelling who they could be. Presently he beheld Lava and Kusa approaching him, and the moment he saw them he felt a tenderness for them in his heart; and when they beheld Ráma, they were instantly struck with awe and reverence for him, and made him a very respectful salutation. And Ráma asked them whose sons they were; and they replied:—"Our mother's name is Sítá, but we do not know the name of our father: We have been instructed by Válmíki the sage, who has been to us as a father." When Ráma heard these words he knew the

Ráma reconciled to Sítá.

youths to be his own sons; and at that moment Válmíki came up and told him all, and prayed him to become reconciled to his wife Sítá. And Válmíki went and took Sítá by the hand, and told her what had occurred, and that she must go with him into the presence of Ráma; and for a long time she would not go, but Válmíki said to her:—"Your sons have revenged upon Ráma all the evil he has done to you, and unless you become reconciled to him I shall pronounce a curse." So Sítá went with Válmíki into the presence of Ráma, and made peace with him; and Ráma and Sítá returned with their sons to the city of Ayodhyá, and performed the Aswamedha, and passed the remainder of their lives in peace and joy.[1]

Ráma and Sítá live in happiness in Ayodhyá.

---

[1] In the Adhyátma Rámáyana a totally different version is given of these incidents. Ráma is said to have discovered his two sons, from the exquisite manner in which they chaunted the Rámáyana at the Aswamedha, whilst his meeting with Sítá is described in the following manner:—'When Ráma knew that the two boys were the sons of Sítá, he ordered his attendants to bring Válmíki to him; and the sage returned with Sítá and her children. Ráma then spoke in an audible voice, saying:—'It is necessary we should prove the chastity of Sítá; let her make an oath in the presence of this assembly that the world may know she is pure, and that her chastity is without blemish: Mankind had an evil opinion of her, therefore I dismissed her from my presence: Forgive me, Válmíki! We know that Sítá is guiltless; let us, however, prove her innocence before all present: I am certain Lava and Kusa are my children.' When Ráma had thus spoken the people were assured that Sítá would again undergo the trial by ordeal. Brahma collected all the gods, and the people were assembled. Sítá having bathed, and being newly clothed in silken garments, was brought to the place of sacrifice. With downcast eyes, her hands raised towards those present, she thus spoke:—"If, O Earth, I never turned my thoughts towards any man but Ráma; if my truth and purity are known to thee, receive me into thy bosom, open a passage for me that I may pass in safety into thy bowels: I have undergone the slanders of mankind, I here pledge myself before thee never again to behold the face of any living creature.' On hearing these words, all present were overwhelmed with grief; the air resounded with their sighs.

"At that moment a wonderful and awful event took place. The ground opened, when a splendid throne, studded with gems and supported by four large serpents, rose from the chasm. The Earth, incarnate under a female form, came from the gulf, and with joined hands she thus addressed Sítá:—'I attend, Sítá! in obedience to thy commands, I am ready to obey thy orders: I love thee with the purest affection, and have brought this throne for thy conveyance; take thy seat on it that it may bear thee away to the Resatala, the sixth of the lower regions, and from thence to heaven.' She took the hand of Sítá, she led her to the throne, on which they both took their seats. The throne entered into the gulf before all present, and disappeared; the ground closed upon them. The gods gave vent to

Review of the foregoing story of the exile of Sítá.

The foregoing narrative appears to call for little comment. The story of this portion of the Rámáyana has been very much abridged in the present version, inasmuch as the original abounds with mythical matter which is absolutely valueless for the purposes of history, and which obscures rather than illustrates the original tradition. Indeed it is difficult to say how far the main feature of the story, the abandonment of Sítá, is to be regarded as

---

their joy in acclamations, and showered down flowers, but the other spectators, turning their eyes on Ráma, fell on the ground in an agony of grief. The inevitable decrees of fate are revealed to the enlightened mind of Ráma, but, as he had appeared on earth in the human form, he deemed it necessary his actions should accord with those of human beings. He appeared to be overwhelmed with affliction, he openly gave vent to his sorrows. Brahma and the gods did everything in their power to console him, saying :—'Thou, O Lord! knowest all things, wherefore shouldst thou give way to despair? This world is but a dream, a bubble of water.' Ráma at the entreaty of Brahma put an end to his sorrows, and the gods made their obeisance and departed. Ráma then distributed valuable presents among the Bráhmans, and completed his sacrifice."

A religious mystery is assigned for the reason why Sítá would not be reconciled to Ráma, which is explained by the following myth, which is supposed to have occurred some time before their previous separation, and which represents Sítá as the incarnation of Lakshmí :—Sítá, in the midst of his caresses, said to him :—"The gods serve thee, O Lord! with all their hearts and souls; thou art the Lord of the three worlds; thou art enthroned in the heart of all living creatures, the Greatest of the Great, ever joyful; thou hast neither beginning, nor middle, nor end: If it be thy pleasure I will mention one circumstance." Ráma affectionately desired her to speak her wishes. She said :—"The gods addressed me in private, saying :—'A long time has elapsed since Lakshmí quitted heaven to dwell on the earth, the regions of bliss are deserted: Without thy assistance the great thorn, which sprang up in the garden of the world, could never have been rooted out: Now that the earth has been restored to its usual fertility, thou hast conferred happiness on thy servants; we beseech thee to listen to our prayer, and grant to us again thy presence by returning to paradise, now become a desert through thy absence.' If it is thy pleasure, O Ráma, I should agree to their request." Ráma, after some reflection, answered :—"I was, previous to the application of the gods to thee, acquainted with their secret wishes; I will adopt a device to despatch thee before me. I will cause the inhabitants of the city to utter slander against thee; I will dismiss thee to the woods, where thou shalt bring forth two sons; thou wilt go to Chitra-kúta, the religious abode of the sage Válmíkí, where thou wilt dwell in peace: Thou art now with child, and in his house wilt thou be delivered of two children, illustrious in their destiny: Thou, my beloved Sítá, camest through the earth into the world; thou must again return to heaven through the earth; rest assured I will soon follow thee."

Traces of the authentic tradition.

authentic or otherwise. It is certainly surrounded by improbable details, such as the episode of Ráma's sons learning to recite the Rámáyana, which is very suspicious; and yet the idea that Ráma could not receive Sítá as his wife after her protracted residence in the palace at Lanká, and the tradition that Ráma finally sent her out into the jungle, are true to the national sentiment, and have long formed a part of the national belief. Moreover the legend that Ráma did put away his wife harmonizes with another legend,[2] that he subsequently sent his brother Lakshmana into exile; and thus we might almost infer from the current of national tradition that Ráma, as he advanced in years, became jealous and peevish like Henry the Eighth; and that the pious author of the Rámáyana has invented mythical reasons for the equivocal proceedings of the divine hero. The question of whether Ráma was ever again really reconciled to Sítá after this second ordeal, must of course remain in doubt; but it is stated in the Adhyátma Rámáyana that he ultimately ascended to heaven on the bird Garura, and finally joined Sítá, who had returned to her original form as the goddess Lakshmí. As regards the two sons of Ráma, who were born in the house of Valmíki, and were named Lava and Kusa, it may be remarked that to this day the Kachwáka Rajpúts affect to derive their descent from Kusa, whilst another Rajpút tribe,

Question of whether Ráma really took back Sítá.

Ráma ascends to heaven.

---

[2] It is said that one day Time, as a messenger from Brahma, paid a visit to Ráma, and that Ráma ordered Lakshmana to keep the door shut against every one on pain of death. The sage Durvása, however, called shortly afterwards and threatened to curse Ráma unless admitted immediately. Lakshmana accordingly admitted the sage, and Lakshmana goes to the river Sarayú, suppresses his senses, and is conveyed bodily by Indra to heaven. It is worthy of remark that the name of Lakshmana appears to be still preserved in the modern name of Lucknow.

the Bádkuja, regard Lava as the founder of their race.[3]

Conclusion of the Rámáyana.

Here, then, ends the story of the Rámáyana. The divine poem concludes with the following religious promises, which serve to illustrate the widely-spread belief in the divinity of Ráma, and the blessings which are supposed to reward those who read or hear the pious legend of his earthly career:—

Modern Hindú belief in the virtues of the Rámáyana.

> Whoever reads or hears the Rámáyana will be freed from all sin. Those who read it, or hear it read to them, for the sake of obtaining a son, will certainly have one. Those who read or hear it for the sake of riches will certainly acquire wealth. If a woman hears it she will obtain a good husband and enjoy happiness. A Bráhman reaps the advantage of reading the Vedas, a Kshatriya conquers his enemies, a Vaisya is blessed with riches, and a Súdra gains great fame by reading the Rámáyana, or having it read to them. The Rámáyana heals diseases, removes all fear of enemies, compensates for all loss of wealth or fame, prevents loss of life, and secures all that is desired. The mere utterance of the name of Ráma is equal in religious merit to the giving of a hundred ornamented cows to a Bráhman, or the performance of an Aswamedha. A follower of Ráma enjoys happiness in this world, and in the next is absorbed in Ráma in that Vaikuntha which is the heaven of Vishnu.

---

[3] See Prof. H. H. Wilson's introduction to his translation of the Uttara-Ráma-charitra in his Theatre of the Hindús. This drama is attributed to Bhava-Chúti, and is based upon the incidents already narrated as forming the sequel of the history of Ráma.

END OF THE RÁMÁYANA.

PART V.

THE BRAHMANIC PERIOD.

CHAPTER I.

FOUR EPOCHS OF RELIGIOUS HISTORY.

THE main points in the two great Hindú Epics have now been reproduced in a condensed form; and it remains to be seen whether it is possible to draw from these national treasuries of tradition and legend, as well as from other branches of Hindú literature, sufficient materials for constructing a narrative of the early progress of the Hindú people, which should correspond to the modern idea of history. Hitherto one great obstacle in the way of such an undertaking has arisen from the overwhelming mass of original materials which have been preserved in the Sanskrit language; and from the number and variety of the vernaculars in which much important information was supposed to be concealed. But of late years, in addition to the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana, a large portion of the Vedas and Puránas have been rendered available to the European reader; and especially a valuable series of translated extracts and analyses of the more important

Possibility of constructing a history of the Hindús.

Materials.

Mahá Bhárata.
Rámáyana.
Vedas.
Puránas.

portions of the Puránas, which was carried out by the late Professor H. H. Wilson, has been preserved in twenty-six folio volumes of manuscripts in the Library of the Asiatic Society at Calcutta. A large number of legends and traditions connected with the life and teachings of Sákya Muni, better known as Gótama Buddha, have been collected and translated both in Ceylon and Burmah; and not only throw considerable light on the development of religious dogmas in India, but furnish some interesting pictures of life and manners at the advent of Sákya Muni, and during the period when Buddhism prevailed. Again, the celebrated Brahmanical code, known as the "Institutes of Manu," has been familiar to every English student in Hindú antiquities since the days of Sir William Jones; and will now be found to yield new and important results in the early history of the Hindú people by being brought face to face with the hymns of the Rig-Veda. Many translations of Hindú dramas and poetry have also appeared, which add largely to our knowledge of the ideas and sentiments which have prevailed at different periods amongst the masses. Rich stores of antiquarian information have likewise been opened up; including select translations from the more valuable documents in the Mackenzie MSS., which, like the Puránic manuscripts, have been preserved in the Library of the Asiatic Society of Calcutta in thirty-four thick folio volumes. To these may be added hosts of other Hindú productions, theological and otherwise, which have either been separately published, or have appeared in one or other of the journals devoted to Oriental literature. At the same time sites of ancient cities have been discovered, in-

Buddhist Legends.

Manu.

Hindú drama and poetry.

Mackenzie MSS.

Miscellaneous vernacular records.

Inscriptions, etc.

scriptions have been deciphered, and genealogical lists have been examined and compared. In a word, it may now be asserted that these sources of information, as well as those which have been already indicated in preceding chapters, have served to render the necessary materials for the ancient history of India available to the historical student, who may not have possessed either the necessary leisure or predilections for a study of the many languages, living and dead, which appertain to the great Indian peninsula.[1]

History of India distinct from that of Mussulman or British rule.

The history of the people of India, ancient and modern, should be considered as something distinct from that of Mussulman and British rule. Indeed neither Mussulman nor European can be said to have hitherto created any enduring impression upon the national mind. The religious revolutions which have stirred up the life of the Hindú to its uttermost depths, have been nearly all of indigenous growth. They have sprung up from within rather than from without; and must be generally regarded as the product of the Hindú mind. For ages the people have been shut in from the outer world by the Himálayas and the sea, and their religious faith has been formed from the consciousness alone. The history of the progress and development of religious thought in India is thus of the highest importance in the history of man; inasmuch as it illustrates the sources of many ideas and sentiments, which find expression in what has been termed natural religion. At the same time its range of development is more extensive than that of any other existing faith; for it rises with the dawn of consciousness as regards the existence of a superior being or beings with reference to the present life, and ascends to the highest dogmas in the conception of one Supreme Deity, who is over all and in all, not only in this life but in that which is to come.

---

[1] The author would here venture to remark that his object is very different from that which appears to have been contemplated by the great modern schools of comparative philology, whether in Germany or elsewhere. He has no attempted to discover the origin and early history of the different Aryan peoples by the light of those special philological studies, which have hitherto so largely occupied the attention of Sanskrit scholars. He has confined himself to the humbler task of describing the people of India as they are; and he has consequently endeavoured to unfold the history of the past so far as it was necessary for a due apprehension of the history of the people in more recent periods. Those who desire to enter upon the larger field of inquiry must give their days and nights to the study of the critical labours of Goldstücker, Max Müller, Lassen, Weber, Benfey, Kuhn, Roth, Fitz-Edward Hall, Cowell, Muir, Aufrecht, Monier Williams, Gorresio, and many other scholars in Europe, as well as in this country, who have attained a widely-spread reputation as the pioneers in the study of a comparison of roots and grammars. It might also be added that human life under the most favourable circumstances is not sufficiently long to enable a single individual in the present day to be at once an Oriental philologist and an Indian historian. For instance, a study of the Puránas in the original Sanskrit would occupy very many years; whereas a twelve-months' patient analysis of Wilson's collection of translations at Calcutta has sufficed to show how much valuable light the originals appear to throw upon sectarian rites and creeds, and especially upon the antagonism between Bráhmans and Buddhists, but how little they really contribute towards a substantive knowledge of Indian history prior to the age of Buddhism. In like manner the salient points in the Mackenzie collection may be mastered after a few months' study of the manuscript translations; whilst the mere work of collection and arrangement, to say nothing of translation, seems to have occupied the whole of the leisure of the late Colonel Colin Mackenzie throughout a long Indian career, and may be said to have been the absorbing passion of a life-time.

Religious revolutions from within.

Importance of the history.

The history of the people of India, if considered as something distinct from the annals of conquest, is emphatically a religious history; and so closely has every act and duty been associated from time immemorial with religious belief in the mind of the Hindú, that we are enabled by means of the religious books which have been preserved, to obtain a tolerably clear insight into the important changes which have taken place at different intervals in the manners and ideas of the people at large. Reserving

Division of the religious history into four epochs.

all minor distinctions for discussion hereafter, it may in the first instance be convenient to map out the religious history of the people of India into four great epochs, corresponding with the four great changes in their religious belief, namely;—

1st, The Vedic age.
2nd, The Brahmanic age.
3rd, The Buddhist age.
4th, The age of Brahmanical revival.

1st, Vedic age, characterized by prayers and offerings to elementary deities for material blessings.

The religion of the Vedic age has been briefly sketched in the introduction to the preceding volume. It consisted in offerings of food and wine, accompanied by outpourings of prayers and praises to elementary deities and other personified abstractions, in the hope of obtaining thereby such material blessings as health, prosperity, long life, abundance of sons, prolific cattle, and overflowing harvests. It was also associated with a crude belief in the existence of the ghosts of ancestors, who might be propitiated with offerings of food and water; but it scarcely recognized that belief in the immortality of the soul, and a future state of reward and punishment, which has found such large expression in later creeds. It was in fact an early form of polytheism, when men saw deity in the clouds and heard him in the wind. The process by which the unenlightened but inquiring intellect of the Vedic Aryans rose from the idea of many gods to the conception of one Supreme Being, is of the utmost importance in the history of religious development, and is exhibited with considerable clearness in the hymns of the Rig-Veda. In the first instance the simple worshipper praised the immediate object of his adoration as the God above all gods, the almighty, the supreme;

Belief in ghosts.

Process by which the Aryan mind arose from polytheism to monotheism.

Exaggerated language of praise.

much in the same fashion as he belauded his own patriarchal Chieftain as the greatest of heroes, the mightiest of warriors, the Raja of Rajas, whose fame had spread throughout the three worlds.

Inquiry as to the origin of being.

Familiarity with this form of thought may have subsequently led to the inquiry as to who was the Being who caused the life of the universe; and this question is propounded by the Vedic bard in the following language:—"From earth are the breath and blood, but where is the soul?"[2] Hence arose two conceptions of monotheism. The more ancient and material conception appears to have existed in the identification of the Sun as the Supreme Spirit of light and fire, which animated the whole universe, and which seems to have been associated with the worship of Agni. A later and more spiritual conception identified the Supreme Spirit with a deity named Prajápati, who was worshipped as the Supreme Soul.

Identification of the Supreme Spirit with Agni and Prajápati.

2nd, Brahmanic age characterized by austerities and sacrifices to expiate sin.

The Brahmanic religion seems to have been originally distinct from the Vedic religion. The religious ideas which characterized each faith seem to have originated from different sources, although they may have sprung up side by side. The Vedic worship is the expression of a child-like desire to gratify the national gods by offerings of food and wine. The Brahmanic worship is on the other hand an expression of fear at having sinned against deity, and an attempt to appease his wrath by austerities and sacrifices. When however the two classes of ideas came into contact, the old Vedic deities were not set aside by the Bráhmans, but were simply

Compromise between the Vedic and Brahmanic creed.

---

[2] See Vol. I. Part i. Introduction.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

placed in subordination to the god Brahma; who was represented as the creator of gods and men, and the especial deity of the Bráhmans; and who was remotely associated with the dogma that goodness would be rewarded and sin punished both in this life and in the life hereafter. The Brahmanic age was thus emphatically an age of religious compromise. The Vedic deities were still acknowledged as inferior gods, but placed under the supremacy of Brahmá, as their creator; and the heaven of the Vedic deities was placed far lower in the ideal universe than the heaven of the eternal Brahma.[3] In like manner the monotheistic conceptions of the Vedic Aryans were amalgamated with those of the Bráhmans. Agni and Prajápati, Vedic idealizations of a Supreme Being, were each in turn identified with Brahma. By this process the early Bráhmans appear to have succeeded in super-adding a belief in endless transmigrations of the soul,—in austerities as a means of obtaining reward, and in sacrifices as expiation for sin,—to the old primitive worship of the Aryan deities, which looked only for material blessings. At the same time the Bráhmans seem to have reduced the primitive classes of society to a rigid caste system; and to have converted that system into an engine of ecclesiastical oppression, by which every action of a man as a husband, a father, a householder and a citizen, was brought under the tyranny of caste rule, and human passions and aspirations were pressed down until the Hindú

Vedic deities recognized, but placed in a subordinate position to Brahmá.

Agni and Prajápati identified with Brahma.

Caste system rendered an engine of ecclesiastical oppression.

---

[3] A distinction must be here laid down between Brahma the Supreme Soul, and Brahmá who is only the creator, or rather the creative energy of Brahma. Without any accent the word Brahma signifies the Supreme Soul; with an accent on the final letter, Brahmá signifies the creator only.

people were little better than religious automatons. The character of this important compromise between the simple forms of Vedic worship and the complicated system of Brahmanism, will form the main subject of inquiry in the present sketch of the Brahmanic age. But in investigating the various branches of the subject, it will be constantly necessary to refer to the Vedic period; inasmuch as such an investigation tends to indicate the opposition between the ideas and institutions of the Vedic age and those of the Brahmanic age, which are rendered perceptible by a comparison of the hymns of the Rig-Veda with the institutes of Manu.

Illustrations of the Vedic period furnished by the Brahmanic period.

Distinguishing characteristics of the ages of Buddhism and Brahmanical revival.

The characteristics of the two succeeding eras of Buddhism and Brahmanical revival will be brought under consideration in the next volume. But inasmuch as traces of both periods are to be found in the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana, it may be as well to indicate in the present place the broad features which distinguish each of those epochs from the remaining three.

Commencement of the age of Buddhism in the sixth century B.C.

With the dawn of Buddhism a footing is established in modern chronology. The advent of Sákya Muni, who is generally regarded as the great teacher and founder of Buddhism in India, has been referred to the sixth century before the Christian era by a series of calculations which will be duly considered hereafter. This famous personage seems for a while to have effected a complete revolution in the religious belief of the Hindús. He threw contempt upon the simple prayers of the Vedic Aryans for the material blessings of this life, by enunciating an idea which has found expression amongst bards and prophets of all ages, namely, that the pleasures of this

Doctrines of Sákya Muni.

Happiness a delusion.

world are altogether unreal and unsubstantial, the mere creations of the imagination. He taught as a vital truth the sentiment which is involved in the words of a modern poet, and which is familiar to the current religious thought of the European:—

> "The world is all a fleeting show
> For man's delusion given;
> The smiles of joy, the tears of woe,
> Deceitful shine, deceitful flow."

Existence an evil.

But Sákya Muni went further. The modern European idea reposes upon the conclusion that there is nothing true in the universe of being, saving the life hereafter in heaven. The old Bráhmans taught that men were constantly committing sins, which could only be expiated by penances and sacrifices; and that the performance of penances and sacrifices, in excess of such expiation, would secure a corresponding amount of rewards either in this life or the life hereafter. But Sákya Muni cut at the very root of these creeds by proclaiming that existence itself was an evil to gods and men; that the one grand object of gods and men was not to prolong their miserable existence for the sake of such deluding phantoms as wealth, pleasure, or power, either in this life or in future existences; but rather to crush out all human passions and yearnings, and thus to deliver the soul from the vortex of ever-recurring transmigrations, and enable it to take refuge in a state of utter and eternal repose. Such repose is an Oriental idea of perfect and divine felicity, and is termed Nirvána; but in reality it is little more than an idea of utter annihilation, inasmuch as it involved the destruction of all individuality, until nothing was left but mere intellect in undisturbed

Nirvána, or undisturbed repose.

slumber. It may also be remarked, as a significant fact in the history of man, which will be further considered in the next volume, that this idea of repose, this longing after eternal rest, did not find its full force in an age of evil and tribulation, when afflicted humanity sought relief from the thousand ills that flesh is heir to; but in an age of sensual gratification, when profuse indulgence had produced a sickening satiety, which found expression in the words of the Preacher of old:—"All, all is vanity, and vexation of spirit."

Age of satiety.

Expulsion of Buddhism by the Brahmanical revival.

The circumstances which led to the expulsion of Buddhism from India, and the triumphant revival of Brahmanism, are still involved in some obscurity, which may however be possibly cleared up hereafter. In the present place it may suffice to say that the great Brahmanical revival seems to have originated in a democratic appeal to the sympathies and aspirations of the masses, who might reasonably be supposed to be less capable of apprehending the transcendental happiness involved in the idea of Nirvána, and to feel a livelier appreciation of the more substantial enjoyments of human existence as they are generally understood by the bulk of the community. Indeed it may be remarked that unless religion promises substantive blessings and rewards, or is associated with sectarian ideas which perpetuate it as a living principle by that force of antagonism which perpetuates so many dogmas, it soon fails to act as a motive power or spring of action. It is thus easy to comprehend that amidst the corruptions of a Buddhist priesthood, a religious belief which offered no spiritual consolation beyond rest or annihilation, and which ignored rather than satisfied the innate yearn-

Failure of Buddhism to influence the masses.

ings of the soul after a supreme good, soon failed to exercise an influence upon the general community, who hankered after the fleshpots of Egypt, and burned with the eagerness of youthful voluptuaries to receive material blessings from their old national gods in return for sacrifice and prayer. Under such circumstances the appeal of the Bráhmans to the popular sentiment could scarcely fail of success. The worship of the old Vedic deities, who had been held in derision during the age of Buddhism, was partially revived. The worship of Vishnu and Siva, which was unknown to the composers of the Rig-Veda, but which seem to have largely prevailed throughout Hindústan and the Dekhan, was recognized and adopted by the apostles of the Brahmanical revival. Vishnu and Siva were each identified with Brahma, and ultimately with each other. Ráma and Krishna, the traditional heroes of the people of India, whose histories have been household words for ages, were declared to be incarnations of the god Vishnu; whilst even the animals who were worshipped by the pre-Aryan races, such as the fish, the tortoise, the boar, and the lion, were represented as incarnations of the same deity. In like manner the worship of the Linga, which appears to have originated in a remote antiquity, was associated with the worship of Siva; and the deification of the female principle, the Earth goddess, which appears to have sprung up amongst many primitive tribes, and was supposed to grant abundant harvests and prolific cattle, became associated with Parvatí, the wife of Siva, under a variety of names of which perhaps Durgá and Kálí are the widest known. Numerous other deifications were in like manner admitted into

Appeal of the Bráhmans to the worship of the old gods of India.

Vedic deities.

Vishnu and Siva.

Brahma.

Ráma and Krishna, as incarnations of Vishnu.

Animal worship.

Linga worship.

Parvatí, Durgá, Kálí.

CC-0 Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Káma, Kártikeya, Kuvera, Ganesa.

the pantheon of the Bráhmans; such as gods of love, of war, of wealth, and of good luck; as well as deified animals and things belonging to an ancient fetische worship, including cows, snakes, birds, trees, plants, rivers, mountains, books, stones and logs of wood; all of which were incorporated in the Brahmanical system under a variety of mythical interpretations and transformations, until the Hindús themselves have ignorantly believed that their gods were three hundred and thirty millions in number.[4]

Chronology of the four epochs.

The chronology of these four great epochs in the history of the Hindús may perhaps be indicated as follows:—

Vedic.

1st.—The Vedic age, which was characterized by the worship of the elementary deities, such as Agni and Indra, and appears to have prevailed in the Punjab prior to the disappearance of the Saraswatí river in the sand.[5]

Brahmanic.

2nd.—The Brahmanic age, which was characterized by the worship of Brahma, and appears to have prevailed between the disappearance of the Saraswatí in the sand, and the advent of Sákya Muni about B.C. 600.

Buddhist.

3rd.—The Buddhist age, which was characterized by the pursuit of Nirvána, and appears to have prevailed from about B.C. 600 to A.D. 800 or 1000.

---

[4] The names of all these deified personifications will be fully indicated in a subsequent volume. It will suffice to state that Káma is the god of love; Kártikeya the god of war; Kuvera the god of wealth; and Ganesa, the elephant-headed and big-bellied idol, the god of good luck and prosperity.

The age of the Brahmanical revival is sometimes styled the Puránic age, or the age in which the Puránas were composed. The Puránas certainly received their present form during this period, and the legends they contain are chiefly valuable as illustrations of the period of Brahmanical revival.

[5] The significance of the disappearance of the Saraswatí, as separating two eras from each other, will be pointed out in Chapter II., on Vedic and Brahmanic geography.

Brahmanic revival.

4th.—The Brahmanical revival, which was characterized by the worship of incarnations of deities, and appears to have prevailed from about A.D. 800 to the present time.

Definite chronology impossible.

Whilst, however, the attempt has been made to map out the religious history of the Hindús into four distinct periods, it by no means follows that such an arrangement of eras is to be regarded as an expression of definite chronology. On the one hand an attempt to arrive at approximate chronological data, and to calculate the probable duration of Hindú forms of religious belief by reference to what is known of the duration of modern revolutions in religious thought, carries back the imagination to a period so far removed from all recorded history, that synchronisms could only be found in astronomical calculations of the revolutions of the stars. Again, in dealing with revolutions brought about by the progress and development of religious thought, it is impossible to fix any chronological interval, less perhaps than a thousand years, between the time when an old faith passes away and the time when a new faith finds full expression, and fairly lays hold of the national mind. One age runs into its successor and mingles with its current; just as the heathenism of Greece and Rome continued to exist long after the advent of Christianity; and just as Roman Catholicism still continues to exist, and may exist for hundreds of generations yet to come, although at least three centuries may be said to have passed away since the advent of the Protestant Reformation. To this day very many traces of the old Vedic worship are still to be found in the popular faith and ritual of the masses in India; whilst the innovating doc-

Intermingling of religious ideas originating in different ages.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

trines of Buddhism, which were so hotly persecuted by the Bráhmans, still linger in many recesses of the Hindú mind. Stranger still, the fetische form of worship, which belongs to the remotest antiquity, still flourishes in India, and is especially to be found in the rural districts, where it exercises no small influence upon the minds and actions of the masses.[6]

Two points in connection with the Brahmanic age.

The following chapters will thus be immediately devoted to a consideration of the ideas and institutions of the Brahmanic age. Accordingly, before commencing the inquiry, it may be advisable to consider two important points, which bear upon the general subject, namely:—

1st—The duration of the Brahmanic age.

2nd—The light which the Brahmanic age throws upon the Vedic period.

1st, Probable duration of the Brahmanic age.

From the data already laid down it would seem that the old Brahmanic age intervened between the decline of the Vedic worship and the rise of Buddhism. In other words, between the reduction of the Vedic worship to an established ritual in association with the worship of Brahma, which seems to have taken place at some remote period more or less corresponding with the disappearance of the Saraswatí river in the sand; and the early teachings of Sákya Muni, who seems to have flourished in the sixth century before the Christian era. But whilst for the sake of clearness the transition period between Brahmanism and Buddhism has been referred

Indefinite extension of Brahmanism throughout the Buddhist age.

---

[6] Indra, one of the most celebrated of the Vedic deities, is still worshipped in the great annual festival in the south of India, known as the Pangol, or "boiling." Again, many traces of the worship of Buddha are to be found at Jagannáth; and missionaries in many quarters report that Buddhist doctrines have left a deep impression upon the rural population.

to the sixth century B.C., it seems certain that the current of Brahmanism flowed on until a much later date. When Sákya Muni began to promulgate the peculiar dogmas of Buddhism to the people of Hindústan, he found himself surrounded by Bráhmans, many of whom became his converts and disciples; and it was not until after his death that a hostile opposition arose between the Bráhmans and Buddhists, which eventuated in religious wars and cruel persécutions, that still find expression in local traditions, as well as in the burnt and charred remains of Buddhist monasteries of olden time. Indeed Brahmanism seems never to have been entirely subverted, for otherwise its resuscitation ten or twelve centuries after the death of Sákya Muni could have been scarcely possible. Moreover it will be seen hereafter that Brahmanism appears to satisfy the crude aspirations of mankind in an early stage of civilization; and is in accordance with a popular idea of divine justice in the government of the world, that every good act will be separately considered and rewarded, and that every sinful act will be separately considered and punished, either in this life or in the life hereafter. On the other hand Buddhism is essentially an aristocratic creed, suitable only to the philosophic yearnings of a rich and noble class, in whom self-indulgence in every gratification has produced a surfeit of pleasure; and who are consequently driven by sheer satiety to seek a life of abstinence and contemplation, which will ultimately tend to a dreamy spiritual existence of eternal repose and undisturbed slumber.

Brahmanism a religion of the people.

Buddhism; a religion of the nobles.

A further idea of the probable duration of the old Brahmanical period may perhaps be derived from

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Code of Manu a standpoint in the history of Brahmanism.

a consideration of the period in which the code of Manu appears to have been composed. It will be seen hereafter that whilst this code recognizes the worship of the Vedic deities as part of the great compromise between Vedic and Brahmanic rites, which characterized the Brahmanic period; it refers to the atheists and revilers of the Veda, who are to be identified with the Buddhists, and it directs that no Bráhmans should settle in their neighbourhood. At the same time it takes no cognizance of that worship of incarnations of deity which characterized the later era of Brahmanical revival; and especially it contains but slight reference to Vishnu or Siva, the two great deities of the modern religion of the Hindús. Accordingly, although the date of the code is still involved in some obscurity, its composition may perhaps be referred to the centuries immediately preceding the Christian era, or to those which immediately follow that epoch.[7]

No references in the code to the age of Brahmanical revival.

Probable date of the code of Manu.

2nd, Reflex light thrown upon the Vedic age by the Brahmanic age.

As regards the reflex light which the following investigations into the history of the Brahmanic age will throw upon the Vedic age, it will suffice to remark that the illustrations to be traced among Brahmanic materials will be found to furnish new and important additions to the stock of information respecting the old Vedic settlements in the Punjab, which has already been gathered from the hymns of the Rig-Veda.[8] The grounds for the several conclusions will be exhibited in future chapters; but it may be desirable to note in the present place the data which will be more or less established hereafter. The salient points are nine in number, and may be indicated as follows:—

---

[7] Reference is certainly made in the code to the Purányas and Upanishad; still the greater portion of the code seems to have been composed long before the Puránas received their present form.

[8] See *ante*, Vol. I. Vedic Period.

Nine salient points.

1st, Vedic and Brahmanic Geography.

1st, The geographical distinction between the Vedic settlements and the Brahmanic settlements; the former being referable to the Punjab and the latter to Hindústan.

2nd, Rishis and Bráhmans.

2nd, The distinction between the Rishis and the Bráhmans; the former being Vedic psalmists and worshippers of the Vedic deities, whilst the latter were sacrificing priests and worshippers of the god Brahma.

3rd, Conceptions of Manu.

3rd, The distinction between the Vedic conception of Manu as the first man, and the Brahmanic conception of Manu as the Hindú lawgiver.

4th, Creations by Manu and Brahmá.

4th, The distinction between the creation of the universe by Manu and the similar creation by Brahmá.

5th, Vedic and Brahmanic chronologies.

5th, The distinction between the Vedic and Brahmanic systems of chronology; the former being apparently based upon a calculation of Manwantaras, or reigns of successive Manus, whilst the latter was based upon a succession of Kalpas, or days of Brahma.

6th, Worship.

6th, The distinction between the Vedic worship and the Brahmanic worship.

7th, Marriages.

7th, The distinction between the Vedic forms of marriage and the Brahmanic rites.

8th, Sráddhas.

8th, The distinction between the Vedic Sráddha and the Brahmanic rite.

9th, The Kshatriya and the Bráhman.

9th, The distinction between the Kshatriya and the Bráhman, which especially characterizes the laws respecting the four castes.

Further evidence.

In addition, however, to these main points, many

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Chronological sequence approximating to the idea of annals.

other characteristics of the Vedic and Brahmanic periods will appear in future chapters, and further illustrate the radical distinction which exists between the two ages. Moreover, an attempt will be made in the concluding chapter of the present volume, under the head of "Historical resumé," to classify and arrange all available data in the Epic traditions, as will serve to illustrate the successive stages in the development of the Hindú people; and establish, if possible, a chronological sequence which shall approximate as nearly as may be to the current conception of historical annals.

CHAPTER II.

VEDIC AND BRAHMANIC GEOGRAPHY.

Comparison of the geographical data in the Vedic hymns and code of Manu.

THE first point to be settled in the history of the Brahmanic age is the relative geographical position of the Vedic and Brahmanic settlements at the dawn of tradition. This point is of considerable importance, as in consequence of the systematic Brahmanizing of all Vedic traditions, which characterizes the sacred literature of the Hindús, the early localities of the Vedic and Brahmanic peoples have been hitherto confounded together; and the geographical distinction between the two classes of settlements can only be ascertained after a critical investigation of the data which are to be found in the hymns of the Rig-Veda and laws of Manu.

Vedic settlements and Brahmanic settlements separated by the Saraswatí river.

According to Manu there were two ancient territories in the north-west quarter of India, which seem to have been more or less separated from each other by a once famous river known as the Saraswatí. This river might be roughly described as flowing from the Himálayas towards the south in a parallel line with the Sutlej and Jumná, and about half way between the two; and thus the Aryan invaders from the north-west would have to cross the Saraswatí on their way from the Punjab to Hindústan. The region to the westward of the river is

Vedic gods identified with the Vedic Aryans, and the god Brahma with the Bráhmans.

said by Manu to have been created or frequented by the Devatas, or gods of the Vedic Aryans. The region to the eastward of the river is said to have been the country of the ancient Bráhman priests, the worshippers of the god Brahma.[1] This distinction between the Devatas, or gods of the Vedic Aryans, and Brahma, or god of the Bráhmans, must be especially borne in mind in dealing with the history of ancient India. In Hindú traditions the gods are frequently identified with their worshippers. Thus the term "Devatas" often points to the Vedic people, whilst the term "Brahma" may sometimes point to the Bráhman people. It should also be added, that whilst the god Brahma was scarcely known to the composers of the Vedic hymns, no pains are spared in the code of Manu to represent Brahma as a deity distinct from, and far superior to, all the Vedic deities.

Opposition between the Vedic Aryans of the Punjab and the Bráhmans of Hindústan.

On the first glance at these geographical data, it would appear that the territory of the Vedic Aryans might be identified with the modern Punjab, and that the territory of the Bráhmans might be in like manner identified with that of Hindústan proper. Indeed it is by no means improbable that this conjecture involves an important geographical fact; namely, a distinction between the Vedic people and

---

[1] The distinction between the eastward and westward of the river is not clearly laid down by Manu, and the obscurity is rendered greater by a confusion as regards the real Saraswatí, which seems to have taken place in modern maps. The question will be discussed hereafter, in connection with a translation of the original texts in Manu. It will suffice to state here that a land-mark, known as the Vinasana, or disappearance of the Saraswatí, is fixed by Manu as the western boundary of the Middle region; and consequently it has been inferred that the same boundary separated the Brahmanic territory from the Vedic territory. That they were separated is certain, as Manu describes Brahmárshi-desa as being west of Brahmávarta.

Brahmanic people, corresponding to the distinction between the Punjab and Hindústan. In the hymns of the Rig-Veda frequent reference is made to the land of the seven rivers, created by Indra and Agni, which rivers seem to correspond to the seven rivers of the Punjab;[2] whilst it is plain from other allusions that the Aryan settlements extended southward along the main stream of the Indus or Sindhú towards the modern Kurrachee. In like manner it is certain that at a later period the Brahmans occupied the greater part of Hindústan, and became identified with that territory. Manu, however, restricts both the Vedic region and the Brahmanic region to a much more limited area, and distinguishes each one by a Brahmanical name. The Vedic territory is described as a small tract between the so-called Saraswatí and Dhrishadwatí, which have been identified with two little streams known in modern maps as the Sersooty and Caggar, and enclose between them a little territory about sixty miles long and from twenty-four to forty miles wide. The Brahmanic territory occupied in the mind of Manu a far larger area, but one which was still confined to western Hindústan, namely, from the bank of the Saraswatí to the bank of the Ganges in the neighbourhood of the famous city of Kanouj, an interval of about three hundred miles as the crow flies. The Brahmanical names applied by Manu to both regions, open up a question of some importance. The Vedic region he calls by the name of Brahmávarta, and the Brahmanic region by the name of

Restricted areas described by Manu.

Brahmávarta and Brahmarshi-desa.

---

[2] The seven rivers of the Punjab consist of the Indus and the Saraswatí, and the five rivers between them, namely, the Jhelum, the Chenaub, the Ravee, the Beas, and the Sutlej.

Historical origin of Brahmárshi-desa.

Brahmárshi-desa. The latter name of Brahmárshi-desa, as designating the country of the divine priests or Bráhmans, is probably historical; as the tradition is widely spread throughout India that the region indicated as Brahmárshi-desa is the mother-country of the Bráhmans. The name, however, of Brahmávarta, which Manu applies to the Vedic settlement on the Saraswatí, is apparently a mythical appellation of comparatively modern date. If both countries were named after Brahma, it seems difficult to understand why any distinction should have been laid down between them. Moreover, in the Vedic period, as will be seen hereafter, the river Saraswatí flowed on to the river Indus. In the Brahmanic period, however, when the code of Manu was promulgated, the same river disappeared in the sand long before it reached the Indus; and Vinasana, or the place of the disappearance of the river, was adopted by Manu as a land-mark which formed the western boundary of the middle region. Thus at the time when the river Saraswatí flowed to the Indus, the Vedic deities were alone worshipped by the Vedic Aryans. In the succeeding age, however, when the Saraswatí disappeared in the sand, the god Brahma was worshipped as the one Supreme Being, and the Vedic deities were either depreciated or neglected by the Bráhmans. Indeed, throughout the Institutes of Manu, the god Brahma is persistently represented as infinitely superior to the Vedic gods. He is described as the creator of the Devatas; and a day of Brahmá is said to have been equal to many thousand years of the Devatas.[3]

Mythical origin of the term "Brahmávarta."

Distinction between the age when the Saraswatí flowed to the Indus, and the age when it disappeared in the sand.

Opposition between the Vedic deities and Brahma.

---

[3] This alleged superiority of Brahmá to the Devatas is still more strikingly put forward in the Rámáyana, where the Vedic deities are represented as flying to Brahmá for protection against Rávana. See *ante*, p. 18.

Manu, however, has unconsciously revealed the real truth, as regards the mythical origin of the term "Brahmávarta." In speaking of the Vedic tract, he says:—"This country was created by the Devatas [i.e. Vedic gods], and therefore the sages [i.e. the Bráhmans of a later age, of whom Manu was the representative] gave it the name of Brahmávarta.[4]

Vedic geography of the country on the Saraswati.

A comparison of the geographical data in the Rig-Veda, when the river Saraswatí flowed on to the Indus, with the geographical data in Manu, when the same river disappeared in the sand long before it reached the Indus, will fully confirm the conclusions which have been laid down. The Saraswatí river is known in the Rig-Veda as the seventh stream; because apparently it was the seventh and last stream which the Vedic Aryans had to cross in their way from the Punjab to Hindústan proper, or in other words from the banks of the Sutlej to the banks of the Jumná.[5] It was also called the mother of the Indus or Sindhú;[6] probably because it flowed into the Indus, and thus fed or nourished that river. Its praises are duly hymned in the Rig-Veda as the mightiest of rivers, the beautiful goddess, the protecting deity, the bestower of food and riches "This Saraswatí, firm as a city made of iron, flows rapidly with all sustaining water, sweeping away in its might all other waters, as a charioteer clears the road: Saraswatí, chief and parent of rivers, flowing from the mountains to the ocean. . . . May the auspicious and gracious Saraswatí hear our praises at this sacrifice, approached as she is with reverence and with bended knees: We present to thee, Saraswatí, these oblations with reverence; be gratified by our praise; and may we ever recline upon thee, as upon a sheltering tree."[7] These mantras evidently belong to a period anterior to Brahmanism. They are the expression of men who personified their river as a female deity, and poured out their souls in a fetische worship, combining poetical sentiment with self-interested devotion. But they are not the expressions of men under Brahmanical influences, for they contain no allusion whatever to such essentials in Brahmanical ideas as the doctrine of merits and demerits, of sacrifices and penances as associated with the conception of sin, the transmigrations of the soul, and the future states of punishment and reward.

---

[4] Manu ii. 17. It will be seen hereafter that the geography of Manu must be referred to a time when the Aryans had conquered the whole of Hindústan; and that even in his time the area of Brahmanism was by no means co-extensive with the area occupied by the Aryans.

[5] Rig-Veda, Mand. vi. Hymn 36, v. 6.

Manu's geography.

Manu's geographical notices of Brahmávarta and Brahmárshi-desa are altogether of a different character.[8] Instead of indicating what would appear

---

[7] Ib. Hymn 95.

[8] The following translation of the texts in Manu will be found useful for reference. Besides Brahmávarta and Brahmárshi-desa, it will be found to refer to two other regions, namely, Madhya-desa, or the Middle region, and Aryávarta, or the Aryan pale, which will be noticed hereafter.

I.—BRAHMÁVARTA.—"The space between the two divine rivers, the Saraswatí and the Drishadwatí,—that God-created tract they call the Brahmávarta. The custom prevalent in that tract, received from successive tradition, concerning the castes and the mixed castes, is called the good custom."

II.—BRAHMÁRSHI-DESA.—"Kurukshetra, the Matsyas, the Panchálas, and the Surasenas. This land which comes to Brahmávarta, is the land of Brahmárshis (Brahmárshi-desa, or the land of divine sages). From a Brhâman born in that district let all the men on the earth learn their several duties."

III.—MADHYA-DESA.—"The tract between the Himálaya and Vindhya, to the east of Vinasana, and to the west of Prayága, is called the central region (Madhya-desa")."

IV.—ARYÁVARTA.—"The space between those two mountain ranges to the eastern and the western sea, the wise know as Aryávarta (or the land of the Aryans.)"

"Where the black antelope naturally grazes is to be held as the proper land for offering sacrifices; all else is Mlechchha-land. Let the twice-born carefully keep within these countries; but a Súdra distressed for subsistence, may dwell to be an important line of Aryan settlements westward of the Saraswatí, Manu simply defines a contracted little colony between the upper course of the Saraswatí, now called the Sersooty, and a tributary of the same river, named the Drishadwatí, but now known as the Caggar.[9]

Origin of the caste system in Saraswatí.

But the texts of Manu quoted below contain two highly significant statements, which not only throw still further light upon the all-important distinction between Brahmávarta and Brahmárshi-desa, but also seem to point to the origin of caste as well as to that of Brahmanism. Speaking of the tract on the Saraswatí, Manu says:—"The custom prevalent in that tract, received from successive tradition, concerning the castes and mixed castes, is called the good custom." This remark seems to imply that the caste system originated in the Aryan colony, probably from the relations which subsisted between the conquerors and conquered. Again, speaking of Brahmárshi-desa, he says:—"From a Bráhman born in that district let all the men in the earth learn their several duties." This remark would seem to imply that Brahmárshi-desa was the mother country of the Bráhmans. Thus two important inferences may be drawn:—

Origin of Brahmanism in Brahmárshi-desa.

First, that the caste system originated in the country to the westward of the river Saraswatí.

---

anywhere." Professor Cowell's translation of Manu, ii. 17—24, in Elphinstone's History of India, fifth edition, p. 225.

[9] Manu's misconception as regards the Aryan settlement in Vedic times seems to have led to some misrepresentation on modern maps. The name of Sersooty, as a corruption of Saraswatí, has been restricted to the upper course of the river before its junction with the Caggar; and the Sersooty has thus been converted from a main stream into a tributary. On the other hand the name of the Caggar has been extended over the whole course of the Saraswatí to the spot where it disappears in the sand.

Secondly, that Brahmanism originated in the country to the eastward of the river Saraswatí, that is, in the region between the Saraswatí and the Jumná.[10]

Progress of Aryan invasion and conquest of Hindústan before the time of Manu.

The curtain of Indian history thus rises upon two distinct regions, occupying opposite banks of the river Saraswatí, namely, Brahmávarta, or the land of Devatas, and Brahmárshi-desa, or the land of Bráhmans. But Manu describes two other regions, namely, Madhya-desa, or the Middle region, and Aryávarta, or the Aryan pale. The geographical data in connection with this mapping out of Hindústan are of considerable importance, inasmuch as they furnish a further illustration of the chronological interval between the hymns of the Rig-Veda and the laws of Manu; between the flowing of the Saraswatí into the Indus and the disappearance of the Saraswatí in the sand. The Middle region extended from the disappearance of the Saraswatí to the junction of the Ganges and Jumná at Alláhabád; but Aryávarta, or the land of

---

[10] The country which Manu terms Brahmárshi appears to have extended over the valleys of the Ganges and Jumná from the neighbourhood of Delhi and Hastinápur to the neighbourhood of Kanouj, an ancient city of great renown, which was situated on the Ganges about sixty-five miles to the westward of Lucknow. The localities indicated in the texts of Manu already quoted, may be identified as follows:—The plain of Kurukshetra must have been situated in the neighbourhood of the settlements of the Kauravas and Pándavas at Hastinápur and Delhi. The country of Matsya is dubious, but may have been the modern Jeypur. The identifications of Panchála with Kanyakubja or Kanouj, and of Surasena with Mathura, rest on the authority of Kullúka, the commentator of Manu, and may have been connected with the worship of Krishna; Kanyakubja being the name of the humpbacked woman who was healed by Krishna, and Sura being the Chieftain of the Yadavas at Mathura, and the reputed grandfather of Krishna. It has already been doubted whether the Raj of Panchála, possessed by Raja Drupada, really extended as far as Kanouj; but this by no means militates against Kullúka's representation of the extent of Brahmárshi, the land of the Brahman Rishis. See *ante*, Vol. I. *passim*.

Aryans, extended from sea to sea.[11] Thus in the time of the Rig-Veda the Aryans had advanced only to the "seventh stream" or Saraswatí; whilst in the time of Manu they had spread throughout Hindústan. It may also be added that the Institutes of Manu were composed prior to any conquest of the Dekhan; for Manu expressly forbids any men of the three twice-born castes from dwelling in any other country than Aryávarta.

Restricted area of the Bráhmans compared with the extensive area of the Aryans in the time of Manu.

But there is another and still more significant point in the geography of Manu which must not be overlooked. In his reference to the most ancient period, which has been here termed the Vedic age, the area of the Aryans is a very small tract in comparison with the area of the Bráhmans. But it will be seen in his description of the Brahmanical period, in which he himself flourished, that the Aryan pale was a far more extensive area than the Bráhman pale. The country of the Bráhmans only extended from the Saraswatí to the Ganges; but the country of Aryávarta extended over the whole of Hindústan. In other words, the advancing tide of Aryans had poured through Brahmárshi-desa, and had doubtless carried with them much of the Brahmanical faith and ritual; although the orthodoxy and morals of a gallant race of heroes who had conquered Hindústan, must have appeared dubious in the eyes of a true Bráhman. They drove war chariots, tamed wild horses, and were proficients in the use of the bow and battle-axe; and so far their services were valuable as protecting the Bráhmans, Vaisyas, and Súdras,—the priests, merchants, and cultivators,—against the barbarous aborigines. But they were addicted to wine, gambling, and flesh meat, which were one and all an abomination to the Bráhman. Moreover, they seem to have been often led away by their love of beautiful women to contract unions with the fair maidens of the newly-conquered territory, which were contrary to all Brahmanical rule. Therefore Manu promulgated his code for their edification, and especially directed that all men should learn their duties from those Bráhmans only who were born in Brahmárshi-desa, or within the Bráhman pale.

---

[11] There is some vagueness in the expression from sea to sea, inasmuch as the latitude of both Brahmávarta and Brahmárshi on one side, and of Bengal on the other, lies far to the northward of the sea-coast. But we must not expect much geographical precision from Manu as regards latitude. It is, however, still a question whether Bengal is to be included in Aryávarta, or whether we may assume that in ancient times the Bay extended sufficiently far to the northwards to form an eastern boundary.

CHAPTER III.

RISHIS AND BRÁHMANS.

Distinction between the Vedic psalmists and Bráhman priests.

THE distinction between the Vedic age and Brahmanic age has now been fully indicated, and will be further illustrated hereafter. The point to be established in the present chapter is the distinction between the Rishis, who composed the hymns of the Rig-Veda in the land of the seven rivers, and the Bráhmans of a later period, who performed sacrifices, and promulgated their complex code of rites and observances in the western quarter of Hindústan. In other words, between the joyous psalmists who poured out their souls in earnest and vigorous prayers to the Vedic deities for the material blessings of this world; and the gloomy race of priests, who promulgated the doctrines of religious austerities and future transmigration with especial reference to the life which is to come.

Vedic religion restricted generally to the present life.

The composers of the hymns of the Rig-Veda appear to have had little faith in a life hereafter, in the immortality of the soul, or in a future state of rewards and punishments, beyond a vague conception of Yama as a god or judge of the dead. The Vedic Aryans also had some crude ideas, connected with the propitiation of the Pitris, or ghosts of deceased ancestors, with food and water; but this propitiation seems to have been only an expression of affectionate remembrance, and to have been scarcely connected with religious ideas. In a few of the hymns, which appear to be of comparatively later origin, ideas of a spiritual life after death may have found expression; but such lofty aspirations are not to be found in the compositions of the more popular and genial psalmists. On the contrary, the Vedic bards were endowed with a large capacity for worldly enjoyment, and a healthy and human appreciation of material good; and their hymns in general are the early expressions of a child-like belief in the individual existence of superior and spiritual beings in the elements, which could work either good or evil. The sun could ripen the harvest or burn it up; the rain could nourish the crops or destroy them; the wind could blow in gentle zephyrs or rush along the earth in hurricanes. The necessity for propitiating such beings was therefore obvious. Accordingly the Vedic bard personified them into deities, and gratified them with offerings of strong drink and choice viands, and hymned them with praises as they were accustomed to hymn their own warriors and Rajas. Thus having feasted the gods and lauded them, the worshipper naturally expected in return such blessings as the gods had to bestow. Besides however the elementary deities, a host of other spiritual existences were personified into gods at the mere fancy of the imaginative bard. Heaven and earth, rivers, weapons, food, soma wine, the dawn, the sacrifice itself, and the priest who offered it, were alike invested with a spiritual life and converted into deities. The chief gods of all however were Indra and Agni, whose attributes have already been described; Indra as the type of sovereignty and conquest, the giver of rain, and sometimes the creator of the rivers and mountains; and Agni, as light or fire in all its varied manifestations, as the creative or vivifying spirit which animated the entire universe like a Supreme Soul.

Genial character of the Vedic ceremonial.

It is perhaps difficult in a philosophic age to sympathize in the deep religious fervour with which the Aryan psalmists invoked such deities as those which have been described. But the natural selfishness which lies at the root of such religious enthusiasm, sufficiently explains the cause of the vitality of their devotion. So long as the people believed that material blessings were to be obtained by offerings of food and wine, and hymns of praise and prayer, so long they would continue to prepare the feast for the gods, and pour forth their souls in passionate laudation and supplication. The nature of the Vedic worship would also be specially acceptable to a convivial community; for its rites would be associated with every joyous gathering, if not with every family meal; and it would naturally be popular so long as the community believed that they could procure plenteous harvests, prolific cattle, abundance of sons, health, vigour, and long life, by the simple process of feasting and singing in the presence of their kind-hearted and generous deities.

Popularity and power of the Vedic psalmists.

At the same time the genius of the bard would be stimulated to a pitch never reached by the poet of a more enlightened and incredulous age. Riches, fame, and glory would be the reward of that Rishi, who personified a new deity or composed a new hymn, if his poetical flights only reached the ears of the god, and procured earthly blessings for the congregation of worshippers. Sometimes a fair daughter was given in marriage to a young and successful bard. Thus the legend has already been related of the Raja of Anga, who gave his daughter in marriage to a young Rishi, who brought down the rain after a long-continued drought.[1] In like manner a legend has been preserved in the hymns of the Rig-Veda of another Raja, dwelling on the banks of the Sindhú or Indus, who gave ten daughters in marriage to a young psalmist named Kakshívat, together with rich dowries of cows, horses, and chariots.[2]

Daughters of Rajas bestowed in marriage upon Rishis.

Wide interval between Vedic and Brahmanical ideas.

It thus seems impossible to identify these ancient Vedic bards or Rishis with the more modern Bráhman priests. The hymns contain many references to priests or cooks, and some isolated allusions to Bráhmans; but the god Brahma scarcely ever appears to have been recognized or worshipped. Again, while some of the hymns comprise speculations about the soul, the relative priority of earth and heaven, and the creation of the universe, which is ascribed to Indra or Agni, there is no expression of Brahmanical ideas, and no reference to the creation of the universe by Brahmá. Judging therefore from the analogy furnished by Hebrew history, the hymns might be referred to a class of minstrels of whom king David was a type, rather than to a sacerdotal class. But there is an opposition in the

Vedic bards resemble the Hebrew psalmists.

---

[1] See *ante*, Part IV. chap. ii.

[2] Rig-Veda, Mand. I. Hymn 126. There are several legends of a later date of Rajas giving their daughters in marriage to Bráhmans who are identified with Rishis; but the stories appear to have passed through a Brahmanical crucible, for the husbands in such cases appear as decrepit old Bráhmans rather than as youthful Rishis. Notwithstanding all the efforts of the Puranic authors to represent the young wives as loving and faithful under such circumstances, the idea is neither agreeable to poetical sentiment, nor to human nature, which finds a healthier expression in such ballads as "Auld Robin Gray."

Opposition in the Vedic hymns between a peaceful community and a warlike community.

hymns of the Rig-Veda between a peaceful community and a warlike community which might possibly indicate an opposition between the ancestors of the men who afterwards became Bráhmans and the ancestors of the men who afterwards became Kshatriyas. Such an opposition must be referred to a period long before the Aryans had crossed the Saraswatí, and entered Brahmárshi-desa; and consequently long before the names of Bráhman and Kshatriya had been applied to the priest and warrior castes. It has already been seen[3] that the majority of the hymns of the Rig-Veda are the expression of a peaceful community, who offered simple oblations of butter and milk to the deities of the elements, and other personified abstractions; and this class of priestly worshippers has been identified with the ancestors of the later Bráhmans. In like manner it has been seen that there are other hymns which appear to be the expression of a warlike class of the community; for they are connected with flesh sacrifices to Indra; and accordingly this class of worshippers has been identified with the ancestors of the later Kshatriyas. Traces are also to be found in these ancient hymns of an opposition between the worship of the Maruts, or winds, by a peaceful community, and the worship of Indra, as a hero, by a warlike community.[4] In one hymn Indra is represented as expostulating with the Maruts in the following language:—"Where, Maruts, has that food been assigned to you, which was appropriated to me alone for the destruction of Ahi? For I indeed am fierce, and strong, and mighty, and have bowed

Opposition between the worship of the Maruts and the worship of Indra.

---

[3] See *ante*, Vol. I. Introduction.

[4] See Wilson's Rig-Veda, vol. ii. pp. 145—162.

down all my enemies with death-dealing shafts."[5] Again, Agastya the sage, who appears to have especially upheld the worship of the Maruts, expostulates with Indra thus:—"Why, Indra, dost thou purpose to slay us? The Maruts are thy brethren! Share with them in peace; destroy us not in enmity."[6] In another hymn a worshipper thus expresses to the Maruts his alarm at the jealousy of Indra:—"Maruts, through fear of that violent Indra, I fly trembling; the oblations that had been prepared for you have been put away; nevertheless have patience with us."[7] Indeed some of the hymns which are addressed to Indra are wholly of a warlike and triumphant character, like the song of Miriam, or the Song of Barak and Deborah, and can scarcely be identified as belonging to a devotional psalmody The potent god, the showerer of benefits, is invoked as the destroyer of the cities of the Dasyus, the conqueror of Sambara, the slayer of the black-skinned barbarians who gave him no libations, and who molested the white-complexioned Aryans, that were his friends and worshippers.

Further clue to the opposition between Rishis and Bráhmans, furnished by the distinction between Rájarshis, Devarshis, and Brahmarshis.

A further clue to the distinction between Rishis and Bráhmans seems to be furnished by the distinction laid down in the Puránas between Rájarshis, or king Rishis; Devarshis, or god Rishis; and Brahmarshis, or Bráhman sages. The king Rishis were probably Kshatriyas, who have always been designated Rajas. The god Rishis, termed Devarshis, or Rishis of the Devatas, were probably Rishis of the peaceful community, or rather of the Aryan race in general, who are often alluded to as Devatas, or gods. Finally, the term Brahmarshis was apparently applied to the early Bráhman sages; and hence their country was distinguished from the Aryan country, or the land of Devatas, by the term Brahmárshi-desa.[8]

---

[5] Rig-Veda, Mand. I. Hymn 145, v. 6. Ahi is another name for Vrita, who is sometimes treated as a personification of the rain cloud, and sometimes as a Daitya or warrior amongst the aborigines.

[6] Ib. Hymn 170, v. 2.

[7] Ib. Hymn 171, v. 4.

First appearance of the Bráhmans as mercenary sacrificers.

The advent of the Bráhmans, and the establishment of their ascendancy as a great spiritual hierarchy must have been the work of generations if not of centuries. Traces, however, are not wanting of the circumstances under which they rose. They first appeared among the Aryan community as mercenary priests, or sacrificers, who were prepared to officiate at the great festivals or sacrificial sessions for the sake of hire. Here it should be remarked that in the Vedic period the Kshatriyas were their own priests; the term priest being employed to indicate the performers of sacred rites, as distinct from the Rishis or composers of sacred songs. In other words, the Chiefs of a family, a tribe, or a Raj, appear occasionally as performers of a sacrifice, and even as celebrating the rites of marriage. Thus at the famous Aswamedha of Raja Yudhishthira, the horse was not sacrificed by a Bráhman, but by Bhíma, the second Pándava; whilst the marriage rites of Nala and Damayantí were performed by the Raja of Vidarbha, and those of Ráma and Sítá by the Raja of Mithila. Subsequently the Bráhmans were apparently hired by Rajas to perform the laborious ceremonies at the great sacrifices; and in this capacity they were regarded with disdain by

The Kshatriyas originally their own priests.

Subsequent hiring of Bráhmans.

---

[8] Compare Vishnu Purána, Book iv. chap. 3.

the Kshatriyas. Thus the Kshatriyas at the Swayamvara of Draupadí expressed hot indignation that a Bráhman should have presumed to compete for the hand of the daughter of a Kshatriya; and Drupada and his son were much troubled at seeing Draupadí led away by Arjuna, who was disguised as a Bráhman. This implied inferiority of the Bráhman to the Kshatriya is the more extraordinary from the contrast which it furnishes to later myths of a Brahmanical origin, in which Rajas are represented as bestowing their own daughters in marriage upon Bráhmans.

Ascendancy of the Bráhmans secured by asceticism.

The weapon by which the ancient Bráhmans appear to have established their ascendancy was that of asceticism. A religious enthusiast or fanatic, who leads a life of abstinence and mortification, and voluntarily subjects himself to privations and sufferings for the ostensible object of subduing his appetites and instincts, and elevating himself to the level of divine beings, will naturally excite the ridicule of an epicurean hierarchy, but he will also be regarded with veneration and superstitious awe by the wondering masses. Amongst a people like the Vedic Aryans, who were imbued with a strong and healthy appreciation of the material enjoyments of human life, the rise of such a sect of ascetics, with their wearisome ceremonial and ostentatious austerities, must have been regarded either with a credulous belief in the efficacy of such observances, or with a philosophical indifference and contempt for such self-denying fanaticism. Traces of this ignorant faith and scornful satire are alike to be found in the hymns of the Rig-Veda. In one hymn, which appears to have been of Kshatriya origin, inasmuch

Vedic faith in the power of the Bráhmans.

as it was addressed to weapons and armour considered as deities, the worshippers are represented as saying:—"May the Bráhmans, presenters of Soma, protect us." Here the Bráhmans appear as priests presenting the Soma to the sacrificial fire, as distinguished from the Rishi, or composer of the hymn, which is addressed to the Bráhmans. Moreover, the protection of the Bráhmans is invoked by the worshippers, apparently from a belief in their supernatural powers. Another hymn appears as an expression of sarcasm. Under the guise of a panegyric upon the frogs, it is in reality a satire upon the Bráhmans, their penances and elaborate rites; and it is somewhat remarkable that the hymn should be ascribed to a famous Rishi named Vasishtha, who has always been represented in the Epics and Puránas as a true Bráhman. The whole hymn has been exquisitely translated by Professor Max Müller, and will be duly appreciated by those who have heard the demonstrative croaking of the Indian frogs on the approach of the rainy season. The following extracts will sufficiently indicate its character:—"After lying prostrate for a year, like Bráhmans performing a vow, the frogs have emitted their voice, roused by the showers of heaven. When the heavenly waters fall upon them as upon a dry fish lying in a pond, the music of the frogs comes together, like the lowing of the cows with their calves. . . . . Like Bráhmans at the Soma sacrifice of Atirata, sitting round a full pond and talking, you, O frogs, celebrate this day of the year when the rainy season begins."[9] Another hymn translated by

Vedic sarcasms levelled at the Bráhmans.

Bráhmans compared with frogs.

---

[9] Max Müller's History of Sanskrit Literature, p. 494. "It is curious," says this eminent scholar, "to observe that the same animal should have been chosen

Professor H. H. Wilson is more obscure, but seems to partake of the same satirical character.[10]

Recapitulation.

The results which may be drawn from the foregoing data appear to establish the conclusion, that in the old Vedic period there was a peaceful community and a warlike community; and that the former were inclined to the worship of the Maruts, whilst the latter were inclined to the worship of Indra. It accordingly follows that there were two classes of Rishis, who may be respectively referred to the same communities; namely, the domestic or family bards, who prayed for health and prosperity; and the warrior psalmists, who chaunted triumphant war songs in honour of the victorious Indra. The opposition, however, between these two is only imperfectly indicated in the Vedic hymns; and it is difficult to say how far it may have originated the opposition between the Bráhman and the Kshatriya. But the opposition of the Bráhmans to the Kshatriyas finds full expression in the Vedic period. The penances of the Bráhmans were likened to the croaking of frogs by the Vedic Rishi Vasishtha; whilst the Bráhmans themselves were held in contempt as mercenary sacrificers by the ancient Rajas.

---

by the Vedic satirists to represent the priests (Bráhmans), which was selected by the earliest satirist of Greece as the representative of the Homeric heroes."

[10] Rig-Veda, Mand. I. Hymn 179. This hymn contains a dialogue between Agastya and his wife, in which the latter seems to complain that her husband has neglected her in order to perform penance, contrary to the custom of the ancient Rishis. It has already been seen that Agastya appears in the Rig-Veda as the representative of the peaceful community, who worshipped the Maruts in opposition to Indra.

CHAPTER IV

VEDIC AND BRAHMANIC CONCEPTIONS OF MANU.

Manu identified as the first man and divine lawgiver.

BEFORE proceeding to indicate the further distinction between the Vedic and Brahmanic ages, it will be necessary to distinguish between the Vedic conception of Manu as the first man, and the Brahmanic conception of Manu as the divine lawgiver.

Vedic conception of Manu as the first man.

The conception of Manu as the first man, the father of the Vedic Aryans, if not of the whole human race, finds sufficient expression in the hymns of the Rig-Veda.[1] Subsequently, in the Brahmanic period he is said to have been warned by a fish to build a ship, in which he ultimately escaped from a great flood; a legend which bears a curious resemblance to the Mosaic tradition of Noah and the deluge.[2] From these circumstances the famous Brahmanical code has been ascribed to Manu, and is still known as the Institutes of Manu. This association of the name of the Vedic Manu with the Brahmanical code may have arisen from the desire to assert the remote antiquity and divine authority

Brahmanic conception of Manu as the divine lawgiver.

---

[1] Rig-Veda, Mand. I. Hymn 45, v. 1. Ib. Hymn 30, v. 16.

[2] A translation of the legend, as it is related in the Satapatha-Bráhmana, is given by Professor Max Müller in his History of Sanskrit Literature, p. 425. Another version has been preserved in the Mahá Bhárata, in which Manu is said to have taken seeds of grain and vegetables into his ark, just as Noah is said to have taken pairs of animals.

of Brahmanical law; but it may also have been deemed expedient to recommend that law to the worshippers of the Vedic deities, by referring its origin to the time-honoured progenitor of the Vedic Aryans.

Laws of Manu a compromise between Vedic and Brahmanic ideas.

The connection of the Vedic Manu with the Brahmanical law is accompanied by another significant fact, which has already been indicated. The so-called "Institutes of Manu" are the expression of an important compromise in the religious history of the Hindús; being, in fact, a compromise between the worship of the Vedic deities and the worship of the god Bráhma, between whom an opposition amounting almost to an antagonism seems at one time to have prevailed. The compilers of the code have certainly spared no pains to uphold the worship of the god Bráhma above that of the Vedic deities; but at the same time they have found it necessary to recognize Vedic rites and institutions to an extent which imparts a two-fold character to a large portion of the code; one referring to the Vedic period, and the other to the Brahmanic period. At the same time, however, the compromise has evidently been carried out by Bráhmans, who have done their best, as in the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana, to Brahmanize every Vedic tradition.

Historical significance of the compromise.

Conflicting character of Manu's authorities.

The main object of the present chapter is to show that the opposition involved in this compromise, originated in the conflicting character of the authorities from which the so-called laws of Manu have been derived; and in order to carry out this object effectually, it will be necessary to indicate with sufficient clearness the character and scope of those authorities. Upon this point the compilers of the code have been most explicit. There are, it is said, four roots of the law, namely :—

Four roots of the law.

1st, The whole Veda.

2nd, The ordinances and practices of such as understand the Veda.

3rd, The immemorial customs of good men.

4th, The approval of conscience in matters which are indifferent.[3]

The Vedas.

The first question for consideration in connection with the foregoing data, relates to the meaning which is to be attached to the term "Veda" as employed in the code of Manu. In reality there are four Vedas, corresponding to the four heads or faces of the god Brahma, who is popularly regarded as the divine author of the Vedas. But hitherto reference has only been made to the Rig-Veda, which is, however, the most ancient and important of the whole; and, indeed, the remaining three Vedas mainly depend upon the Rig-Veda, and may be regarded as Brahmanized versions of it, with later additions of a Brahmanical character.[4]

---

[3] Manu, ii. 6.

[4] The character of the four Vedas may be thus indicated :—

1st, The Rig-Veda, which is the oldest, consists of metrical hymns addressed to different deities in the language of praise or laudation.

2nd, The Yajur-Veda, which chiefly consists of nearly the same hymns in prose, taking the form of prayers, and being in fact a collection of liturgical formulæ, especially relating to oblation and sacrifice.

3rd, The Sáma-Veda, which consists of a re-cast, or re-arrangement, of very nearly the same hymns, for the purpose of chaunting.

4th, The Atharva-Veda, which, differing in some respects from the foregoing, consists of prayers, which are either employed at lustrations, or at rites intended to conciliate the deities, or as imprecations upon enemies. It comprises, however, many of the hymns of the Rig-Veda.

The foregoing description of the four Vedas refers only to what is called the Mantra portion, consisting of hymns, prayers, and chaunts. But there is another and a later portion known as the Bráhmananam, which is also included under the term "Veda," and which is sufficiently described in the text. Colebrooke's *Essays on the Veda;* Wilson's *Introduction to the Rig-Veda.*

The Mantras and Bráhmanas.

Again, each of the four Vedas is divided into two portions, namely:—

1st, Mantras, or hymns and prayers, which appear to be the spontaneous outpourings of the devotions of a primitive people.

2nd, Bráhmanas, or formal rituals, in which hymns, prayers, sacrificial rites, and other mystic ceremonies, follow each other in established order; but they also include much explanatory matter of a mythical or theological character.

The Mantras of the Rig-Veda referred to the Vedic age, and the Brahmanas to the Brahmanic age.

Hitherto reference has only been made to the Mantra portion of the Rig-Veda; inasmuch as the Bráhmana of that Veda does not appear to yield any results which can be regarded as historical.[5] The distinction however between an age of spontaneous devotion, and one of formal ritualism, is one of considerable historical significance, as the former seems to refer to the Vedic age and the latter to the Brahmanic age. The term Veda, as employed in Manu, thus seems to have generally included the whole of the Mantras and Bráhmanas of all the four Vedas; although three Vedas only are actually mentioned by Manu.[6] The term Bráhmana, however, is sometimes employed in a larger sense, and comprises a still later class of writings, which contain much metaphysical and mystical speculation respecting the Supreme Soul and the creation of the universe. These writings are termed Aryanyakas and Upanishads, and are apparently included in the term Veda as employed by Manu; inasmuch as it will be seen hereafter that the Hindú lawgiver has borrowed some of the ideas which they convey in his account of the creation of the universe by Brahmá.

---

[5] Some account of the Bráhmana of each Veda is to be found in Colebrooke's *Essays* and Wilson's *Introduction to the Rig-Veda*, Vol. I. The most interesting and important is the Bráhmana of the Rig-Veda known as the Aitareya Bráhmana. The text of this Bráhmana, together with an English translation, has been recently furnished by Dr Haug of Bombay. It furnishes valuable illustrations of what may be called the sacrificial phase of Brahmanism, which has long been dying out in India, and which indeed has already died out in many provinces under British rule; but it cannot be said to yield any results which can be rendered available for purely historical purposes. The following data, however, which are given on the authority of the learned translator, are worthy of notice.

The term Mantra, i. e. "the produce of thinking," is of a very early date, for it is to be found in the Zend-Avesta in the form of *Manthra.* Its meaning there is that of a sacred prayer or formula, to which a magical effect was ascribed; just in the same manner that a similar effect was ascribed to the Vedic mantras. The Bráhmanam however is a later production, referring to the Mantra and based upon the Mantra; and indeed without the Mantra it would have no meaning, nay, its very existence would be impossible. It contains speculations on the meaning of the Mantras, gives precepts for their application, relates stories of their origin in connection with that of sacrificial rites, and explains the secret meaning of the latter. It is in short a kind of primitive theology and philosophy of the Bráhmans. The name Bráhmanam is altogether unknown to the Zend-Avesta, and therefore must have originated after the migration of the Vedic Aryans from Central Asia, and probably after the advent of the Vedic Aryans in Hindústan. Haug's *Aitareya Bráhmanam*, vol. i. *Introduction.*

Aryanyakas and Upanishads included under the term Bráhmanas.

Besides the Veda thus defined, Manu indicates three other roots of law. He speaks of the ordinances and practices of those who understand the Veda; and by this expression he either refers to the Bráhmanas, or dicta of Bráhmans, already described; or to the more ancient commentators upon the Vedas, the fathers of the Brahmanical religion, who might be supposed to interpret the more simple hymns of the Rig-Veda according to their own peculiar dogmas, and impart to the child-like ceremonial of the Vedic Aryans a mystic meaning never contemplated by the primitive Rishis on the banks of the Saraswatí. He also speaks of the immemorial customs of good men; under which head he appears to include the usages of different countries, tribes,

Three other roots of law.

Later ordinances.

Immemorial customs.

---

[6] Manu mentions the Rig-Veda, which is held sacred to the gods; the Yajur-Veda, which relates to mankind; and the Sáma-Veda, which concerns the spirits of ancestors. Manu, iv. 124.

Things indifferent approved by conscience.

Spirit of toleration.

and families. To these he adds those acts, which refer to things indifferent, and which have received the approval of conscience. In this description of three roots of the law in addition to the Veda, may be found the full expression of that spirit of toleration and compromise which accounts for the spread and success of Brahmanism. The Bráhmans rarely attempted to ignore or denounce the traditions of any new people with whom they came in contact; but rather they converted such materials into vehicles for the promulgation of their peculiar tenets. In like manner they did not rashly attempt the suppression of immemorial customs, but they tolerated them; condemning them however when opposed to their own ideas of morality, and leaving time to do the rest. This course must have greatly assisted in the promulgation of a new and foreign faith; inasmuch as a people will frequently cling to its time-honoured customs with a tenacity which is only increased by opposition, but which if left alone will gradually die out with the progress of enlightenment and refinement.[7]

Distinction between Sruti, or revelation, and Smriti, or tradition.

Another point which Manu notices in connection with his code, is the distinction between Sruti, or revelation, and Smriti, or tradition; in other words, between the Veda which is regarded as a revelation, and what is called the whole body of the law, which is regarded as tradition.[8] This distinction may be of some importance as an illustration of the national belief in inspiration; and it may throw some light upon that era in the history of Sanskrit literature when inspiration was supposed to end and tradition to begin; but at present the question is somewhat obscure, and moreover furnishes no clue to the ancient condition of the people at large.[5] In connection with this subject Manu indulges in certain denunciations against those atheists who followed after heretical books, and threw contempt upon revelation and tradition, which appear to be of some historical significance, inasmuch as they were apparently directed against the Buddhists, who denied the authority of the Veda.[6]

---

[7] It will be seen hereafter, that this toleration is fully illustrated by the laws of Manu as regards Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages, by which such marriages were permitted to the Kshatriyas, but still were condemned by the Hindú law-giver.

[8] Manu, ii. 10.

Buddhists denounced as atheists.

Manu, the text book of the Bráhmans.

But whilst the code of Manu is to be regarded as a compromise, it is emphatically the expression of Brahmanism, and the text book of the Bráhmans. It was the duty and privilege of every Bráhman to study it; and it was strictly enjoined that no one but a Bráhman should teach it to his pupils or disciples, and that no one but a member of the twice-born castes should be permitted to read it at all.[7] At the same time its authority was supreme, for it was regarded as a divine revelation from Manu, the son of Brahmá.

---

[8] The religious aspect of the question has been discussed by Professors Max Müller and Goldstücker; in Max Müller's "History of Sanskrit Literature," and Goldstücker's "Panini, and his place in Sanskrit Literature."

[10] Manu, ii. 11.

[7] Manu, i. 103.

CHAPTER V.

CREATION OF THE UNIVERSE BY MANU AND BRAHMÁ.

Obscurity of the Vedic idea of the origin of the universe.

THE Vedic idea of the creation of the universe, and the origin of the human race, seems to have been confused and obscure. Speculations on such subjects rarely belong to an age of primitive belief, when the first expression of philosophic inquiry would be satisfied with the simple dogmas that the earth was created by the gods, and that the traditionary ancestor of the tribe was the first man. Sometimes in the exaggerated language of poetry the Vedic bards ascribed the creation of the earth to Indra, or Agni; but they appear to have had no definite idea of a universe of being, or of the creation of a universe. Their homes were in the Punjab, and the Punjab was their little world. Accordingly, the child-like credulity of the masses readily acquiesced in the pious vauntings of the Vedic bard, that the seven rivers of the Punjab were brought down from the Himálayas by the god Indra, the ancient warrior and leader of the Aryan invaders; whilst the more thoughtful and inquiring minds might have been occasionally lost in that sea of metaphysical speculation, which ascribed the origin of life and being to the god Agni, or, in other words, to the element of fire in all its various forms and manifestations. The

Indra and Agni regarded as creators of the earth.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Conception of father Manu as the progenitor of men.

Vedic Aryans, however, appear to have arrived at some conception of the first man, who was known in the familiar phraseology of the hymns as father Manu; but even there Manu scarcely appears as a creator of the human race, but simply as the progenitor of men.[1]

The Purusha hymn.

There is, however, a Vedic hymn, known as the Purusha hymn, which is said to be a comparatively late composition, in which the gods and Rishis are supposed to offer up Purusha, or the Supreme Spirit, as a sacrifice, and to dismember him for the purpose of creating the earth out of his limbs.[2] This conception was apparently derived from an ancient myth, which also finds expression in the Scandinavian mythology; and it will be necessary to refer to it hereafter in connection with the origin of the four castes; but it can scarcely be regarded as a definite Vedic idea of the origin and creation of a universe of being.[3]

Cosmogony of the Brahmanic period.

The account of the creation which is given in the Brahmanical code is altogether of a different character from that which finds expression in the Vedic hymns. The age of Aryan conquest had been succeeded by an age of Brahmanical contemplation; and thus a theory of the origin of the universe was evolved out of the moral consciousness, which presents a curious combination of two opposite ideas, namely, the creative faculty of a Supreme

---

[1] Rig-Veda, Mand. I. Hymn 80, v. 16.

[2] Muir's *Sanskrit texts*, vol. i. chap. 1, sect. 2.

[3] When the sons of Bör had slain the giant Ymir they dragged his body into the middle of Ginnungagap, and of it formed the earth. From Ymir's blood they made seas and waters; from his flesh the land; from his bones the mountains; and his teeth and jaws served to make the stones and pebbles. Prose Edda, Part I. s. 8, *Blackwell's Translation*.

The Spirit moving on the waters.

Spirit, and the ordinary operation of physiological laws. The first idea bears a strong resemblance to the Mosaic cosmogony, and indicates four distinct stages in the creative process, viz. :—

1st, The universe existing in darkness, or chaos.

2nd, The darkness dispelled by the light of the Supreme Spirit.

3rd, The creation of the waters by the light of the Supreme Spirit.

4th, The Supreme Spirit moving upon the waters.

The birth of Brahmá in an egg, and creation from the egg.

The second idea resembles the Orphic cosmogony, and indicates five further stages in the creative process, viz. :—

1st, The productive seed placed in the waters by the Supreme Spirit, and expanding into the mundane egg.

2nd, The birth of Brahmá in the egg.

3rd, The division of the egg and formation of the heavens and the earth.

4th, The creation of Mind and Consciousness, the three Moral qualities, the five Senses, and the great Elements.

5th, The creation of Manu and the ten Manus, from whom all the created things were produced.

Manu's account of the creation.

Manu's account of the creation is as follows:—

The Supreme Spirit.

"In the beginning the universe only existed in darkness; upon which that Supreme Spirit, whom no man hath seen, whom no man can comprehend, and whom the mind alone can perceive, appeared with undiminished glory and dispelled the gloom. And the Supreme Spirit created the waters by his will, and placed in them a productive seed. And the seed became an egg as bright as gold and as luminous as the sun; and in that egg the Supreme Spirit was born in

The egg.

the form of Brahmá, the divine male, the great forefather of all spirits. And the waters are called Nárá, because they were the production of Nárá, or the Supreme Spirit; and as it was on the waters that the Supreme Spirit first moved, he is named Náráyana, or he whose place of moving was the waters. And Brahmá sat in that egg during a whole year; and then he caused the egg to divide itself; and from the egg he framed the heavens and the earth and the great waters. From the Supreme Spirit emanated Mind and Consciousness; and all vital forms endued with the three Moral qualities of Goodness, Passion, and Darkness; and the five Perceptions of Sense, and the five Organs of Sensation; from which also proceed the great Elements, and their several Properties. Then Brahmá divided himself, and became half male and half female, and from that female he produced Viráj. Know that I (Manu) am that person whom the male Viráj produced by himself; and I, Manu, am the framer of all things. I created ten Manus, or Lords of created beings, and they produced all beings, vegetable and animal. When Brahmá awakes the universe expands; but when he sleeps the universe passes away."[4]

Heaven and earth.

Metaphysical existences.

Viráj.

Manu and the ten Manus.

Cosmogony of Manu compared with that of Moses.

It will now be seen that the first four stages in the cosmogony of Manu, namely, darkness, light, water, and the Spirit moving on the water, present a remarkable similarity to those which appear in the Mosaic account; excepting that Manu seems to represent the light as existing before the waters, whilst the Mosaic account seems to imply that the waters were created first and the light afterwards. But the conception of the Supreme Spirit moving in or on the waters, demands a passing

Contrast between the Hindú idea of Bráhma sleeping on the waters, and the Hebrew idea of vivifying wind.

---

[4] Manu, i. 1—69. The translations from Manu, both here and elsewhere throughout the present work, are generally given in a condensed form, so as to avoid the repetitions and verbiage which are to be found in the original. A considerable amount of useless matter has also been often excluded altogether, as utterly devoid of either significance or interest.

inquiry, inasmuch as it exhibits a radical difference between the working of the minds of the Hebrew and Hindú. The Mosaic account of the creation is as follows:—"The earth was without form and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters. And God said:—'Let there be light;' and there was light."[5] Here the term "Spirit" implies the breath of Deity; and the conception of the breath of life animating the waters can scarcely be said to run counter with an enlightened idea of creative force. But the Hindú conception is that of a Supreme Being reposing or sleeping upon the waters, creating the universe in idea only. This idea furnishes a striking illustration of the dreamy character of the Hindú intellect, but is altogether opposed to that notion of the wakeful and all-seeing energy of the Almighty, which is common to Hebrew and European thought. The conception of Brahmá sleeping upon the waters was naturally formed by a people, who consider rest and quietude beneath the shade of a tree, or by the side of still waters, to be the acme of bliss, and the proper sphere of devotional exercises. But an ardent and energetic race could no more imagine Deity to slumber than it could suppose the tides to stand still, or the monsoons to cease to blow.

Conception of the mundane egg.

The next conception in the order of creation is that of a productive seed, which is placed in the waters and expands until it becomes a vast and luminous egg, in which Brahmá is born, and from which the heavens and earth are created. This

---

[5] Genesis i. 2, 3.

Origin of the conception.

Possible connection with the worship of the Linga.

conception corresponds with the famous Orphic idea of a mundane egg, which appears to have been familiar to the Greeks.[6] In all probability it arose from a contemplation of the vault of heaven, which may be said to resemble the inside of the upper part of a vast egg; whilst the idea might be formed that the under part of the universe was arched over in a like fashion. It is, however, not impossible that the Hindú idea of the universe springing from an egg, may have had some connection with the conception of the Supreme Being as a primeval male which finds expression in the Puránas; but it may also have been associated with the worship of the Linga, or phallus, which apparently belongs to a period of remote antiquity.

Conception of a metaphysical creation.

The next stage in the cosmogony is of a metaphysical character, and has apparently been taken from the Sánkhya school of philosophy. It comprises the creation of Mind and Consciousness; the three Moral qualities; the perceptions of Sense and the Organs of Sensation; and the great Elements. This creation might perhaps be passed over in silence, as a bewildering jargon by which the later Bráhmans sought to account for the origin of existences, which could scarcely be ascribed to generative force.[7] Still it will be found of some value as illustrating the character and tone of the intellectual exercises of the later Bráhmans; and although perhaps it properly belongs to the period of Brahmanical revival, it may be desirable to furnish the following brief explanation, which is based upon the tedious disquisitions that appear in the later Puránas, and which may perhaps serve to throw a clearer light upon the obscure statement of Manu.[8]

---

[6] See the Orphic fragment in the "Birds" of Aristophanes quoted in Cory's Fragments. The extract is as follows:—

"First was Chaos and Night, and black Erebus and vast Tartarus;
And there was neither Earth, nor Air, nor Heaven; but in the boundless bosom of Erebus.
Night, with her black wings, first produced an aerial egg,
From which, at the completed time, sprang forth the lovely Eros,
Glittering with golden wings upon his back, like the swift whirlwinds.
But embracing the dark-winged Chaos in the vast Tartarus,
He begot our race (the birds) and first brought us to light.
The race of Immortals was not, till Eros mingled all things together:
But when the elements were mixed one with another, Heaven was produced, and Ocean,
And Earth, and the imperishable race of all the blessed Gods."

In the Comedy the Birds deliver the cosmogony, and thus claim the priority of birth over the gods as well as men. Birds sometimes play a curious part in Hindú legend. See especially the Márkandiya Purána.

Valuable as illustrative of Hindú thought.

Four heads.

This metaphysical creation may be considered under four different heads, viz. :—

1st, The Mind or Consciousness.

2nd, The three Qualities—Goodness, Passion, and Darkness.

3rd, The Perceptions of Sense and Organs of Sensation.

4th, The Elements and their Properties.

1st, Three Gunas or Qualities—Goodness, Passion, Darkness.

The three Qualities or Gunas, which are comprised under the second head, should perhaps be considered first, as they are to a large extent mixed up with all the other creations. The conceptions of these three Gunas are larger than the names would seem to imply. Thus Goodness includes purity,

---

[7] The myths respecting Chronos, Eros, Chaos, and other ancient personifications, would seem to militate against this view; but it is difficult to conceive how a sexual origin could be ascribed to moral qualities, or to the organs of sense. In the later sectarian writings, connected with the pantheistic worship of Krishna, such sensuous personifications certainly find a place; and the Brahma Vaivarta Purána contains a myth in which Brahma is represented as begetting upon his wife Savitri the science of logic, the modes of music, days, years and ages, religious rites, diseases, time and death. But this Purána would seem to be many centuries later than Manu.

[8] Compare particularly the Vishnu Purána.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

and is attended with happiness and productive of virtue. Passion, or foulness, implies the idea of activity, whilst it is attended with misery and productive of vice. Darkness includes the idea of dulness, illusion, and obstructiveness, and is productive of stolidity. These three Gunas hold an important place in the religious and philosophical ideas of a later age.

2nd, Mind and Consciousness.

The creation of Mind or Consciousness now proceeds as follows. Matter becomes invested with the three Gunas in equilibrio, and is united with Spirit. From these Intellect is produced, and like them is invested with the three Gunas. From Intellect proceeds Egotism, or the principle of individual existence which appropriates perceptions. Intellect and Egotism may be regarded as identical with Mind and Consciousness.[9]

3rd, Perceptions of sense and Organs of sensation.

The creation of the Perceptions of Sense, the five Organs of Sense, and the great Elements, is even more obscure. Egotism being invested with the three Gunas becomes threefold, namely;—Egotism pure, from the quality of Goodness; Egotism passionate, from the quality of passion or activity; and Egotism elementary, or rudimentary, from the quality of darkness.

Threefold Egotism.

1st,—Pure Egotism produced the ten divinities who preside over the five Organs of Sense, and their corresponding Perceptions or Actions.

2nd,—Passionate Egotism produced the Organs of Sense and their corresponding Perceptions.

---

[9] English equivalents for the Sanskrit terms are employed in the text to prevent confusion; but for the convenience of reference it may be as well to notice them here. Matter is called Pradhana; and sometimes Prakriti, or Nature. Spirit is called Purusha. Intellect is Mahat. Egotism is Ahankara.

4th, Elements and their Properties.

3rd,—Rudimentary Egotism then produced the five Elements,—ether, wind, light, water, and earth; and their five Rudiments, or Properties,—sound, touch, colour, taste, and smell. In the first instance the rudiment of Sound was produced from Rudimentary Egotism, and then the remaining work of creation proceeded in the following order:—

Ether.

(1.) Ether was produced from Sound and engendered Touch; whence originated Wind, of which Touch is the property.

Wind.

(2.) Wind was produced from Touch and engendered Colour, or form; whence originated Light, of which Colour is the property.

Light.

(3.) Light, or fire, was produced from Colour and engendered Taste; whence originated water, including juices, of which Taste is the property.

Water.

(4.) Water was produced from Taste and engendered Smell; whence originated Earth, of which Smell is the property.

Earth.

(5.) Earth thus originated from Smell, and was invested with Smell as a property.[10]

Brahmá male and female.

The next stage in the creation is the separation of Brahmá into male and female, and the production of Viráj, who thus appears to have become the progenitor of all created things. This myth scarcely calls for remark, but the one which immediately follows it, and which brings the whole narrative to a conclusion, demands consideration. Manu is introduced as being produced from Viráj by some creative process which is not distinctly indicated; and Manu then creates ten Manus, who appear in later myths

Introduction of Manu and the ten Rishis.

---

[10] Compare Manu, i. 74—78. According to the Vishnu Purána the egg included all these Elements and Properties, together with the Mind and Consciousness, the three Qualities, and the five Organs and their Perceptions.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

as Bráhman sages. It would seem however that the narrative of the creation was previously complete without the introduction of Viráj; for when Brahmá had become separated into male and female, the creation by generation might have followed as easily as the generation of mankind followed the creation of Adam and Eve in the Mosaic narrative. The creation of Manu and the ten Manus thus appears to have been a separate and independent cosmogony, which has been incorporated with a Brahmanic cosmogony. In other words, the code contains two accounts of the creation of the human race; one being a Vedic tradition of Manu, as a progenitor; and the other being a later and Brahmanic dogma of the creation of the universe by Brahmá.[11]

---

[11] It is difficult to say how far this legend of ten Manus, and their ten reigns in succession, which are termed Manwantaras, finds expression in the Vedic hymns. Indeed the point has yet to be determined. (See Wilson's Rig-Veda, Vol. II. p. 61 *note.*) The names of the Manus are as follows:—Maríchi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Daksha, Vasishtha, Bhrigu, and Nárada. Most of the names are to be found in the hymns of the Rig-Veda; and all of them figure largely in those Brahmanical editions to the Epics to which attention has already been drawn. Maríchi was the father of the famous Kasyapa, who appears in the Rámáyana as the mythical progenitor of the Sun, and consequently as the Brahmanical ancestor of the Solar race of Ayodhyá. Atri appears in like manner in the Mahá Bhárata as the mythical progenitor of the Moon, and consequently as the Brahmanical ancestor of the Lunar race of Bhárata. Angiras is an ancient personification of the Vedic deity Agni in the person of a Bráhman. Pulastya was the mythical grandfather of Rávana, the Rákshasa Raja of Lanká. Pulahu, Kratu, and Daksha are more obscure personifications; but the latter is celebrated as the performer of a famous sacrifice, in which he appears as an opponent of the god Siva. Vasishtha appears prominently in the Rámáyana as the priest of Maháraja Dasaratha, and religious instructor of the hero Ráma. Bhrigu is frequently introduced into the Mahá Bhárata for the purpose of delivering many Brahmanical discourses. Lastly, Nárada is found playing an important but equally mythical part in both Epics. He settled the delicate terms on which Draupadí was to live with her five husbands; he was present with other Rishis at the mythical Council of the Kauravas, which was summoned to receive Krishna; he was one of the three Rishis who pronounced the curse against the Yadavas, which culminated in the massacre at Prabhása and destruction of Dwáraká; and he even appears in the beautiful episode of Nala and Damayantí, as carrying the news of the Swayamvara of Damayantí to the heaven of Indra.

In another part of the code there is incorporated a still more obscure tradition of Manu, under the name of Swáyambhuva, having six descendants who are also termed Manus. (Manu, i. 61—63.) The names of these seven Manus are Swáyambhuva, Swáróchisha, Uttama, Támasa, Raivata, Khákshusha and Vaivaswata. As Vaivaswata is said to have been a child of the Sun, this account may be connected with some solar myth. It is worthy of remark that this latter account forms the commencement of that part of the code in which Manu delegates the further recitation of the laws to his son Bhrigu. These lists are differently filled up in the later Puránas.

CHAPTER VI.

SACRED CHRONOLOGY.

Bold attempt by the Bráhmans to map out eternity.

The account of the creation of the universe is followed in the Brahmanical code by a description of those extraordinary durations of time, by which the ancient sages boldly attempted to map out eternity; and which excited so much discussion in the last century from the marked contrast which they present to the more limited calculations which are based upon the so-called Mosaic chronology. This daring reckoning includes millions of years before the dawn of recorded history, and millions of years yet to come; and under such circumstances it might seem to possess some germs of truth from its approximation to those vast astronomical periods, which are indicated by the apparent infinity of the universe, and the revolutions of distant stars round mysterious centres. But in truth it is a mere arbitrary arrangement of figures; a play upon the relations of days, months, and years, multiplied by thousands of millions at the mere fancy of an arithmetical dreamer. Such a chronological scheme is of course childish and unmeaning; but yet it has exercised considerable influence upon the religious belief of the Hindús.

A mere arbitrary arrangement of figures.

Division of Manu's system of chronology.

Manu's system of chronology may be separately considered under two different heads, as follows:—

1st, The calculation of days, months, and years.
2nd, The calculation of Yugas or Ages.

1st, Calculation of days, months, and years.

The calculation of days, months, and years all turns upon the systematic multiplication of the ordinary human notion of a day, that is, of a single revolution of the earth upon its own axis. The Hindú day thus corresponds to the European day, but its subdivisions are different. The Hindú hour or muhúrtta consists of forty-eight minutes only, and thus there are thirty hours in the day instead of twenty-four. The minimum of time is the twinkling of an eye. Eighteen twinklings of an eye make a moment, or káshthá; thirty moments make a kalá, which consists of about a minute and a half; and thirty kalás make a muhúrtta, or hour. Thus there are about half a million of twinklings of the eye in every Hindú hour. The conceptions of days, months, and years are naturally formed from the revolution of the earth upon its axis, the revolution of the moon round the earth, and the path of the sun along the ecliptic. But four different kinds of days are specified in the code; and this arbitrary division seems to have been introduced for one significant purpose, namely, the exaltation of the god Brahmá both over the Vedic deities, and over the Pitris,[1] or spirits of deceased ancestors, who were also worshipped by the Vedic Aryans. These four days were as follows:—

Sub-division of the Hindú day.

Four different days.

Day of mortals.

1st,—A day of Mortals, which is divided into day and night by the rising and the setting of the sun; the day being set apart for mortal action and the night for mortal slumber.

---

[1] The worship of the Pitris, or ancestors, still forms an important element in the Hindú religion, and will be found elucidated in chap. ix.

Day of Pitris, or mortal months.

2nd,—A day of Pitris, which lasts for a lunar month; being divided into the bright fortnight which is called day, and the dark fortnight which is called night; the day beginning with the new moon, and the night with the full moon.[2]

Day of gods, or mortal years.

3rd,—A day of the Vedic gods, or Devatas, which lasts for a solar year; being divided into the summer half which is called day, and the winter half which is called night; the day beginning with the vernal equinox and the night with the autumnal equinox.

Day of Brahmá.

4th,—A day of Brahmá, which involves some large calculations connected with the Yugas or ages, and will therefore be considered separately hereafter.[3]

2nd Calculation of Yugas, or ages.

This system of days, months, and years, is followed by a calculation of Yugas or ages. The primary object of the code, namely, the exaltation of the worship of Brahmá as the creator of the universe, thus appears abundantly manifest. The contemplative spirit and astronomical knowledge of the Bráhmans impelled them in the first instance to consider the universe as enduring for myriads of years; and at a subsequent period their religious tendencies seem to have led them to represent the duration of the universe as only equivalent to a single day of Brahmá.

Simplicity of the idea of four Yugas.

The original idea of the Yugas or ages was that there were four Yugas succeeding each other in a descending series of arithmetical deterioration as 4, 3, 2, and 1, each of which was multiplied by a thousand. These four Yugas were respectively named Krita, Tretá, Dwápara, and Kali. Thus the first, or Krita Yuga, lasted for 4000 years; the second, or Tretá Yuga, lasted for 3000 years; the third, or Dwápara Yuga, lasted for 2000 years; and the fourth, or Kali Yuga, lasted for 1000 years. But all these years were years of the gods, each of which consisted of 360 mortal years. The aggregate was called a

---

[2] According to Kullúka's gloss (Manu, i. 63), the Pitris inhabited the moon. According however to the Vishnu Purána, the Pitris had a heaven of their own which was called Prajápati Loka. The division of the lunar month into a bright and a dark fortnight will appear strange, until it is remembered that after the new moon the evenings become rapidly lighter, and that after the full moon they become rapidly darker.

[3] Manu, i. 63 *et seq.*

Mahá Yuga, or great age.

Mahá Yuga, or great age; and a thousand Mahá Yugas formed a Kalpa, or a day of Brahmá.[4]

The twilights.

The four Yugas thus represented the units 4, 3, 2, and 1 in arithmetical descent multiplied by a thousand. But in addition to these thousands of years, each Yuga has two twilights, one preceding it and the other following it; and each of these twilights consists of the same series of 4, 3, 2, and 1, but multiplied by a hundred only. Again, these years of the gods have each to be multiplied by 360, in order to reduce them to mortal years. The following table will perhaps exhibit with sufficient clearness the calculations connected with the number of years of the Vedic gods which are included in each Yuga:—

1st Yuga.

	Years of the Gods.	
Twilight	400	
Krita Yuga	4,000	
Twilight	400	
		4,800

---

[4] Manu, i. 69 *et seq.*

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

2ND YUGA.		
Twilight	300	
Tretá Yuga	3,000	
Twilight	300	
		3,600
3RD YUGA.		
Twilight	200	
Dwápara Yuga	2,000	
Twilight	200	
		2,400
4TH YUGA.		
Twílight	100	
Kali Yuga	1,000	
Twilight	100	
		1,200
Total comprising a Mahá Yuga ..		12,000

Conception of a Kalpa, or day of Brahmá.

One thousand Mahá Yugas form a Kalpa, or a day of Brahmá, or twelve millions of years of the gods, which may be converted into mortal years thus:—

12,000,000 × 360 = 4,320,000,000.

Infinity of the Kalpas.

Here the imagination can scarcely follow the arithmetic, for even this period must be doubled. Whilst the creative energy of Brahmá lasts for one day, his slumber lasts for a whole night, and the night of Brahmá is equal in duration to his day. Thus a day and night of Brahmá extends over nearly ten thousand million of years. This sum total must again be multiplied to an almost infinite extent, for the year of Brahmá comprises three hundred and sixty of his days and nights; and he is said to live for a hundred years. In later Puránas he is described as immortal.

Simplicity of the idea of a day and night of Brahmá.

The simplicity of the idea which represents the universe as only lasting for a day will now be manifest. Brahmá is sleeping on the ocean. He awakes in the morning, and the universe springs into existence and endures throughout the day. He slumbers in the evening, and the universe passes away and all is darkness and chaos, until the night is over and he awakes and recreates as before. Thus the day of Brahmá is the period during which his creative power is in full activity. The night of Brahmá is the period during which his creative power is in perfect repose.[5]

Hindú and European ideas of chronology compared.

The significance of this daring attempt to reduce eternity to a system of chronology will be readily apprehended by bringing it face to face with western ideas. In Europe the popular idea of the period of time, which separates the creation of the universe from our own generation, scarcely extends over six thousand years; and according to a Rabbinical dogma, which prevailed very generally until a comparatively recent period, the six thousand years were to be followed by a millennium, or sabbath, of one thousand years, after which the universe was to be brought to a close and time was to be no more. This Rabbinical theory has perhaps yielded somewhat to the advance of natural science, but still it has left a deep impression upon the religious belief of western nations. In India, on the other hand, the idea of time has been altogether untrammelled by any restricted system of chronology; and material existence has been regarded as practically eternal.

Influence of the different chronological systems upon the respective religious belief of Hindús and Europeans.

The result has been the universal spread of dogmas such as the endless transmigrations of the soul, the successive incarnations of deity separated from each other by vast intervals of time, and a chain of Buddhas stretching far back into a remote past, which can only be indicated by a long line of numerals and ciphers. Thus amongst western nations, which have been brought under the influence of a religious belief in a more restricted chronology, the mind of man is perpetually turned upon his material life as the alpha and omega of his own present existence, and as the period upon which depends the salvation of his soul throughout an undefined eternity of spiritual being. But amongst the Hindús the imagination is in a great measure weaned away from a consideration of the individual life, and is lost in a dreamy contemplation of an infinity of future existences in which the present life is but as a mortal day.

---

[5] In the age of Brahmanical revival this conception of the creation by Brahmá underwent a further change, in order to bring it into harmony with the modern doctrine of a Hindú trinity consisting of Brahmá, Vishnu, and Siva.

Chronological system of Manwantaras superadded to the Brahmanic system of Kalpas.

The foregoing system of Hindú sacred chronology may be called the Brahmanic system; and by laying down a distinction between the day of the Devatas and the day of Brahmá, it furnishes additional proof that the worship of Brahmá overlaid the more primitive worship of the Vedic Aryans. But besides this mapping out of eternity by Kalpas, or days of Brahmá, there is a recognition in the code of another system of chronology based upon Manwantaras, or reigns of successive Manus. Whether the second system was handed down from the Vedic age, or sprung up during the transition period between the Vedic and Brahmanic ages, must for the present remain a question.[6] That it was independent of the Brahmanic system is evident from the abortive efforts which are made to reconcile the duration of the Kalpas with the duration of the Manwantaras. Manu does indeed say that seventy-one Mahá Yugas constitute a Manwantara;[7] but in the Puránas it is stated that fourteen Manwantaras, with some additional years, are equal to a day of Brahmá; and the necessity for such additional years sufficiently indicates that the two computations are independent of each other.

---

[6] See Wilson's Rig-Veda, vol. ii. p. 61 *note*.

---

[7] Manu, i. 79, 80.

CHAPTER VII.

RELIGION OF THE BRÁHMANS.

Religious system set forth in Manu.

THE simple religious ideas connected with the Vedic worship have already been indicated. It will now be necessary to unfold and explain the religious system which finds expression in the Institutes of Manu. In attempting this task, two objects will be kept in view, namely :—

Exhibits both a development and a compromise.

1st, To exhibit the religious development which accompanied the rise of Brahmanism and establishment of the Brahmanical ascendancy.

2nd, To illustrate the compromise which was effected between the worship of the Vedic deities and the worship of Brahma.

Brahmanical doctrine of rewards and punishments unknown in the Vedic age.

Before, however, entering upon this branch of inquiry, it will be necessary to consider the doctrine of rewards and punishments, both in this life and in a series of lives, or transmigrations, hereafter, by which the Bráhmans endeavoured to enforce their particular tenets. This dogma found little or no expression in the hymns of the Rig-Veda, beyond what was involved in a conception of Yama, as god or judge of the dead; and indeed it could scarcely have been necessary to enforce the spontaneous worship of the Vedic deities by the same promises and threats, which were requisite to insure the observance of new and artificial rules introduced by a priestly hierarchy. In primitive times, when fathers of families and heads of tribes performed their own religious rites without the interference of priests, they were actuated by an unquestioning faith, which to them was as old as the hills, that they would thereby obtain from their gods the material blessings of this life; and that if they did not so propitiate the deities of the elements with hymns and sacrifices, their harvests would fail, their cattle would perish, their wives would bear no sons, and their own bodily health and vigour would pass away. Under such circumstances religious indifference or apathy must have been unknown. On the contrary, there was most likely a display of warmth and fervour, which could scarcely be expected in more artificial and complex devotions, and which indeed characterize the greater portion of the Vedic hymns which were sung on the banks of the Saraswatí. Moreover the conception of sin must have been singularly crude in the Vedic period. A deity might be offended by the poverty of the worship, such as inferiority in the cakes, butter, or wine, or imperfections in the hymns of praise. But the consciousness of having offended deity by the breach of some arbitrary moral rule seems to have been rarely experienced by this genial race, who rather exulted in pleasures and gratifications which were an abomination to the Bráhmans. It was however amongst such a community that the Bráhmans promulgated their religious rites and moral rules, which must have been often unintelligible or repugnant to the masses. The Vedic Aryans were distinguished by a love of wine and women, of flesh

Crude conception of sin.

Rewards and punishments introduced to enforce Brahmanical laws.

meat and high play, which were radically opposed to the tenets of asceticism; and it was apparently on this account that the Bráhmans found it necessary to enforce their precepts by promises of punishment, which were unknown to the composers of the hymns of the Rig-Veda.

Dogma of merits and demerits.

This theory of future rewards and punishments lies at the root of all Brahmanical laws and observances, and was accepted by the authors of the code as an established dogma; and indeed it has prevailed amongst the people of India down to the present day. Almost every act, however trivial, is considered as a merit or a demerit; and the individual is rewarded or punished hereafter according to the sum of his merits and demerits.[1] In this belief there is not the slightest vagueness or ambiguity; for besides the threats and promises which refer to the present life, it is associated with the doctrine of transmigration of the soul through a vast number of existences on earth, and the occasional departure of the soul to a heaven or a hell for periods of different duration. It is assumed that in all cases the balance is rigidly drawn. If the merits exceed the demerits, the individual will be rewarded in proportion to the balance in his favour; either by noble birth, prosperity, comeliness, physical strength, in-

Future existences of the soul dependent upon merits and demerits.

---

[1] "The householder should collect virtue [*i. e.* merits] by degrees, in order that he may obtain a companion to the next world, as the white ant by degrees builds his nest; for in his passage to the next world, neither his father, nor his mother, nor his wife, nor his son, nor his kinsmen, will remain in his company, but he will be accompanied by his merits alone. Single is each man born; single he dies; single he receives the reward of his good deeds, and single the punishment of his evil deeds. When he leaves his corpse, like a log or a lump of clay, his kinsmen retire with averted faces; but his merits accompany his soul. Let a man therefore continually, and by degrees, collect merits, so that he may secure for himself an inseparable companion; and, with his merits for his guide, he will traverse a gloom which is hard to be traversed." Manu, iv. 223—242.

tellectual power, long life, or abundance of sons in future transmigrations; or by elevation to a heaven, where the soul would dwell in bliss until its merits were sufficiently rewarded, after which it would return to earth and pass through another series of transmigrations. In like manner, if the demerits exceed the merits, the individual will be punished in proportion to the balance against him; either by low birth as a degraded man or inferior animal, or by adversity, deformity, physical weakness, mental incapacity, premature death, or a family of daughters; or by being cast down to one of the many hells, there to remain until the balance of demerits was wiped away, after which it would return to earth to pass through another series of existences.

Distinction between the religious obligations felt in Europe and those which are felt in India.

The difference between the religious obligations which are felt in Europe and those which are felt in India, may now be easily apprehended. In Europe the fear of the Divine displeasure, either in this world or the next, undoubtedly exercises a considerable influence; especially upon those who are sincerely desirous of bringing every action of their lives into strict conformity with what is understood to be the Divine will. But not even the fear of eternal punishment will restrain the mass of the people from the commission of acts, which they themselves believe to be directly opposed to the dictates of religion and morality. Moreover there is a popular belief in the mercy of God towards his erring creatures, in the efficacy of repentance, and in the general forgiveness of all minor offences, that exercises a counter-influence to the doctrine of eternal punishment, which no amount of religious teaching seems calculated to remove. In India, on the other hand, the anxiety of the individual is concentrated more or less upon every action of his life; for nearly every act that can be committed may serve to outweigh a merit or wipe away a demerit, and thus insure good fortune, or bring about misfortune, either in this life or in a future existence. There is no prospect of the Divine forgiveness of sins in the event of repentance on the part of the sinner, and no belief in an atonement, excepting by means of sacrifices and penances which may be regarded as so many additional merits placed to the credit of the individual. Meantime religious worship and austerities are generally regarded as the chief merits; whilst the prominent demerits are supposed to consist in the breach of caste observances and in indulgences in forbidden things. By such arch-merits individuals might escape from transmigration altogether, and enjoy a happy eternity in heaven; whilst by such arch-demerits individuals might be doomed to endless transmigrations in the lowest scale of existences, or endure a horrible eternity in hell.

Causes of the universality of the belief in merits and demerits.

This conception of a future state of rewards and punishments, although it involves no idea of a beneficent and merciful deity, contains an element of apparent justice, which is readily apprehended by the popular mind. Moreover it serves to account for one of the most inscrutable problems in human life, namely, the unequal distribution of the blessings and pains of earthly existence. Happiness and prosperity are regarded as the reward of virtues displayed in a previous life; and misery and adversity are regarded as the punishment of sins committed in a previous state of being.

Form of the conception in the Mosaic law.

Again, the compilers of the code are by no means unmindful of the force of that obligation, which is involved in promises of rewards or punishments to the posterity of an individual; and which finds a fitting and forcible expression in the Mosaic law. In Manu however the obligation generally refers to breaches of mere caste rules, which could only affect posterity so long as the caste system continues to trammel the minds and bodies of the people of India. But the Hebrew lawgiver has laid down the far grander dogma, which may be opposed to a human idea of justice, but which nevertheless involves an eternal truth that may be traced back to the creation of man. He has authoritatively declared that the iniquity of fathers will be visited upon the children to the third and fourth generation; and this doctrine is not only in accordance with the existing facts that many of the crimes of parents do affect their children in the eyes of the world, but it is also in conformity with what is known of hereditary disease.[2] Indeed, in a future age, when the laws of physiology are more generally apprehended, the obligations to obey the moral law for the benefit of posterity will increase in strength; and the justice of a punishment which is inflicted upon the descendants of a delinquent, as well as upon himself, will become more and more manifest in the eyes of men.

Inferior merit of duties performed in the hope of reward.

Turning from this general element in Hindú belief to the special observations of Manu as regards his code, it will be seen that he raises another question, which is popularly supposed to have originated in comparatively modern thought, but which yet appears to have formed a subject of discussion from the day when the theory of a future state of rewards and punishments was first mooted amongst mankind. That a good man should receive some reward for a virtuous life was no doubt an ancient idea; and so long as goodness consisted in the fulfilment of all the duties of a son, a husband, a father, and a good citizen, such a claim to reward would probably remain unchallenged. But when the natural law became amplified and modified by ecclesiastical law, and goodness consisted in a great measure in the performance of rites and ceremonies, alms-giving and penances, which may have possessed a religious meaning but which were certainly devoid of moral significance, the question naturally arose as to the motive which led to the fulfilment of duty; whether such a duty was performed from a sense of right, or from the hope of reward; and whether the motive in one case was more praiseworthy than in the other.

---

[2] A similar conception finds expression in the New Testament narrative in the story of a man who was born blind. The Jews asked Jesus whether it was the sin of the man in a previous life, or the sin of his parents, which had caused his blindness.

Distinction between natural law and ecclesiastical law.

This question is raised by Manu, but he does not attempt to discuss it; and indeed such a discussion can scarcely lead to a practical result, inasmuch as it deals with what passes in the minds of other men, of which we can have no consciousness, and of which we can otherwise know nothing, excepting from inferences drawn from our experience of the motives by which we ourselves may have been actuated under like circumstances.[3] Manu simply states

Manu's distinction between higher and lower motives.

---

[3] The assumption of inferior motives has been carried to a vicious extent in India, and has done much towards exciting that suspicious feeling with which Hindús at the Presidency capitals but too often regard Europeans in their social capacity. The ostentatious charity, the public subscription lists, and the testa-

what appears to be the bare fact, namely, that whilst the fulfilment of duty for the sake of reward is not a praiseworthy motive, man will not perform any duty, such as sacrifice, religious austerities, or abstinence from sin, excepting in the hope of reward. As a solution of the difficulty, which will reconcile it with the popular idea, Manu enunciates a new dogma. Assuming that the fulfilment of religious duty will be always rewarded to some extent, whatever may be the motive, he says that if a man fulfils his duties without regard to the rewards which follow the fulfilment, he will enjoy the highest happiness in this life and eternal happiness hereafter.

Conception of Brahma and Brahmá.

Before however considering the daily worship enjoined by Manu, it will be advisable to glance at the Hindú conception of the god Brahma, from whom the Bráhmans appear to have derived their name. Here a distinction must be laid down between Brahma, the Supreme Spirit, and Brahmá, the creator of the universe, or creative energy of Brahmá. The god Brahmá is generally represented with four heads, as the divine author or inspirer of the four Vedas; but this representation must be of comparatively recent origin. Manu, who upholds the worship of both Brahma and Brahmá, speaks only of three Vedas.[4] Again, Kullúka explains that in one Kalpa, or previous age, the Vedas proceeded from Fire, Air, and the Sun; and that in another Kalpa they proceeded from Brahmá.[5] Here a glimpse is

---

mentary endowments which are so common in England, are often ignored, whilst the charitable acts of wealthy Hindús, especially in the construction of tanks, ghats, and resting-places, and the feeding of the poor and afflicted, are but too frequently ascribed to the mere love of fame and applause, rather than charitably attributed to a higher motive of real benevolence towards the human race at large.

[4] Manu, iv. 124.

[5] Kullúka, quoted in Colebrooke's Essay on the Vedas.

Decline of the worship.

obtained of the supersession of Vedic ideas by Brahmanic ideas, of which abundant proofs appear elsewhere. It is however a curious circumstance worthy of note, that notwithstanding the efforts of the Brahmanical compilers of the code of Manu to exalt the monotheistic conception of Brahma as the God of gods, the worship of this deity has never been popular with the people of India, who have ever hankered after their old Vedic personifications. The consequence has been that the Bráhmans have long abandoned the worship of the god from whom they obtained their distinctive name; and it will be seen hereafter that, in the age of Brahmanical revival, they actually set up Vishnu and Siva as superior to Brahma.

Religious worship of the Bráhmans divisible into invocations and sacramental rites.

With these preliminary observations it will now be necessary to review the daily ritual which is laid down in the Institutes of Manu. It must be remarked in the first instance, that such worship was to be performed every day, and was apparently confined to the three twice-born castes, namely, the Bráhman, the Kshatriya, and the Vaisya. This worship may be considered under two heads, namely, invocations and sacramental rites.

Significance of the invocations as forming combinations of Three in One.

The daily invocations laid down in the ritual of Manu, are involved in some obscurity, but on a critical examination will be found to yield results of considerable importance in the history of ancient India. They furnish a significant illustration of the process by which the old Vedic religion was moulded into Brahmanical forms of thought, until the polytheistic worship of the gods of the elements was resolved into the monotheistic worship of Brahma or Brahmá. They comprise certain mystic combinations of Three in One, which however bear no resemblance whatever to the Christian conception of a Trinity. These combinations are four in number, consisting of three suppressions of the breath, three letters, three words, and three measures. Each of these combinations may now be considered separately, as follows:—

1st, The three suppressions of breath with the mind fixed on Brahma.

1st, The three suppressions of the breath, each being equal in time to five short vowels, which are to be made with the mind fixed on Brahma, the Supreme Being. These suppressions are said by Manu to be the highest devotion.

2nd, The word AUM.

2nd, The letters A, U, and M, which form the word Aum, pronounced Om. This word is said by Manu to be the symbol of Brahma, or lord of creatures.

3rd, The Vyáhritis, comprising Earth, Sky, and Heaven.

3rd, The three words—Earth, Sky, and Heaven, or Bhúh, Bhuvar, Swar—which are collectively termed the Vyáhritis.

4th, The Gáyatri.

4th, The three measures included in the sacred verse known as the Gáyatrí, which could only be uttered by the twice-born.[6]

Two questions involved.

The inquiry into the origin of these combinations of Three in One, naturally separates itself into two questions, viz.:—

The "Three."

First, what were the "Three" who were to be combined into "One"?

The "One."

Secondly, who was that "One" into whom the "Three" were resolved?

Conclusions to be proved hereafter.

For the sake of clearness it may be advisable in the first instance to state the conclusions; and then to indicate the data by which those conclusions appear to be proved. The conclusions to be estab-

---

[6] Manu, ii. 74—84.

The "Three" refer to the Vedic deities and the "One" to Brahma.

lished hereafter are, that the "Three" comprised the deities of the Vedas; and that the "One" referred either to Brahmá, the creator of the universe, or to Brahma, the Supreme Soul.

Significance of the three suppressions.

As regards the three suppressions of breath, which formed as it were the preliminary of the devotions, nothing need be said. Their significance can be gathered from what follows. It will be sufficient to observe that during their performance the mind of the worshipper was to be fixed upon Brahma as the Supreme Soul.

Significance of the letters A, U, M.

As regards the three letters A, U, and M, little can be gathered, excepting that when brought together into the word Aum they are said by Manu to form a symbol of the Lord of created beings—Brahma. According, however, to the Nirukta, which is an ancient glossary of the Vedas, the syllable Aum (Om) refers to every deity.

Significance of the three words—Earth, Sky, Heaven, as representatives of the Vedic deities.

As regards the three words—Bhúh, Bhuvar, Swar, or Earth, Sky, Heaven—more positive data can be inferred. The respective deities of these three localities were Fire, Air, and the Sun; or Agni, Váyu, and Súrya. These three are among the oldest deities of the Rig-Veda. It also appears from the Nirukta that all the Vedic deities were resolvable into these three—Fire, Air, and the Sun; and it is twice asserted that there are but three gods. Further, it is distinctly stated in the Nirukta, as well as in the Bráhmana, that these three gods were considered as one.[7] From these data it may be inferred that in the Brahmanic age, or in the transition period between the Vedic and Brahmanic age, the Vedic gods were classified under three heads and resolved into their original elements; and that in this manner the Vedic deities, although frequently and separately invoked in a ritual which was essentially a compromise, were stripped of their ancient theological significance, and rendered subordinate to the worship of Brahmá as the creator of the elements, or to the still higher and more spiritual worship of Brahma, or the Supreme Soul.

---

[7] The references to the Nirukta may be found in the following extract from Colebrooke:—"The deities invoked appear, on a cursory inspection of the Rig-Veda, to be as various as the authors of the prayers addressed to them; but, according to the most ancient annotations on the Indian scripture, those numerous names of persons and things are all resolvable into different titles of three deities,

Significance of the three measures of the Gáyatrí, as indicating the Vedic tendency to worship the Sun as the Supreme Being

The three measures which form the celebrated text known as the Gáyatrí, throw a still further light upon this Brahmanizing process. The tendency towards monotheism is clearly marked in hymns of the Rig-Veda, which are free from all reference to Brahmanism, and which are the expression of a re-

---

and ultimately of one God. The Nighánti, or glossary of the Vedas, concludes with three lists of names of deities: the first comprising such as are deemed synonymous with fire, the second with air, and the third with the sun. In the last part of the Nirukta, which entirely relates to deities, it is twice asserted that there are but three gods. The further inference, that these intend but one deity, is supported by many passages in the Veda; and is very clearly and concisely stated in the beginning of the index to the Rig-Veda, on the authority of the Nirukta and of the Veda itself:—

"The deities are only three: whose places are, the earth, the intermediate region, and heaven: [namely] fire, air, and the sun. They are pronounced to be the deities of the mysterious names [i.e. bhúh, bhuvar, and swar] severally; and (Prajápati) the lord of creatures is [the deity] of them collectively. The syllable Om intends every deity: it belongs to (Paraméshthi) him who dwells in the supreme abode; it appertains to (Brahma) the vast one: to (Déva) God; to (Adhyátmá) the superintending Soul. Other deities belonging to those several regions are portions of the [three] gods; for they are variously named and described, on account of their different operations; but [in fact] there is only one deity, the Great Soul (Mahán átmá). He is called the sun; for he is the soul of all beings: [and] that is declared by the sage:—'The sun is the soul of that which moves, and of that which is fixed.' Other deities are portions of him: and that is expressly declared by the text:—'The wise call fire, INDRA, MITRA, and VARUNA.'"

"This passage," says Colebrooke, "is partly abridged from the Nirukta, and partly taken from the Bráhmana of the Veda."

ligious faith that appears to have been long anterior to the advent of the Bráhmans. But whilst it can scarcely be asserted that one Deity was specially considered as superior to all the others as the God of gods, it is certain that attributes of a spiritual and divine character were especially awarded to Súrya or the Sun. Indra, indeed, stands prominently forward as the god of the firmament and sovereign of the Devatas; but the Sun seems to have had a higher rank as an ethical conception, for he was the illuminator of the universe and enlightener of men's minds. In the transition period to which attention has been drawn, the Vedic tendency to regard the Sun as a Supreme Being was developed still further in the direction of monotheism by a Brahmanical tendency to identify the Sun with the Supreme Soul, or Brahma. This theological process will be sufficiently apprehended by comparing the primitive text of the Gáyatrí as it appears in the Rig-Veda, with the interpretations of later commentators. A literal translation of the Gáyatrí is thus given by Professor H. H. Wilson :—

Brahmanical identification of the Sun with Brahma.

Literal translation of the Gáyatrí by Professor Wilson.

"We meditate on that desirable light of the Divine Sávitrí (the Sun), who influences our holy rites."[8]

Here the simple meaning appears to be that the worshipper desired to meditate upon the Sun, who caused or enabled him to offer oblations; or, as Wilson remarks, the last words may be rendered "who may animate, or enlighten, our intellects."[9] The later Hindú commentators seem to be agreed in understanding Sávitrí to signify the soul as identical with the Supreme Soul of the universe, or Brahma.[10]

---

[8] Wilson's Rig-Veda, vol. ii. p. 110.

[9] Ib. p. iii., note.

[10] Sáyana considers the passage to admit of two interpretations, namely, the

This interpretation finds full expression in Sir William Jones's paraphrastic translation, which is as follows :—

Paraphrastic translation by Sir William Jones.

"Let us adore the supremacy of that divine sun, the godhead, who illuminates all, re-creates all, from whom all proceed, to whom all must return, whom we invoke to direct our understandings aright in our progress towards his holy seat."

Chain of conceptions involved in the worship of the Sun.

If this paraphrase be analyzed it will be seen to comprise several distinct conceptions. First and foremost is the worship of the Sun as the Supreme Deity; next, the worship of the Sun as the Godhead, or Brahma; and lastly, the worship of the Sun as the illuminator and enlightener of the universe, physically as well as spiritually. Here, again, may be perceived the same current of thought which flows through the combination of the three letters—A, U, and M; the three words—Earth, Sky, and Heaven; and the three suppressions of breath with the mind fixed on Brahma. The Sun may be regarded as the type of all the Vedic deities, who is again resolved into the later conception of Brahma.

Further developed by the combinations of "Three" in "One."

Religious significance of the combinations.

By bringing together the different points in these four combinations the religious significance of the devotional form may be sufficiently apprehended. First of all the worshipper made three suppressions of his breath, which may perhaps be regarded as symbolical of the three classes of spiritual and deified existences, which were comprised in the conception of Brahma as the Supreme Soul. Next follows the mystic "Aum," which apparently comprises all the

---

light, or "Brahma, constituting the splendour of the Supreme Ruler, or creator of the universe;" or "the light or orb of the splendid sun." Sáyana, *quoted by Colebrooke.* Sáyana's remarks are alone sufficient to indicate the fusion of ideas as regards the Sun and Brahma.

Vedic deities in one word. Then the worshipper utters the mystic words Bhúh, Bhuvar, and Swar, or Earth, Sky, and Heaven; which seem to comprise all the deities who dwell on Earth, Sky, and Heaven, under the three conceptions of Fire, Air, and the Sun. Finally, the Gáyatrí is pronounced, which appears to be an expression of the Vedic idea of the supremacy of the Sun god, moulded by Brahmanical commentators into the monotheistic conception of the Supreme Soul as Brahma.[11]

Daily repetition of the invocations enjoined by Manu.

The frequent repetition of this simple ritual is a point which is strongly insisted upon by Manu.[12] By such frequent repetitions a large amount of religious merit was to be obtained by the twice-born; but should a twice-born man neglect to repeat the Gáyatrí at sunrise and sunset, he was to be degraded to the condition of a Súdra. Two religious questions are involved in this law, which call for a few general remarks, namely:—

Two questions.

First, the religious value of a daily repetition of the same ritual in maintaining and confirming a belief in any particular creed.

Secondly, the relative effect of punishment in the present life, and the threat of punishment hereafter, in the suppression of heresy.

1st, Religious value of a daily ritual.

On the first question it may be remarked that, notwithstanding all that has been urged against the vain repetition of formal words and prayers by the Hindús, a ritual which is bound up with the routine of daily life and duty can never fail to exercise a powerful influence upon the religious faith of the worshipper. Indeed, it may be asserted that so long as the repetition continues, so long the faith will remain present in the conscience; and that when the repetition is discontinued the faith itself begins to die away. Moreover, it should be borne in mind that whilst a ritual may be purely formal, it is not necessarily cold and lifeless. Day by day the utterances are the same, but if they are associated with the more impressive phases of human life, with times of danger and sorrow as well as with the day of prosperity and rejoicing, with the pains of sickness and the horrors of death, with the celebration of marriage rites and the birth of a first-born son, such a ritual will ever stir the heart with religious emotions.

---

[11] The following texts in Manu seem to indicate that this moulding of the Vedic worship into a Brahmanical form was the work of Brahma himself:—"Brahma, the Supreme Being, milked out from the three Vedas the three letters A, U, M, which form the monosyllable 'AUM.' He also milked out the three words—'Earth, Sky, and Heaven.' And he likewise milked out the three measures of that ineffable text entitled 'Gáyatrí.' The triliteral syllable 'AUM,' the three words 'Earth, Sky, and Heaven,' and the three measures of the Gáyatrí, must be considered as the mouth, or principal part of the Veda." Manu, ii. 76, 77.

[12] Manu, ii. 84—87.

2nd, Relative effect of present and future punishment in the suppression of heresy.

The relative effect of punishment in the present life, and of the threat of punishment in the life hereafter, is a question of great importance in the history of religious development. But in India it assumes even larger proportions, because it must be considered in connection with the mighty engine of oppression which is involved in the institution of caste. Fear of punishment hereafter can obviously exercise but little effect upon a heretic, who disbelieves in the sinfulness of heresy, or in the existence of a future state of rewards and punishments. Hence religious lawgivers in general have enacted temporal punishments for those who refuse to observe the established rites and ordinances. But neither imprisonment, nor exile, nor dragooning, nor even the stake, will exercise such a powerful effect upon the imagination as a caste degradation, which is remorseless in its results, and which may be visited upon the children through countless generations. The terrible significance of every law of Manu upon this point may thus be generally apprehended; and especially the force of that injunction which ordains that he, who neglects to repeat the Gáyatrí at sunrise and at sunset, will be precluded like a Súdra from any participation in the rites of the twice-born.[13]

Five daily sacramental rites enjoined by Manu.

The daily sacramental rites prescribed in the Brahmanical code are five in number, and are connected with the worship of five orders of beings, namely:—

Rishis.

1st, The Rishis, or Vedic bards, who were propitiated by the daily study of the Veda.

Pitris.

2nd, The Pitris, or departed ancestors, who were propitiated by the daily offering of cakes and water.

Devatas.

3rd, The Devatas, or Vedic gods, who were propitiated by daily oblations of ghee.

Spirits.

4th, The Spirits, or ghosts, who were propitiated by daily offerings of rice.

Guests.

5th, The Guests, or mortal men, who were propitiated by the exercise of a suitable hospitality.

Anomalous Brahmanical basis.

These simple rites may have originated in Vedic times, but they are placed by Manu upon a Brahmanical basis of a somewhat anomalous character; namely, the dogma that they were to be performed in expiation of the unconscious slaughter of small living creatures at five domestic slaughter-houses, namely, the kitchen hearth, the grindstone, the broom, the pestle and mortar, and the water-pot.[14] It will however be remarked that there seems no possible connection or association between the places in question and the beings propitiated; between such utensils as the grindstone and broom on the one hand, and such deities as the Pitris and Devatas on the other.

---

[13] Manu, ii. 103.

1st, Reading the Veda to propitiate the Rishis.

The so-called sacramental rite of the Rishis consists in the daily reading of the Veda. The ceremonial to be observed and which is still observed in connection with this study, is well worthy of consideration, inasmuch as it exhibits the extraordinary efforts which were made by the Bráhmans to enforce a profound reverence for the sacred books, and to subject the mind of the student to an implicit and unquestioning faith in their divine inspiration. The Veda was never to be read by any one but a Bráhman. It was never to be read in the presence of a Súdra, or at any time when the attention was likely to be distracted from the sacred duty.[15] The preparations to be made by a Bráhman student, before reading the Veda in the

Preparatory ceremonial.

---

[14] Manu, iii. 68—81.

[15] The Bráhman householder must never read the Veda without pronouncing well the accents and the letters; nor must he ever read it in the presence of Súdras; and should he have begun to read it in the last watch of the night, he must not go to sleep again afterwards, even though fatigued. A reader of the Veda, and a teacher of it to his pupils, must always avoid the reading of it on the following times, namely, when dust is collected by the wind, when the rains are falling, when lightning flashes and thunder rolls, when a preternatural sound is heard from the sky, when there is an earthquake, when there is an eclipse of one of the heavenly bodies, when an offensive smell prevails, when a corpse is being carried past, when the sound of weeping is heard, or when a son is born to the Raja. Again, a Bráhman must not read the Veda whilst the perfumes of an entertainment remain upon him; nor whilst he is lolling on a couch; nor whilst his feet are raised on a bench; nor shortly after he has swallowed meat, or the food given at the birth or death of a relative; nor whilst he is seated on horseback, or on a tree, an elephant, a boat, an ass, a camel, or a carriage. Manu, iv. 99 *et seq.*

presence of a priestly preceptor, were of a very solemn character. The student first purified himself with water, according to an elaborate ritual, which treated different parts of the hand as pure or impure. He next put on a clean cloth, in order that the reading might be conducted with decency as well as with purity. Next he consecrated his hands, as it were, by rubbing them with the stalks of the holy kusa grass. Then he composed all his members, and took his seat upon stalks of kusa grass having their points turned towards the east. Finally he joined his hands together in token of worshipping the Veda; and in this posture he awaited the command of his preceptor. When that command was given, the student was to clasp the feet of his preceptor in token of reverence, and then make the three suppressions of breath, and pronounce the sacred monosyllable AUM. It was only after these preliminaries that the student was allowed to commence the reading of the allotted portion. When the lesson was over, and the preceptor ordered him to take rest, the student again performed the ceremony of clasping the feet of his master, making three suppressions of his breath, and pronouncing the tri-literal syllable Aum. Instructions which are imparted in this solemn manner, and which are still followed, can scarcely fail to be received as the mysterious teachings of the Supreme Being; whilst not a doubt is felt as regards the interpretation of the Veda which is furnished by the preceptor. The Veda is the expression of deity; the interpretation is the expression of infallible tradition.

Effect of the ceremonial on the student.

Right of interpretation of the Veda claimed by the Bráhmans;

This teaching of the Veda, as already indicated, was exclusively confined to twice-born youths;

essential for the promulgation of Brahmanism.

and only to those twice-born youths who were considered worthy of receiving such instruction. These restrictions sufficiently manifest the care and jealousy with which the ancient scriptures were regarded, and the great stress which was laid upon the interpretation and right understanding of those scriptures. Such jealous care will always be exhibited in that stage of religious development in which a new belief and ritual, like Brahmanism, has been superadded to an ancient faith and ceremonial, like that of the Rig-Veda. It is associated with a claim to an exclusive right of interpretation; a right which has been held by the Bráhmans since the first establishment of their ascendancy, with the persistent object of interpreting the Vedas by the light of Brahmanical ideas. Such a right naturally ceases to exist when the scriptures are allowed to be indiscriminately read by the masses of the laity; and when an appeal can thus be made to the authority of those scriptures against the authority of traditional interpretation. But such an exclusive right to read and interpret the ancient scripture is naturally retained and guarded with jealous care by every true Bráhman; inasmuch as it is absolutely essential for the promulgation of Brahmanical dogmas, which are theoretically based upon the authority of the Vedas, but which yet find no expression in the earlier hymns and traditions.

Mode of interpretation.

The mode by which the Brahmanizing process has been carried on has already been illustrated in the foregoing versions of the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana. It should however be remarked that this process has not been the work of a single

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

generation, or a single century. For many ages the Hindú mind appears to have been gradually abandoning the ideas and institutions of the Vedic period, and to have been gravitating nearer and nearer towards pure Brahmanism. Thus many practices which were tolerated by Manu, have been discountenanced by later Pundits, under the plea that they belonged to the three early Yugas of the world, and are not permissible in the present age of Kali. By this arbitrary ruling many social and religious usages, which had been sanctioned by antiquity, and appear to have been practised by the ancient Kshatriyas, have been denounced as being contrary to the laws which prevail in the age of Kali. Among these may be mentioned the sacrifice of a bull, a horse, or a man; the appointment of a man to become the father of a son by the widow of a deceased brother or kinsman; the use of spirituous liquors; the slaughter of cattle at the entertainment of a guest; and the use of flesh meat at the celebrated feasts of the dead, which are still performed under the name of Şráddhas.

Manu's canon for reconciling conflicting texts.

This right of interpretation is further illustrated by a curious dogma which is laid down in the code of Manu for the reconciliation of conflicting texts. "Whenever," says the code, "there are texts which appear to be inconsistent with each other, they are all to be accepted as law. Thus there are three different texts in the Veda; one ordering that sacrifice should be offered when the sun was rising; a second ordering that sacrifice should be offered after the sun had risen; and a third ordering that the sacrifice should be performed when neither sun nor stars can be seen. From these texts it may be inferred that sacrifice may be performed at any or at all those times."[16]

2nd, Offerings of food to propitiate the Pitris.

The sacramental rite of the Pitris consisted in the daily offering of food, such as boiled rice, fruits, roots, milk, and water to the Pitris, or ghosts of departed ancestors. This was known as a daily Sráddha. It appears to have been an old Vedic rite, as the Pitris are invoked on more than one occasion in the hymns of the Rig-Veda.[17] It seems to have been practised by the people in honour of their ancient forefathers, who, like the gods, were supposed to be gratified by the offering of food. It will be seen hereafter that a great monthly Sráddha was also ordained for the more immediate ancestors according to a more elaborate and significant ritual; whilst a special Sráddha was performed on the death of a kinsman, and even formed a part of the marriage ceremony.[18]

---

[16] Manu, ii. 15.

[17] "May the Pitris, who are easily to be praised, protect us." Rig-Veda, Mand. VII. Hymn 106, v. 12.

[18] Manu, iii. 82.—The Pitris are here included in the sacramental rite of the Spirits, although a separate rite was to be celebrated daily in honour of the latter. Manu also discusses elsewhere the question of who and what the Pitris were; but the texts appear to be purely mythical, and devoid of all historical significance. For the convenience of reference they are given below.

"The Pitris, or great progenitors, are free from wrath, intent on purity, ever exempt from sensual passions, endued with exalted qualities; they are primeval divinities, who have laid arms aside. Hear now completely, from whom they sprang; who they are; and by what ceremonies they are to be honoured. The sons of Maríchi and of all the other Rishis, who were the offspring of Manu, son of Brahmá, are called the companies of Pitris, or forefathers. The Sómasads, who sprang from Viráj, are declared to be the ancestors of the Sádhyas; and the Agnishwáttas, who are famed among created beings as the children of Maríchi, to be the progenitors of the Devas. Of the Daityas, the Dánavas, the Yakshas, the Gandharvas, the Uragas or Serpents, the Rákshasas, the Garudas, and the Kinnaras, the ancestors are Barhishads descended from Atri. Of Bráhmans, those named Somapas; of Kshatriyas, the Havishmats; of Vaisyas, those called Ajyapas; of Súdras, the Sakálins. The Sómapas descended from Me, Bhrigu; the Havishmats, from Angiras; the Ájyapas, from Pulastya; the Sukálins, from Vasishtha.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

3rd, Oblations of ghee to propitiate the Devatas.

The sacramental rite of the gods, or Devatas, consisted in pouring oblations of ghee upon the domestic fire in honour of the Vedic deities in the following order:—

1st, To Agni, god of fire.

2nd, To Soma, the moon-god.

3rd, To Agni and Soma both together.

4th, To Kuhú, goddess of the day, when the moon is in the first and second quarters.

5th, To Anumatí, goddess of the day, when the moon is in the third and fourth quarters.

6th, Prajápati, or the lord of creatures.

7th, To Dyává and Prithiví, goddess of sky and earth.

8th, To the fire of the good sacrifice.

9th, To the gods of the four quarters; Indra, Yama, Varuna, and Soma.[19]

Character of the worship of the Vedic deities as enjoined by Manu.

The foregoing deities are all ancient and obscure, and although worshipped as a matter of form, have apparently passed out of the Hindú sphere of religious thought. The last oblation, namely, that to the gods of the four quarters, sufficiently betrays the change in the religious belief. In times primeval the Vedic Aryans had worshipped Indra, Yama, Varuna, and Soma, as great and independent deities, invested with divine attributes. Indra was the god of the firmament, who smote the rain cloud and

Changes in the religion between the Vedic period and Brahmanic period.

Those who are, and those who are not, consumable by fire, called Agnidagdhas, and Anagnidagdhas, the Kavyas, the Barhishads, the Agnishwáttas, and the Saumyas, let mankind consider as the chief progenitors of Bráhmans. Of those just enumerated, who are generally reported the principal tribes of Pitris, the sons and grandsons, indefinitely, are also in this world considered as great progenitors. From the Rishis come the Pitris, or patriarchs; from the Pitris, both Devas and Dánavas; from the Devas, this whole world of animals and vegetables in due order." Manu, iii. 192—201.

[19] Manu, iii. 84—87.

brought down the waters. Yama was the god of death, or rather the judge of the dead, whose existence betrays a vague belief in the future state of the soul after death which prevailed in Vedic times. Varuna was the deity of waters, but was sometimes addressed in the language of elevated devotion. Soma is more obscure, but is generally identified with the moon. Manu however represents these deities as the four guardians of the four quarters of the earth; and appears to denude them of all the moral and religious significance with which the first three are certainly invested in the hymns of the Rig-Veda.

4th, Offerings of boiled rice to propitiate Spirits or Ghosts.

The sacramental rite of Spirits consisted in offerings to all living creatures, Spirits included; and appears to have originated in that belief in ghosts, which belongs to an early stage in religious development. After the rice had been cooked, every twice-born householder was to offer it to all living things according to the following ritual:—

1st, He was to throw boiled rice near his door, saying:—"I salute you, O Maruts [*i. e.* the winds.]"

2nd, He was to throw boiled rice into water, saying:—"I salute you, O water gods."

3rd, He was to throw boiled rice on his pestle and mortar, saying:—"I salute you, O gods of large trees."

After this he was to throw boiled rice near his pillow to Srí [Lakshmí], the goddess of abundance; at the foot of his bed to the propitious goddess Bhadra-Kálí; in the middle of his house to Brahmá and his household god; and up in the air to all the assembled gods; by day to the Spirits who walk in light, and by night to those who walk in darkness.

He was then to throw his offering for all creatures in the building on his house top, or behind his back; and what remained he was to give to the Pitris with his face turned towards the south.[20]

Origin and character of a belief in spirits.

The foregoing ordinances contain some curious illustrations of that belief in ghosts and spirits which belongs more or less to every age of which any record has been preserved. A consideration of the phenomena of life entering the infant in the womb, and leaving the body in the event of sickness, violence, or old age; and a consideration of the same phenomena as regards the vegetable kingdom; seem to have led to the conception of a spiritual existence as something apart from material existence. Thus the spirit of a man was supposed to have departed when the body had expired, and the spirit of a tree was supposed to ebb away with a sigh when the tree itself was cut down. This belief was not necessarily confined to beings endowed with animal or vegetable life, but was more or less extended to inanimate things, such as stones, houses, weapons, utensils, springs, groves, mountains, and rivers; and in some cases it was extended to more complex conceptions, such as the village, the city, or the caste. Out of this primitive faith sprang the belief in a separate and spiritual existence of a ghost after the death of the body, which subsequently became modified by the doctrine of the transmigration of the soul into other bodies after death, as well as by the theory of a future state of rewards and punishments.

Popular belief in spirits amongst the Hindús.

The shape in which the conception of ghosts presented itself to the orthodox Hindús in the time of Manu, may be readily inferred from the ritual laid down in the code. It will be seen that the worshipper was directed in the first instance to throw boiled rice to the winds, or Maruts, to the water gods, and the gods of large trees. These deities are Vedic, and their worship is eminently fetische. It will moreover be seen that the worship of Indra is ignored, excepting as one of the gods of the four quarters; whilst the worship of the Maruts, which in Vedic times was already opposed to that of Indra, finds prominent expression. Next follows the propitiation of the goddess Lakshmí, who is the wife of Vishnu; the goddess Bhadra-Kálí, who is generally identified with Durgá, the wife of Siva; and the god Brahmá, and other deities. Here it should be remarked that neither of the three deities specified,—Lakshmí, Kalí, or Brahmá—appear to have been regarded as national Hindú deities until a comparatively late period in the history of India; and there is scarely any allusion made in the code to the important deities, Vishnu and Siva, who are popularly regarded as the husbands of Lakshmí and Durgá. How far they may have been worshipped as local or family deities prior to this Brahmanic period is of course open to question. Indeed Brahma, as the god of the Bráhmans, may have been worshipped by the Bráhmans from a very early date; and Lakshmí, as the goddess of abundance, and Bhadra-Kálí, as an old domestic deity, may have been propitiated for ages before they were converted into Brahmanical deities, and associated in the age of Brahmanical revival with the worship of Vishnu and Siva, and incorporated in the national system of mythology. But neither Lakshmí nor Bhadra-Kálí appear as objects of worship in the hymns of the

---

[20] Manu, iii. 88—91.

Rig-Veda;[21] whilst the references to Brahma are very obscure, and chiefly connected with an attempted identification of that deity with Indra or Agni.

Significant indication in the ritual of the unpopularity of the worship of Brahma.

There is one point in the foregoing ritual which betrays extraordinary acuteness on the part of the compilers of the code. Throughout the Institutes of Manu, the exaltation of the god Brahma above the gods of the Vedic Aryans is never neglected; and yet in the daily ritual the worship of the Devatas is enforced, and the worship of Brahma resolves itself into the simple rite of throwing boiled rice into the middle of the house. From this circumstance it is easy to infer that the worship of Brahma was as unpopular amongst the masses in the age of Manu, as it is amongst the Hindús in the present day; and that the compilers of the code accordingly accommodated the national ritual to the national taste, which still hankered after the worship of the gods of their Vedas, in preference to the new deity which had been introduced by the Bráhmans.

Propitiation of Ghosts.

The propitiation of the gods of the air, and of the spirits that walk by day and of those that walk by night, is more immediately connected with a belief in ghosts, and a fear of them as destructive agencies. A conception of ghosts, and especially of the ghosts of enemies, naturally gives rise to a dread of mysterious evil and secret mischief; and this dread increases, and serves to confirm the original belief, whenever any accident or disease befalls the cattle, the harvest, or the household. Thus the old idea of propitiation by means of food finds expression in the daily ritual; and boiled rice is distributed as food to ghosts in general, to the ghosts of enemies as well as to those of friends.

---

[21] The introduction of the worship of Káli in the daily ritual of the Bráhmans, is involved in some obscurity, which may be cleared up hereafter in treating of the worship of Siva which involves some peculiar ideas connected with ghosts and corpses.

5th, Hospitalities in propitiation of mortal guests.

The sacramental rite of men is simply an ordinance imparting a religious meaning to the ordinary duties of hospitality, especially in the event of the guests being Bráhmans, and above all being learned Bráhmans. Indeed whilst the code duly enjoins hospitality to guests, it significantly declares that oblations which are presented to ignorant Bráhmans are mere ashes. On the other hand, when oblations are offered in the fire of a sacerdotal mouth, which richly blazes with true knowledge and piety, they will release the giver from distress, and even from deadly sin.[22]

Review of the five sacramental rites.

In reviewing the foregoing sacramental rites, it is curious to observe how closely they are mixed up amongst the Hindús with such ordinary actions of life as the daily meals. Amongst western communities the custom prevails of praying to the Supreme Being for a blessing upon food which is about to be eaten, and to return thanks after a meal for the food which has been provided. But according to the Hindú idea, a portion of the food is absolutely desired by the deity or deities, as well as by anomalous beings who are supposed to exercise an influence over the well-being of man. Thus every householder was required, before partaking of food, to propitiate the Rishis, Pitris, Devatas, Spirits, and Guests with offerings of portions of the very provisions which

Curious association of religious worship with the daily meals.

---

[22] Manu, iii. 94—118.

had been prepared for himself and his family; and it is emphatically declared that he who partakes of food which has been dressed for himself only, and which has not been previously presented to the beings in question, eats in reality nothing but sin.[23]

---

[23] Manu, iii. 118.

CHAPTER VIII.

EIGHT FORMS OF MARRIAGE.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART V.

Marriage laws in Manu.

THE laws and precepts which are to be found in the Brahmanical code respecting marriage, may be divided into two classes, namely :—

1st, Eight forms of marriage.

1st,—Those which refer to eight traditional forms of marriage, some of which are approved whilst others are condemned. The traditions respecting these eight forms of marriage are of considerable historical importance, inasmuch as they apparently belong to different communities, or to different stages in the civilization of the people.

2nd, Miscellaneous precepts.

2nd,—Those which refer to married life generally, and which compare a multiplicity of details respecting the age at which a man ought to marry, the family from whom he ought to select a wife, the kind of damsel to be selected, the treatment of women, the laws respecting adultery and divorce, and a variety of minute directions for the guidance of husbands and wives.

Historical significance of the eight forms.

The laws and precepts belonging to this second class will be dealt with hereafter, in connection with the social condition of the Hindús.[1] The present chapter will be devoted to a consideration of the eight forms of marriage described in Manu, with the view of eliciting such historical results as appear to underlie the several traditions.

---

[1] The laws respecting the age at which a man ought to marry, and the wife which should be selected, will be found in Chapter XI. on the four Orders, in connection with the life of a householder. The laws respecting the condition of

Vedic conception of marriage as expressed in the two Epics.

Before however indicating these eight forms of marriage rites, it may be as well to consider the ideas of marriage which prevailed in the Vedic period. It has already been stated that events which lie half hidden in the undergrowth of later Epic legends seem to belong to the Vedic age, although the composition of the poems undoubtedly belongs to the Brahmanic age. Accordingly it may now be advisable to ascertain what further evidence can be adduced in confirmation of this hypothesis, by comparing the marriage customs which appear in the Epic legends, with those which find expression in the hymns of the Rig-Veda. When this has been done it may be useful to bring the results to bear upon the eight forms of marriage rites which are described in the Institutes of Manu.

Marriages in a peaceful community, appertaining to Rishis or Bráhmans.

Marriages in a warlike community appertaining to Kshatriyas.

The marriage customs which are to be found in the Epics seem to refer to two different classes of the community, namely, a peaceful class and a warrior class. The marriages which prevailed amongst the peaceful class may perhaps be exemplified by the union between Yayáti and Devayání, which appears to have involved the idea of one wife married to one man. The marriages of Bráhmans may belong to the same class; although it is impossible to say whether they referred to the Rishis of the Vedic age, or to the Bráhmans of the Brahmanic age. The marriages of the warlike community, who may be

---

Hindú women will be found in Chapter XII., which is especially devoted to that subject.

identified with the Kshatriyas, were altogether of a different character, and involved the conceptions of polyandry and polygamy, the Swayamvara, and the rites subsequently known as Gandharva and Rákshasa.

Polyandry in the Epics.

The system of polyandry is exemplified in the Mahá Bhárata by the marriage of Draupadí with the five sons of Pándu; and in the Rámáyana by the charge brought against Ráma and Lakshmana by Virádha.[2] The attempt to Brahmanize the former tradition, by representing it as a sacred and exceptional mystery, has already been discussed in the previous volume.[3] But a trace of this extraordinary custom is also to be found in a hymn of the Rig-Veda, which is addressed to the two Aswins:—"Aswins, your admirable (horses) bore the car which you had harnessed, (first) to the goal, for the sake of honour; and the damsel who was the prize came through affection to you, and acknowledged your (husbandship), saying, 'You are (my) lords.'"[4] Strangely enough this verse exhibits the custom of polyandry under similar circumstances to those under which it appears in the Swayamvara of Draupadí. According to the Epic legend, Draupadí was the prize of the archery match, and was won by Arjuna. In the Vedic hymn however the damsel was apparently the prize of a chariot race, and was won by the two Aswins. The Aryan origin of this custom is thus placed beyond a doubt. Had it not existed amongst the Vedic Aryans, it would have been as impossible for a Vedic bard to dwell upon the recognized marriage of one

Polyandry in the hymns of the Rig-Veda.

---

[2] See *ante*, p. 241.

[3] See *ante*, Vol. I. Part ii. chap. 4.

[4] Rig-Veda, Mand I. Hymn 119, v. 5.

damsel to two living brothers, as for a European bard of our own time to select such a topic as a subject for a modern poem.

Polygamy in the Epics.

The system of polygamy finds a much larger expression in the Epic legends, as might have been expected in an era of conquest. Thus Vichitra-vírya and Pándu were each married to two wives; and Pándu is said to have obtained his second wife by purchase.[5] Dasaratha again had three wives;[6] and many other instances might be quoted from later traditions. Traces of polygamy are also to be found in the hymns of the Rig-Veda. Raja Swanaya on the banks of the river Indus, gave his ten daughters in marriage to a young Rishi named Kakshívat; and in return was duly praised in a Vedic hymn composed by his enthusiastic son-in-law.[7] In another hymn there is an allusion to the husband of many maidens.[8] Indeed, whilst an exceptional system like that of polyandry could only have originated from strong necessity, that of polygamy belongs to an age of half-barbarous sensuality, when self-indulgence was considered as the highest good.

Polygamy in the hymns of the Rig-Veda.

The Swayamvara in the Epics.

The institution known as the Swayamvara, or self-choice, was however without doubt the most popular of all the forms of marriage which prevailed amongst the Vedic Aryans. It belongs to an age of Hindú chivalry, when a high-spirited and gallant race might be supposed to yearn for the love of women, as a sentiment higher and nobler than that of mere desire. The legend of the marriage of the Aswins seems to associate the Swayamvara with polyandry; and later Puránic legends associate it with polygamy. It however finds a beautiful and attractive expression in that exquisite picture of a wife's devotion, which is presented in the story of Nala and Damayantí; and there it is found in connection with the true conception of marriage in the permanent union of one woman and one man.[9] The Swayamvara emphatically belongs to the old Vedic period, for it is distinctly recognized in the hymns of the Rig-Veda; not only in the verse already quoted, which intimates that the Aswins won a bride at a chariot-race; but in another hymn, where there is an allusion to a bride who was won at a Swayamvara by the youthful Vimada.[10] It will however be seen hereafter that there is no allusion whatever to the institution in the code of Manu.

---

[5] See Vol. I. p. 53, 64, 66.

[6] See *ante*, p. 11.

[7] Wilson's Rig-Veda, vol. ii. p. 14 *et seq.*

[8] Rig-Veda, Mand I. Hymn 116, v. 10.

The Swayamvara in the hymns of the Rig-Veda.

No allusion to the Swayamvara in Manu.

Gandharva and Rákshasa forms of marriage.

The Gandharva and Rákshasa nuptials belonged to the old lawless times, and were in reality no marriages at all. The Gandharva form was simply a union prompted by mutual desire, and consummated without any preliminary ceremonies; and in this manner Dushyanta met Sakuntalá in the jungle, where the amorous pair followed the old Idyllic fashion, which ultimately led to the birth of the famous hero Bhárata, the ancestor of the lunar race.[11] The Rákshasa form on the other hand consisted in the seizure of a damsel by force, after the conquest of her kinsmen; and in this manner Bhíshma carried off the three daughters of the Raja of Kásí.[12] According to the old Kshatriya law, a wife even was compelled to submit to the desires of the conqueror of her husband; but then conquest was a necessary preliminary, and it was considered contrary to all rule for a man surreptitiously to carry off the wife of another, without having first fought her husband. Thus it was that Dhaumya protested against the outrage committed upon Draupadí by Jayadratha; and that Sítá in like manner protested against the cowardice of Rávana.[13] These Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages originated in the Vedic period, and were contrary to Brahmanical law. It will indeed be seen hereafter that such unions were tolerated in the code of Manu, but they were permitted to the Kshatriyas alone; but even this toleration to the Kshatriyas is accompanied by expressions which sufficiently indicate a grave disapproval.[14]

---

[9] See Vol. I. Part iii. chap. 2.

[10] Rig-Veda, Mand I. Hymn 116, v. 1. Professor H. H. Wilson explains in a note upon the passage, that the story is told by the scholiast, that Vimada having won his bride at a Swayamvara, was stopped on his way home by his unsuccessful competitors, when the Aswins came to his succour, and placed the bride in their chariot, repulsed the assailants, and carried the damsel to the residence of the husband. Wilson's Rig-Veda, vol. ii. p. 306.

From other allusions in the hymns it would appear that Vimada was a Rishi, and that the father of the bride was a Raja. This seems to confirm the theory already indicated, that many of the Rishis, if not all of them, were Kshatriyas. The idea of a Bráhman contending at a Swayamvara, was regarded by the old Kshatriyas as an arrogant proceeding (see *ante*, Vol. I. Part ii. chap. 4). It is somewhat singular that these allusions to the Swayamvara and polyandry should be associated with the obscure worship of the Aswins.

Kshatriya law as regards Rákshasa marriages.

Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages restricted by Manu to the Kshatriyas.

Manu's description of the eight nuptials.

The eight forms of marriage described by Manu may now be described in the following order.

1. Brahma.

1st, The Brahmá marriage, in which a father invited a man versed in the Vedas, and of a good character; and then gave him his daughter, after clothing both of them, and entertaining them, and honouring them with ornaments. This is the ceremony of the Bráhmans.

2. Daiva.

2nd, The Daiva marriage, in which a father decks his daughter with ornaments, and then gives her to the priest officiating at a properly conducted sacrifice. This is the ceremony of the Devatas.

---

[11] See Vol. I. Part ii. chap. i.

[12] Ibid.

[13] See Vol. I. Part ii. chap. viii.; also *ante*, Part iv. chap. xvii.

[14] Manu, iii. 26.

3. Arsha.

3rd, The Arsha marriage, in which a father receives from a bridegroom one pair of kine (a bull and a cow), or two pairs, for religious purposes, and then gives away his daughter in due form. This is the ceremony of the Rishis.

4. Prajápayta.

4th, The Prajápatya marriage, in which a father gives away his daughter to the bridegroom with due honour, after distinctly uttering this injunction:—"May both of you perform together your civil and religious duties." This is the ceremony of the Prajapatis.

5. Asura.

5th, The Asura mode, in which the bridegroom gives as much wealth as he can afford to the damsel and her kinsmen, and then takes her according to his own pleasure.

6. Gandharva.

6th, The Gandharva mode, in which a youth and damsel are led by mutual desire to form a connection.

7. Rákshasa.

7th, The Rákshasa mode, in which a warrior seizes a maiden by force, and carries her from her home, while she weeps and calls for assistance, and after slaying or wounding her kinsmen.

8. Paisácha.

8th, The Paisácha mode, in which the lover secretly embraces a damsel while she sleeps, or is intoxicated, or disordered in her mind. This is the basest and most wicked of all.[15]

Four valid and four invalid marriages.

The foregoing description of the eight forms of marriage must be now subjected to a critical examination. In the first instance there are two points for consideration:—

---

[15] Manu, iii. 20 *et seq.*

1st, The four marriages which are first on the list, and which are permissible to all the four castes.

2nd, The four marriages which are last upon the list, and of which the validity is more or less impugned[16]

The four valid marriages ascribed to four different communities.

As regards the four valid marriages, it will be seen that they differ in name, whilst the language implies that they respectively belonged to four different communities; and by comparing the four names with the characteristics of each form, some valuable inferences may be drawn. The distinction between each of the four may be thus exhibited:—

Bráhmans.

1st, Bráhmans;—the gift of a daughter to a man learned in the Veda.

Vedic Aryans.

2nd, Devatas or Vedic Aryans;—the gift of a daughter to a sacrificing priest.

Rishis.

3rd, Rishis or Vedic bards;—the gift of a daughter in return for a pair or two of kine.

Prajápatis.

4th, Prajápatis;—the gift of a daughter to a bridegroom in order that the pair might perform together their civil and religious duties.

Apparent confusion from the arbitrary distinction between the Devatas, Rishis, and Prajápatis.

Here the distinction which has already been drawn between the Rishis and the Bráhmans appears to be involved in some confusion by the introduction of Devatas and Prajápatis as separate classes. But this confusion can be to some extent cleared up.

Bráhman form referred to the Brahmanic age.

The Bráhman mode of giving a daughter to a student in the Veda, was no doubt the predominant idea of marriage in the Brahmanic age which is depicted in the code. It moreover applied to all the twice-born castes, as all were to be instructed in the Veda. This conception of marriage may therefore be accepted as historical. The mode however which is said to have prevailed amongst the Devatas, or Vedic Aryans, of giving a daughter to the sacrificing priest, is apparently mythical. The age of sacrifice was passing away. Flesh sacrifices are scarcely tolerated in the code, and were certainly opposed to Brahmanism. Still the traditions that the Vedic Aryans offered such sacrifices were treasured up by the masses. Hence, if it was ruled that the form sanctioned by the Bráhmans was the gift of a daughter to a student in the Vedas, it was easy to arrive at the mythical idea that the form sanctioned amongst the Devatas was the gift of a daughter to a sacrificing priest. But whilst one idea is in accordance with human nature, the other is repugnant to it. To marry a daughter to a young Vedic scholar is natural and not unpleasing; but to marry a daughter to a man who has just been acting in the capacity of a butcher or a cook, even though it has been in the service of the gods, is opposed to the instincts of human nature. Moreover the latter idea is opposed to the traditions of the Vedic Aryans, who regarded such hired priests as mere mercenaries unworthy of forming an alliance with the daughter of Kshatriya, although in the old Vedic foretime a Raja might have given his daughter in marriage to a Vedic bard. In one direction however the apparently mythical idea of giving a daughter to a sacrificing priest may have had a historical basis. In the old Vedic period the priest and the head of a household were identical. The idea therefore of giving a daughter in marriage to a priest, may have merely involved the idea of giving her in marriage to the head of a household.

---

[16] Manu, iii. 39—42.

Mythical character of the Daiva mode.

Repugnant to human nature and Kshatriya tradition.

Rishi mode referred to the old Vedic period.

Further proof of the radical distinction between Rishis and Bráhmans.

The tradition as regards the third form of permissible nuptials, namely, that the mode amongst the Rishis was to give a daughter to a bridegroom in exchange for a pair or two of kine, is no doubt historical; and it probably prevailed more or less amongst all the Vedic Aryans, as it does even in the present day among many primitive tribes in India. It furnishes moreover a further proof of the distinction between the Rishis, or Vedic bards, and the Bráhmans as priests and worshippers of Brahma, which has been laid down in a previous chapter. It may be added in the present place, that the names of many celebrated Rishis are affixed to the Vedic hymns which they respectively composed;[17]

---

[17] Amongst the authors of the hymns of the Rig-Veda are to be found the time-honoured names of Kanwa, Parásara, Gotama, Kasyapa, Agastya, Viswámitra, Vámadeva, Atri, Bharadwája, and Vasishtha. These Rishis have for ages been regarded as Bráhmans, and their exaltation would naturally tend to the glorification of the Bráhmans as a caste. Accordingly their names are to be frequently found in the Brahmanical versions of the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana, but always under suspicious circumstances arising from being associated with supernatural details, or with palpable anachronisms. Kanwa was the putative father of Sakuntalá, the mother of Raja Bhárata, whose son Hastin founded the city of Hastinápur. Parásara was the holy sage who is said to have created a mist by the power of his religious austerities, in order that he might gratify his passion for a fish-girl, by whom he became the father of Vyása. Gotama was the sage whose connubial felicity was disturbed by Indra, and who subsequently pronounced a curse, by which his wife was turned to stone, and her seducer was covered with a thousand eyes. Kasyapa was the mythical progenitor of the Sun, and consequently the forefather of the Solar race at Ayodhyá. Agastya gave mythical weapons to the divine hero of the Rámáyana, drank up the sea with all its crocodiles and big fishes, and prevented the Vindhya mountain from attaining a greater altitude. In the Mahá Bhárata Viswámitra is represented as the real father of Sakuntalá by a celestial nymph; and he re-appears in the Rámáyana for the purpose of telling a number of absurd stories to Ráma, and bringing about the marriage of Ráma and Sítá. Vámadeva was the Minister of Dasaratha, but has very little to do in the action of the poem of the Rámáyana. Atri is the mythical progenitor of the Moon, and consequently the ancestor of the Lunar race of Bhárata; but yet he lived to entertain Ráma and Sítá at his hermitage in the neighbourhood of Chitra-kúta. Bharadwája was the mythical father of Drona, the preceptor of the Pándavas and Kauravas; and the equally mythical entertainer of the army of Bhárata at Prayága, or Allahabad. Vasishtha again is said to have been the preceptor of Dasaratha, and takes a prominent part in the minor action of the Rámáyana. These details

and that they could scarcely have been Bráhmans, because their hymns are in no way connected with the worship of the god Brahma. On the contrary, if any stress may be laid upon the general references in the Rig-Veda to the Rishis as a collective body, it would appear that the Rishis stand prominently forward as the worshippers of those Vedic deities who were the least in favour with the Bráhmans.[18]

Further consideration of the distinction between the marriage rite of the Rishis and that of the Bráhmans.

Here it may be as well to take into further consideration the distinction which Manu draws between the marriage rite of the Rishis and that of the Bráhmans. The former appears to be the most ancient, as it certainly was the most primitive; and moreover was devoid of any religious meaning such as clearly appertains to the other three approved marriages. No religious qualification was required in the bridegroom, and the young man simply obtained a damsel by presenting her father with a pair or two of kine; a practice so foreign to the civilization which appears to have prevailed in the time of Manu, that the Hindú lawgiver is compelled to defend it by urging that such a gift of kine to the father of the bride was not a purchase.[19] The cere-

---

have already been brought forward to prove that the association of the individuals in question with the main traditions in the Mahá Bhárata and Rámâyana is purely mythical.

[18] The Rishis are specially referred to as a collective body in the following hymns. "Friendly to man were those of the ancient Rishis whose praises thou (Indra) hast listened to." (Mand VIII. Hymn 29, v. 4.) "Aswins, hearing the many prayers of the Rishis." (Ib. Hymn 70, v. 5.) "The bride of Súrya (i. e. Ushas, the dawn). . . . . hymned by the Rishis." (Ib. Hymn 75, v. 5.) "Invigorated by the praise of a thousand Rishis, this Indra is vast as the ocean." (Mand VIII. Hymn 3, v. 4.) "Amid those who do not praise thee, Indra, amid the Rishis who do praise thee . . . . . may thou increase." (Ib. Hymn 6, v. 12.) "Come, Aswins, . . . when the Rishis formerly invoked you for protection; so now, Aswins, come at my devout praises." (Ib. Hymn 8, v. 5.) From the tenor of these mantras it would seem that the Rishis are regarded as even more ancient than the composition of many of the hymns.

[19] Manu, iii. 53.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

mony taught by the Bráhmans was altogether different. The bridegroom was assumed to be learned in the Veda. He was invited and hospitably entertained by the father of the damsel, and then married to the daughter, after which the father of the bride presented the pair with clothes and ornaments.

Significance of the distinction between the marriage rite of the Bráhmans and that of the Prajápatis.

Another and equally significant distinction seems to be drawn between the ceremony of the Bráhmans and that of the Prajápatis. In the former a father gives away his daughter in subordination to the bridegroom; a subordination which is perfectly in accordance with Brahmanical ideas, and which finds full expression in other parts of the code of Manu. In the ceremony of the Prajápatis, the father gives his daughter to the bridegroom, and enjoins them to "perform together their civil and religious duties." This latter expression seems to imply a higher social position on the part of the wife, and one which approaches to an equality with the husband; and this elevation of women in the social scale is in accordance with Kshatriya institutions, and certainly finds expression in the Rig-Veda.[20] It is however apparently connected with a religious system, as some stress is laid upon the religious duties of the married pair.

Question of whether Prajápati and Brahma are different conceptions.

Now the Prajápatis were undoubtedly a religious community; and the question which arises for consideration is whether any distinction can be laid down between the Prajápatis as worshippers of Prajápati, and the Bráhmans as worshippers of Brahma or Brahmá. Hitherto Prajápati has always been identified with Brahmá, and the conception of each deity as the creator of the universe appears to be the same. But it by no means follows that the two conceptions did not originate from different sources and become subsequently blended together; and it is not impossible that the worship of Prajápati, as one God, is associated with Manu, who has been termed a Prajápati.[21] Again, the worship of the Pitris is associated with Prajápati; and the Pitris are said to reside in the heaven of Prajápati: and Manu lays down a distinction between the world of the Sun, as the heaven of the Prajápatis, and the world or heaven of Brahma.[22] The question however can scarcely be regarded as fairly solved; and it can only be conjectured that Prajápati, or ruler, may have been originally a Kshatriya conception of the One God; and that Brahma may in like manner have been the Brahmanical conception of the Supreme Being.

---

[20] See Rig-Veda, Mand I. Hymn 26, vol. iv. Wilson's *note*.

Conclusions

Relative antiquity of the marriages of the Rishis, Prajápatis, and Brahmans.

It may now be as well to recapitulate the conclusions which seem to be established by the foregoing data. The most ancient form of marriage was apparently that of the Rishis, in which a bridegroom gave a pair or two of kine to the father of the bride, probably for the purpose of a marriage feast. A relic of this primitive custom is still to be traced in the modern rite, in which a cow is tied up, but let loose instead of being killed. The Daiva form is dubious. The Prajápatya form is apparently later in the order of time, being connected with a monotheistic religion which prevailed during a transition period between the worship of the Vedic deities and that of the god Brahma, and entailed civil and religious duties upon

---

[21] See the Mantras already quoted in the Introduction to Vol. I. p. 29.

[22] Manu, iv. 182.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

both men and women. The Brahma form is apparently the most modern of all.

The four marriages treated by Manu as illegal.

Having thus brought under review the four forms of marriage which were permitted by the code, it becomes necessary to take into consideration the four remaining nuptials, three of which were famous in the national traditions, and may have been occasionally practised in the age of Manu, but all of which were more or less censured by the Hindu lawgiver. They also seem to some extent to appertain to different communities, or perhaps to different phases of civilization; but they are all widely separated from the four orthodox forms by one general characteristic, namely, the absence of all ceremony, religious or otherwise. The conditions of each may be thus exhibited:—

Asura.

1st, The Asura, in which the bridegroom purchased a damsel of her father.

Gandharva.

2nd, The Gandharva, in which a union was prompted by mutual desire, and in which the rite was not necessarily binding for the future.

Rákshasa.

3rd, The Rákshasa, in which a damsel was captured by force of arms.

Paisácha.

4th, The Paisácha, in which a damsel was surprised whilst asleep, or under the influence of strong liquor, or disordered in her intellect.

Asura and Paisácha strictly prohibited.

The Gandharva and Rákshasa tolerated.

Of these four marriage customs, the first and last, namely, the Asura and Paisácha, were altogether forbidden by Manu; whilst the Gandharva and Rákshasa were only permitted to warriors, or men of the Kshatriya caste.

Asura mode a degenerate form of the marriage of Rishis.

The Asura custom might be supposed by its name to refer to marriages amongst the Asuras or aborigines; but in Manu's time, when the caste system had been fully established, the term Asura was probably employed only as one of reproach. It is not difficult to understand that the primitive custom of a bridegroom giving a pair of kine to the father of his bride, would degenerate in an age of comparative luxury into a mere matter of bargain and sale; in which family rank and personal attractions were duly considered, and an equivalent demanded in money and jewels.[23] The Gandharva marriage on the other hand might be regarded as the expression of a woman's independence in the disposal of her affections; or, what has already been indicated, it might merely refer to the idyllic loves of pastoral times, when a swain met a damsel in the forest, and the unsophisticated pair simply obeyed the dictates of mutual desire without regard to law

Gandharva mode an expression of idyllic amours.

---

[23] Marriage customs have greatly changed since the time of Manu. In Bengal the great difficulty is for the father of daughters to procure husbands for them, and a system prevails not unlike the purchase of bridegrooms. At this present moment, if a father wishes to marry a daughter to a young Bengalee who has taken a degree at the Calcutta University, he must agree to spend a much larger sum of money upon the marriage entertainment, and upon the jewels and gifts, than would have been necessary had the bridegroom failed to pass the University examination. The vast expense attending the purchasing of a bridegroom of the Kulin caste is well known; and a curious illustration of the social ideas upon this matter may be obtained from a recent biography of a Bengalee millionnaire, named Ramdoolal Dey, who wished to marry his daughter to a young Kulin named Radhakissen. The biography is written by an intelligent Bengalee gentleman, named Grish Chunder Ghose; and the following extract is given in the very words of the author:—"Born of parents wretchedly poor, the soul of Radhakissen was as small as his circumstances were pitiful. His Koolinism was the only bait that had attracted Ramdoolal to the lad. The lad, though not ugly, was ungainly. His hair was red and his features were gross. He had not received even an ordinary education. Yet Ramdoolal was anxious to wed his eldest and most favourite daughter,—a daughter in whose name he had built a ship,—to the son of a Koolin. That daughter refused however to marry the bridegroom thus selected for her. She had seen the boy herself; she loathed him with the absurd hate of a child. On the night on which the marriage was consummated, the bride screamed, and the bride writhed on her seat whilst being conveyed to the altar. So violent indeed was her conduct, that Ramdoolal was compelled to soften her, in order that the marriage rites might be proceeded with, by pouring a handful of gold mohurs into her lap."

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Rákshasa mode a war custom of the Kshatriyas.

Paisácha mode originating in a belief in ghosts.

or ceremony. The Rákshasa marriage again refers to a custom which prevailed during the wars between the Aryan invaders and the aborigines, by which the daughters and even the wives of the conquered became the prize of the conquerors. The Paisácha however has not a semblance to either a form or a right. The damsel was neither purchased, nor seduced, nor carried away captive, but was simply taken at a disadvantage; an outrage which was far more likely to be committed amongst a peaceful community than amongst a race of chivalrous warriors like the Kshatriyas. The origin of the name Paisácha is somewhat curious. The Pisáchas were evil spirits, or ghosts, who were supposed to haunt the earth; but sometimes they were identified with the more terrible and uncivilized aborigines.[24] If therefore a damsel found herself likely to become a mother, without being able to furnish a satisfactory reason for her maternity, she would naturally plead that she had been victimized by a Pisácha; and probably from this circumstance the term came to be applied to all cases in which a damsel had been taken at a disadvantage by a mortal lover. In modern times however the belief is still very general throughout the rural districts of India, that wives as well as maidens may be occasionally victimized by such ghostly admirers.

Significance of the law permitting Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages to the Kshatriyas.

The law permitting Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages to the Kshatriyas is not without historical significance. It seems to indicate that at the time the code of Manu was promulgated the Kshatriyas formed a powerful class of the community; and that the Bráhmans found it necessary to temporize, in order to reconcile so arrogant and important a caste with Brahmanical law.[25]

---

[24] "Destroy, Indra, the tawny-coloured, fearfully-roaring Pisáchi; annihilate the Rákshasas." · Rig-Veda, Mand I. Hymn 133, v. 5.

Respective merits and demerits of the eight forms of marriage.

The respective merits and demerits of the eight forms of marriage are thus indicated by Manu:—

> "The son of a wife by the Brahmá rite, if he performs virtuous acts, redeems from sin ten ancestors and ten descendants, and redeems likewise himself, making twenty-one persons in all. The son of a wife by the Daiva rite redeems seven ancestors and seven descendants. The son of a wife by the Arsharite redeems three ancestors and three descendants. The son of a wife by the Prajápatya rité redeems six ancestors and six descendants. By these four marriages are born sons illumined by the Veda, beloved by the learned, adorned with beauty, endowed with goodness, wealthy, renowned, blessed with all lawful enjoyments, performing every duty, and living a hundred years. But in the four other marriages, which are base marriages, are born sons, who act cruelly, speak falsely, abhor the Veda, and the duties prescribed therein."[26]

Significance of Manu's application of the doctrine.

The foregoing observations of the Hindú lawgiver on each of the eight forms of marriage furnish a curious illustration of the system of merits and demerits, which has already been explained as forming the ground-work of Brahmanism. The ingenuity of the authors of the code in dealing with this subject is well worthy of notice. According to the dogma inculcated, the merits of an individual ac-

---

[25] The custom of treating female captives as prize is as old as the hills. In this fashion Chryseis and Briseis were allotted to Agamemnon and Achilles; and the mother of Sisera is represented in the song of Deborah and Barak as expecting the return of the victorious army of her son with a damsel or two to every man. The brute violence of the custom was greatly mitigated in the Mosaic law, which ordered that a beautiful captive should shave her head and be permitted to lament her parents for a whole month, before a warrior could make her his wife.

[26] Manu, iii. 36—41.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

quired by an orthodox marriage will not only tend to his own deliverance from the punishment awarded to demerits, but in some cases will deliver his ancestors or his descendants from such evil consequences. Now, amongst the Hindús the marriage of a son is brought about by the parents; and although there is reason to believe that this custom was not in force in very ancient times, yet the obligation of a father as regards the marriage of his sons and daughters seems to have been generally acknowledged by Manu. The Hindú lawgiver accordingly enlists the self-interest of parents, by declaring that the merits of those who contract the better forms of marriage will be felt through a certain number of degrees in the ascending line; and in like manner he enlists the self-interest of the pair about to be married, by declaring that such merits will be also felt by the children through a corresponding number of generations in the descending line. In the same spirit it is asserted that the sons who are born from any of the prohibited marriages will turn out the vilest of characters.

CHAPTER IX.

THE SRÁDDHA, OR FEAST OF THE DEAD.

Origin of the idea of propitiating the ghosts of ancestors with food.

THE Sráddha, or feast of the dead, is perhaps one of the most primitive, as it certainly is one of the most simple, of all the Vedic rites that have been handed down from a period of remote antiquity to the present day. It originated in the crude idea already indicated, that the spirit or ghost had a separate existence after death, and that it might be gratified or propitiated with offerings of food. This idea certainly involved a belief in the prolonged existence of the spirit in a future state of being; but in its origin it had no connection with the doctrine of future rewards and punishments. It is rather to be traced to the old world belief, which has existed in all ages, and which still lingers in the imagination of even a philosophic and material generation, that the spirits of the departed hover at times near those persons and places which were associated with their earthly careers, and are gratified by any tribute of respect which may be paid to their memory.[1]

---

[1] This idea finds exquisite expression in Collins's poem on the death of Thomson:—

"Remembrance oft shall haunt the shore
When Thames in summer wreaths is dress'd;
And oft shall stay the dashing oar
To bid his gentle spirit rest."

The Sráddha a pleasing expression of natural religion.

The Sráddha, or feast of the dead, was thus in its earliest form a pleasing expression of natural religion, which long preceded the advent of a priestly caste, or the introduction of a systematic ritual. But, like every other popular ceremonial which has been handed down amongst the Hindús from the Vedic period, it has been recast in a Brahmanical mould; and it is in this latter form that the institution appears in the Epics as well as in the laws of Manu. It consists of three distinct rites:—

Three distinct Sráddhas.

1st, The Daily Sráddha, to be performed in propitiation of the Pitris, or ghosts of remote ancestors.

2nd, The Monthly Sráddha, to be performed in propitiation of the more immediate paternal ancestors.

3rd, The Funeral Sráddha, to be performed within a certain period after death, or the hearing of the death, of a near kinsman.

Other Sráddhas.

It should also be remarked that Sráddhas are likewise performed on other occasions, and notably at the celebration of any marriage ceremony.[2]

---

[2] In a work entitled Nirneya Sindhu, Colebrooke found authority for classifying obsequies under twelve heads. (1.) Daily obsequies, either food or water only, in honour of ancestors in general, but excluding the Viswadevas. (2.) Obsequies for a special cause, that is, in honour of a kinsman recently defunct. (3.) Voluntary obsequies, performed by way of supererogation, for the greater benefit of the deceased. (4.) Obsequies for increase of prosperity, performed upon any accession of wealth, and upon other joyful occasions. (5.) A Sráddha intended to introduce the ghost of a deceased kinsman to the rest of the ghosts. (6.) Obsequies performed on appointed days, such as that of new moon, full moon, sun's passage into a new sign, etc. (7.) A Sráddha to sanctify the food at an entertainment given to a company of Bráhmans. (8.) One performed when stated numbers of Bráhmans are fed at the cost of a person who needs purification from some defilement. (9.) A Sráddha preparatory to the celebration of any solemn rite, and considered as a part of such rite. (10.) A Sráddha in honour of deities. (11.) Oblations of clarified butter, previous to the undertaking of a distant journey. (12.) A Sráddha to sanctify a meal of flesh-meat prepared simply for the sake of nourishment. See Colebrooke's *Essays on the Religious Ceremonies of the Hindús.*

Daily Sráddha.

The daily Sráddha was an offering either of boiled rice, or of milk, roots, and fruit, or of water only, to the Pitris, or remote ancestors. This ceremonial has been already described,[3] and it will be only necessary to add that in modern practice it is considered sufficient to pour water out of a particular vessel every day as a drink-offering to the Pitris.

Monthly Sráddha, considered under four heads.

The monthly Sráddha may be considered under four separate heads:—

1st, Ceremonies to be performed at a monthly Sráddha.

2nd, Persons to be entertained at the monthly Sráddha.

3rd, Persons to be excluded from the monthly Sráddha.

4th, Relative merits of the different kinds of victuals which may be offered at a monthly Sráddha.

1st, Ceremonies to be performed at a monthly Sráddha.

The ceremonies at the monthly Sráddha, as described in the Institutes of Manu, are of a very intelligible character; and seem to have been laid down for the purpose of converting the old Vedic offering of food and water into a great feast to the Bráhmans. The monthly Sráddha was performed on the dark day of the moon, that is, when the sun and moon are in conjunction. A sequestered spot was selected, such as was supposed to be pleasing to the ghosts; and then the invited Bráhmans were conducted to their allotted seats, which had been purified with kusa grass, and were presented with garlands of flowers and sweet perfumes. The officiating Bráhman then satisfied the three Vedic deities,—Agni, Soma, and Yama,—by pouring an oblation of ghee upon the sacred fire. He then

Oblation to the Vedic deities.

---

[3] See *ante*, chap. vii.

Offering of the three cakes of rice or pindas, to the paternal ancestors.

proceeded to satisfy the ancestors of the giver of the Sráddha. He first sprinkled water on the ground with his right hand, and then formed three balls or cakes of boiled rice, which are called pindas. One of these cakes is presented to each of the three immediate paternal ancestors, namely, the father, the grandfather, and the great-grandfather. The offering of pindas, however, is said to be extended to the fourth, fifth, and sixth degrees of paternal ancestors in the ascending line, by the simple process of wiping the hand with kusa grass after offering the pindas to the ancestors of the first, second, and third degree.

Feast to the Bráhmans.

This ceremony was followed by a great feast to the Bráhmans, consisting of vessels filled with rice, together with broths, potherbs, milk and curds, ghee, spiced puddings, milky messes of various sorts, roots of herbs, ripe fruits, and savoury meats; and during the feast passages were read from the Sástras.

Disposal of the cakes.

The remains of the cakes were to be eaten by a cow, a Bráhman, or a kid; or to be cast into water or fire;[4] but the wife of the householder was to eat the middle of the three cakes, in order that she might become the mother of a son, who should be long-lived, famous, strong-minded, wealthy, and the father of many sons.

Feast of the kinsmen.

When the Bráhmans had duly feasted, the householder gave a feast to the kinsmen of his father, and afterwards to the kinsmen of his mother.[5] In cases of poverty, however, the offering of water seems to be considered a sufficient satisfaction of the spirits of the six paternal ancestors.[6]

---

[4] A curious illustration of the popular belief as regards the mode by which the food was supposed to reach the ghosts, is to be found in the discussion between Ráma and Jáváli. See Part iv. chap. xiv. See also the narrative of the second adventure of the horse in Vol. I. Part ii. chap. xvi.

[5] Manu, iii. 206—265.

[6] Manu, iii. 283.

2nd, Persons to be invited to the Sráddha.

As regards the persons to be invited to the monthly Sráddha, great stress is laid by the code upon the entertainment of learned Bráhmans, and the exclusion of ignorant ones from the Sráddha; but it is added that if such learned Bráhmans cannot be found, certain relatives may be entertained. This last expression is somewhat obscure, and may possibly imply that the Sráddha was originally eaten by the kinsmen, and that the introduction of learned Bráhmans was a later idea.[7]

3rd, Catalogue of persons to be excluded from the Sráddha.

Manu's catalogue of the persons who were to be excluded from a monthly Sráddha is of a very miscellaneous character; and is chiefly valuable from the illustrations which it furnishes of the Brahmanical notion of impure or immoral characters. The catalogue may be re-distributed under four general heads, according to the four different grounds upon which the individuals specified have been respectively excluded, namely, moral, religious, physical, and professional.

(1.) Persons disqualified on moral grounds.

The persons to be excluded from a Sráddha on moral grounds, are:—

"A Brahmachári who has not read the Veda; a Bráhman who has committed theft; one who opposes his preceptor; a younger brother married before the elder; an elder brother not married before the younger; one who subsists by the wealth of many relatives; the husband of a Súdra; the son of a twice-married woman; a husband in whose house an adulterer dwells; one who teaches the Veda for wages; one who gives wages to such a teacher; the pupil of a Súdra; the Súdra preceptor; a rude speaker; the son of an adulteress born either before or after the death of her husband; a forsaker of his mother, father, or preceptor without just cause; a man who forms a connection with great sinners; a house-burner; a giver of poison; an eater of food offered by the son of an adulterer; a suborner of perjury; a wrangler with his father; a drinker of intoxicating spirits; one of evil repute; a cheat; the husband of a younger sister married before the elder; an injurer of his friend; a father instructed in the Veda by his own son; one who diverts water-courses; a seducer of damsels; a man who delights in mischief; a Bráhman living as a Súdra; one who observes neither approved customs nor prescribed duties; a constant and importunate asker of favours; one who is despised by the virtuous; the husband of a twice-married woman; a Bráhman of bad manners; and an ignorant Bráhman."

---

[7] Manu, iii. 148.

(2.) Persons disqualified on religious grounds.

The persons to be excluded from a Sráddha on religious grounds, are:—

"Those who profess to disbelieve in a future state; a Bráhman who has performed many sacrifices for other men; those who worship images for gain; one who deserts the sacred fire; one who omits the five great sacraments; a contemner of Bráhmans; a despiser of scripture; and one who sacrifices only to the inferior gods."

(3.) Persons disqualified on physical grounds.

The persons to be excluded from a Sráddha on physical grounds, are:—

"Those with whitlows on their nails; those with black-yellow teeth; a consumptive man; a man who has lost an eye; a man with elephantiasis; an impotent man; an epileptic man; one with erysipelas; a leper; a lunatic; a blind man; a club-footed man."

(4.) Persons disqualified on account of their trade or profession.

The persons to be excluded from a Sráddha because of their trade or profession, are:—

"Physicians; gamesters; usurers; dancers; sellers of meat; those who live by low traffic; a public servant of the whole town; a public servant of the Raja; a feeder of cattle; a seller of the moon-plant; a navigator of the ocean; a poetical encomiast; an oil man; one who employs gamesters for his own benefit; a seller of liquors; a maker of bows and arrows; the keeper of a gambling-house; a common informer; a tamer of elephants, bulls, horses, or camels; one who subsists by astrology; a keeper of birds; one who teaches the use of arms; one who builds houses for gain; a messenger; a planter of trees for pay; a breeder of sporting dogs; a falconer; one who supports himself by tillage; a shepherd; a keeper of buffaloes; and one who removes dead bodies for pay."

Punishment for inviting disqualified persons.

The food that is given to such men at a Sráddha becomes base and impure; and the giver of the Sráddha will be punished in the next life.[8]

Significance of the catalogues of disqualifications.

Confusion of sin and disease.

The foregoing catalogues of persons who are to be excluded from a Sráddha are very suggestive. In the first place it will be noticed that Manu classifies immorality, heresy, and deviation from caste rule, with physical evils, such as leprosy, blindness, and elephantiasis; and this intermingling is more perceptible in the original text, where no attempt has been made to separate the precepts under different heads. This strange confusion of sin and disease appears to have originated in the old idea, connected with the dogma of the transmigration of the soul, that disease was the punishment of sins committed either in this life or in a previous state of existence.

Peculiar usages.

Prohibition of the marriage of a younger brother or sister before that of an elder brother or sister.

The peculiar usages which seem to have originated some of the precepts are also well worthy of notice. Thus it has been seen that it was considered wrong for a younger brother or a younger sister to be married before an elder brother or an elder sister;

---

[8] Manu, iii. 150 *et seq.* The punishments dogmatically awarded by Manu to sinners in the next life are without significance, excepting so far as they illustrate the doctrine of merits and demerits already explained. Accordingly they are only given in the above text in a general and abstract form.

a notion which could only find a place amongst a people who believed that the marriage of a daughter was a duty which every parent was bound to fulfil.[9] It has also been seen that a woman who married a second husband was held in great abhorrence; and to the present day the marriage of a Hindú widow, even when her first husband has died before the marriage has been consummated, is regarded with a national antipathy which education and legislation have done but little to remove. It is also somewhat curious that Manu should exclude a constant and importunate asker of favours from a Sráddha; from which it would appear that askers of favours were as constant and importunate in the age of Manu as they are in our own time.

Prohibition of the re-marriage of widows.

Amongst the persons whom Manu directed should be excluded on religious grounds are to be found those who sacrifice only to the "inferior gods." This expression of "inferior gods" seems to suggest a religious opposition. Indeed it is not impossible that Manu is alluding to the old Vedic deities, who were treated by the Bráhmans as subordinate to their god Brahma. The injunction against the Bráhmans who performed many sacrifices for other men, may have been aimed at the mercenary priests who sacrificed for hire. The injunction against those who worshipped images for the sake of gain is involved in more obscurity, inasmuch as there does not appear to be any satisfactory reference to images in the hymns of the Rig-Veda; although it is easy

Prohibition of the worshippers of inferior gods.

---

[9] The same idea finds expression in the marriage of Jacob to Leah, when Jacob was really in love with the younger sister Rachel, and under the idea that Rachel was to be his bride.

to conceive that such a form of worship must sooner or later find expression.

Prohibition of Kshatriyas.

The exclusion of men who followed certain trades or professions from the entertainment given at a Sráddha, furnishes in like manner some striking illustrations of the old opposition between the priest and the soldier, the Bráhman and the Kshatriya, which seems to be more or less identical with the opposition between the Bráhmans and the Vedic Aryans. Thus amongst the ancient Kshatriyas gambling was a favourite pastime, and certainly was not regarded as a vice, excepting when carried to a vicious excess and terminating in the ruin of a family. Even Yudhishthira, who is represented in the Mahá Bhárata as an incarnation of Dharma, or goodness, and who was apparently regarded as a model Raja, is actually said to have disguised himself as a Bráhman, and in that guise to have taught the art of dice to the Raja of Viráta. But Manu excludes from the Sráddha every gambler, and every man who keeps a gambling-house or employs gamblers. Then again the Kshatriyas revelled in wine and flesh-meat; but Manu excludes the sellers of wine and meat from the Sráddha. The most significant precepts however are those which exclude the makers of bows and arrows, the tamers of horses, and those who taught the use of arms; for the bow was the favourite weapon of the Kshatriyas, and the taming of horses was regarded as a royal accomplishment; whilst two of the most patriarchal characters in the Mahá Bhárata, Bhíshma and Drona, are said to have trained Pándu and Dritarashtra, and their sons, the Pándavas and Kauravas, in the use of different kinds of weapons. The exclusion of navigators is equally curious. Na-

Gambling.

Sellers of wine and flesh-meat.

Makers of weapons and tamers of horses.

vigation was certainly known to the Vedic Aryans, and is even recognized by Manu;[10] but it has always been regarded with peculiar horror by the Bráhmans; and consequently it is referred to the three first Yugas or ages, but discountenanced in the age of Kali. The exclusion of physicians seems to have originated in the idea that they must be impure from having to deal with impure things.

4th. Relative merits of different victuals offered at a Sráddha.

As regards the food to be offered to the ghosts at the monthly Sráddha, the precepts in Manu are also significant. The old primitive custom of offering fish and flesh is sufficiently recognized, but at the same time it is urged that the ghosts prefer a more simple and Brahmanical diet, such as milk and honey.[11] At a later period it was declared that the feasting on flesh-meat at a Sráddha was forbidden in the Kali age.[12]

Funeral Sráddha.

The funeral Sráddha, which is performed after the death of a kinsman, is in every respect similar to the monthly Sráddha, and consequently calls for no detailed description. The code lays down certain laws as regards the purification of the survivors, but they are devoid of historical significance. The ceremonies which accompanied and followed the death of Maháraja Dasaratha sufficiently illustrate the popular ideas and customs which still prevail.[13]

---

[10] Manu, viii. 156, 157.

[11] "Offerings of the following victuals are said to be capable of satisfying the ancestors of men for different periods: Tila [*i. e.* sesamum seeds], rice, barley, black lentils or vetches, water, roots, and fruit, given with the prescribed ceremonies, will satisfy the ancestors of men for an entire month. Fish will satisfy them for two months; venison for three months; mutton for four months; birds, such as the twice-born may eat, for five months; kid's flesh for six months; spotted deer for seven months; the antelope for eight months; the ram for nine months; the flesh of wild boars and wild buffaloes for ten months; horses and tortoises for eleven months. But the milk of cows, and food made of that milk, will satisfy the ancestor for a whole year. . . . The Pitris say:—'Oh! may that man be born in our line who will give us honey and pure butter, both on the thirteenth day of the moon, and when the shadow of an elephant falls to the east.'" Manu, iii. 266—274.

[12] See appendix to Manu, Haughton's *translation*.

Modifications of the old Vedic belief in the Sráddha by the Bráhmans.

It will be seen from the foregoing data that the old Vedic belief in the worship of ancestors has been strangely Brahmanized by the compilers of the code. The monthly Sráddha, whilst ostensibly celebrated in honour of deceased ancestors, is in reality nothing more than an entertainment given to the Bráhmans. Again, the original idea appears to have originated in a childlike belief that the food and water sustain and refresh the spirit of the departed; whilst, according to the more modern Brahmanical doctrine, the performance of a Sráddha delivers the soul of the dead person from the custody of Yama, the judge of the dead, and translates it to the heaven of the Pitris, or ancestors; there to remain until the merits of its previous life on earth are all exhausted, and then to return again to earth and re-animate another body. Thus it is the current belief that without the Sráddha the soul of the deceased cannot ascend to the heaven of the Pitris and take up its abode there.

---

[13] See *ante*, Part iv. chap. xi. and xii. The celebration of these Sráddhas is frequently attended by a vast expenditure. The Bráhmans are feasted in great numbers, whilst money and food are lavishly distributed amongst the guests, and also amongst the lower classes of the community. At the Sráddha of Ramdoolal Dey, five lakhs of rupees, or £50,000, were expended. His biographer, Baboo Grish Chunder Ghose, thus describes the proceedings on that occasion:—"The Bráhman and the beggar overflowed in Calcutta at this solemn ceremony. To the former gold and silver, and elephants and horses, and budgerows and boats, and carriages and palanquins, were given away with princely munificence; to the latter upwards of three lakhs of rupees were distributed. On no one was less than a rupee bestowed, and if a beggar woman was found to be with child, a second rupee was given to her. Did a beggar bring a bird in his hand, the bird obtained its alms equally with its master."

CHAPTER X.

THE FOUR CASTES.

Division of classes of society into four castes, and of lives of individuals into four stages.

THE social fabric of the Hindús rests upon the caste system, namely, the division of the community, without regard to wealth or ability, into the four great classes of priest, soldier, merchant, and cultivator, or Bráhman, Kshatriya, Vaisya, and Súdra. But besides this distinction of caste which dismembers society, there is a division of epochs or stages in the existence of the individual, which maps out the life of every twice-born man into four periods, namely, that of student, householder, hermit, and devotee. Accordingly the present chapter will be devoted to the consideration of the caste system and caste laws, which regulate more or less the social life of the Hindús; whilst the subsequent chapter will be devoted to the consideration of the four successive stages in the life of the individual man.

Probable origin of the four castes.

The probable origin of the four castes of Bráhmans, Kshatriyas, Vaisyas, and Súdras has already been briefly indicated. It has been observed[1] that a broad line of demarcation, which finds expression in the investiture of the thread, separates the three twice-born castes, who were apparently Aryan conquerors, from the Súdras, who were apparently a conquered

---

[1] Vol. I. Introduction.

Traces of caste in the Vedic age.

Stratification of the caste system in the Brahmanic age.

race. The inference has accordingly been drawn that the Súdras were the original inhabitants of the land, who had been reduced to a servile condition by their Aryan conquerors. Traces of this distinction are to be found in the Vedic hymns; and indeed Manu himself refers the origin of caste to the Aryan settlement on the Saraswatí. But in the Brahmanic age, which is the special subject of the code of Manu, the caste system was firmly rooted in the minds of the people as an article of religious belief; and it was associated with every religious act and duty, whilst enforced by public law as well as by moral and social rule. This distinction may be thus indicated:—

Bráhmans, or priests.	Termed the "twice-born" from wearing the sacred thread.
Kshatriyas, or soldiers and Rajas.	
Vaisyas, or merchants and farmers.	
Súdras, or the servile class who tilled the soil.	Never invested with the thread.

Vedic myth that the four castes were created from the limbs of Purusha.

The earliest account of the fourfold origin of caste appears in one of the later hymns of the Rig-Veda, known as the Purusha hymn, because it refers to Purusha, or the Supreme Spirit, who may be identified with Brahma. In this hymn the gods and Rishis are supposed to offer up Purusha as a sacrifice, and to dismember him for the purpose of creating the world out of his limbs. This is an ancient conception, and, as already indicated, finds expression in the Scandinavian mythology.[2] But Purusha was a spirit, and accordingly some difficulty appears to have been felt in assigning bodily members to a spiritual being. Indeed the Sanscrit commentator upon the passage explains that the gods did not actually offer sacrifice and bind Purusha as a victim; but that they offered mental sacrifice and contemplated Purusha as a victim.[3] The entire hymn has been translated by Dr. Muir, but the following extract contains all that refers to the four castes:[4]—

---

[2] See *ante*, p. 453, note.

Extracts from the Purusha hymn.

> "When they formed [or offered up] Purusha, into how many parts did they divide him? What was his mouth? What were his arms? What were called his thighs and feet?
>
> "The Bráhman was his mouth; the Rajamaya [i.e. Kshatriya] was made his arms; that which was the Vaisya was his thighs; the Súdra sprang from his feet."

No Brahmanical superiority asserted in the Purusha hymn.

Now whilst this hymn may possibly indicate the inferiority of the Súdra to the three twice-born castes, it can scarcely be said to establish the supremacy of the Bráhman over the Kshatriya. On the contrary, the myth only explains the mutual relation of the castes towards each other, and that too in figurative language which could scarcely offend the pride of the haughtiest Kshatriya; for the latter would readily admit that the Bráhmans were the mouth that promulgated Brahmanism, whilst they themselves were regarded as the arm that protected the commonweal.

Vedic myth distorted in Manu's code, to represent the Bráhmans superior to the Kshatriyas.

In the code of Manu however, which is the full expression of Brahmanical assumption, the significance of the Vedic myth is altogether distorted for the purpose of setting the Bráhman above the Kshatriya. Instead of the twice-born castes forming the mouth, arms, and thighs of the Purusha, they are said to have sprung from those members; and the new idea is introduced that the mouth is better than the arm. Manu says:—

---

[3] Mahidhara, quoted by Dr. Muir.

[4] Muir's Sanscrit Texts, vol. i. chap. i. sect. 2

> "In order to preserve the universe, Brahmá caused the Bráhman to proceed from his mouth; the Kshatriya to proceed from his arm; the Vaisya to proceed from his thigh; and the Súdra to proceed from his foot. And Brahmá directed that the duties of the Bráhmans should be reading and teaching the Veda; sacrificing and assisting others to sacrifice; giving alms if they be rich, and receiving alms if they be poor. And Brahmá directed that the duties of the Kshatriyas should be to defend the people; to give alms; to sacrifice; to read the Veda; and to keep their passions under control. And he directed that the duties of the Vaisyas should be to keep herds of cattle; to give alms; to read the Sástras; to carry on trade; to lend money at interest; and to cultivate land. And he directed that the Súdra should serve all the three mentioned castes, namely, the Bráhmans, the Kshatriyas, and the Vaisyas; and that he should not depreciate them or make light of them. Since the Bráhman sprang from the mouth, which is the most excellent part of Brahmá, and since he is the first-born and possesses the Veda, he is by right the chief of the whole creation. Him Brahmá produced from his own mouth that he might perform holy rites; that he might present ghee to the gods, and cakes of rice to the Pitris or progenitors of mankind."[5]

Bráhmans, the chief of the creation.

The foregoing account calls for no further comment. The statement that the Bráhmans are the chief of the creation is simply an assumption, which the Hindú lawgiver continues to teach and enforce throughout the entire code.

Expression of caste distinctions.

The system of caste finds expression in every act of Hindú life, and like the doctrine of merits and

---

[5] Manu, i. 88—94.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

In salutations.

In administering oaths.

Marriages between castes.

demerits, imparts a religious significance to every ordinary proceeding. In its more general form it simply indicates the different professions of priest, soldier, merchant, and cultivator. Thus in ordinary salutations, or polite inquiries, a Bráhman was to be asked whether his devotion had prospered; a Kshatriya whether he suffered from his wounds; a Vaisya whether his wealth was secure; and a Súdra whether he was in good health.[6] In administering oaths to witnesses, however, a far wider distinction is laid down between members of either of the three twice-born castes and a Súdra. Thus a Bráhman was to swear by his veracity; a Kshatriya by his weapons, horse, or elephant; and a Vaisya by his kine, grain, or gold; but a Súdra was to imprecate upon his own head the guilt of every possible crime if he did not speak the truth.[7] The law as regards caste marriages betrays a conflict of usages, inasmuch as it recognizes polygamy, and seems to indicate that the Kshatriyas occasionally insisted upon taking the fair daughters of inferior castes to be their wives. It was enacted that a Bráhman, a Kshatriya, or a Vaisya should in the first instance marry a damsel of his own caste; and if, after fulfilling that duty, one or the other should be driven by inclination to marry a damsel of an inferior caste, he might do so in the direct order of the castes beneath him. This law is curiously artificial, and is evidently aimed against all marriages between castes. Men of the twice-born castes were assured that if through weakness of intellect they irregularly married women of the Súdra caste, they would very soon degrade their families to the condition of Súdras. "If a Bráhman married a daughter of a Súdra as his first wife, that wife would have to prepare the sacrifices to the gods and the oblations to the Pitris, and neither the gods nor the Pitris would eat such offerings. For the crime of that Bráhman there was no expiation."[8]

---

[6] Manu, ii. 127.

[7] Manu, viii. 113.—The following texts respecting perjury, and the examination of witnesses, are very significant:—"When the witnesses are all assembled in the middle of the court-room in the presence of the plaintiff and defendant, the judge, before examining them, should address them as follows:—'What you know to have been transacted in the matter before us between the two parties, declare at large and with truth, for your evidence in this cause is required.' The witness who is truthful will attain the highest fame here below, and the most exalted seats of happiness hereafter; such testimony is revered by Brahma. But the witness who speaks falsely will be fast bound under water in the cords of Varuna, and be wholly deprived of power during a hundred transmigrations. The soul itself is its own witness; the soul itself is its own refuge; let no one then offend his conscious soul, for it is the supreme internal witness of men! The sinful have said in their hearts:—'None sees us!' But the gods distinctly see them, and so does the spirit within their breasts. The twice-born witnesses should be called upon by the judge to declare the truth in the presence of the divinity with their faces turned either to the north or to the east. To a Bráhman the judge should say:—'Declare!' To a Kshatriya he should say:—'Declare the truth!' To the Vaisya he should compare perjury to the crime of stealing kine, grain, or gold. To the Súdra he should compare perjury to every crime, in the following language:—'Whatever places of torture have been prepared for the murderer of a Bráhman, for the murderer of a woman or child, for the injurer of a friend, or for an ungrateful man, have also been ordained for that witness who gives false evidence. If you deviate from the truth, the fruit of every virtuous act which

Marriage with a first wife of a low caste prohibited.

It was, however, ordered that in all marriage rites between different castes the bride was to take in her hand an emblem of the caste to which she belonged. Thus a bride of the warrior caste was to hold an arrow; a bride of the merchant caste was to hold a whip; whilst a bride of the lowest caste of all was to hold the skirt of a mantle.[9] Such arbitrary laws

Caste emblems.

Later prohibi-

---

you have committed since your birth will depart from you to the dogs. The man who gives false evidence shall go naked, shorn, and blind, and be tormented with hunger and thirst, and beg food with a potsherd at the door of his enemy. If he answer one question falsely he shall tumble headlong into hell in utter darkness. Even if he gives imperfect testimony, and asserts a fact which he has not seen, he will suffer pain like a man who eats fish and swallows the sharp bones.'" Manu, viii. 79—95.

[8] Manu, iii. 12—19.

[9] Manu, iii. 44.

naturally tended to throw discredit upon all marriages between castes; and in the present day all such marriages have fallen into disuse and are strictly prohibited.

tion of all marriages between different castes.

Five groups of illustrations of the caste system.

The more important illustrations of the caste system, which are to be found in Manu, may be grouped under five different heads, viz.:—

1st, The veneration in which Bráhmans are to be held.

2nd, The privileges which are to be enjoyed by Bráhmans.

3rd, The occupations or mode of life to be followed by Bráhmans.

4th, The restrictions as regards diet which are to be observed by all men of the twice-born castes.

5th, The scale of punishment for cases of slander between men of different castes.

1st, Veneration for Bráhmans.

The degree of veneration in which the Bráhman was to be held by all other men is explicitly laid down in the code of Manu. The Bráhman, it is said, sprang from the mouth of Brahmá. He was entitled to the whole of the universe by the right of primogeniture. He possessed the Veda, and was alone permitted to teach the laws of Manu.[10] By his sacrifices and imprecations he could destroy a Raja in a moment, together with all his troops, elephants, horses, and chariots.[11] In his wrath he could frame new worlds, with new gods and new mortals.[12] Although convicted of every possible crime, he was never to be put to death by a Raja; he might be banished from the realm, but no injury was to be inflicted on himself or his property.[13] A twice-born man, who barely assaulted a Bráhman with the intention of hurting him, would be whirled about for a century in the hell termed Tamasa. He who smote a Bráhman with only a blade of grass would be born an inferior quadruped during twenty-one transmigrations. But he who shed the blood of a Bráhman, saving in battle, would be mangled by animals in his next birth for as many years as there were particles of dust rolled up by the blood of the Bráhman.[14] If a Súdra sat upon the same seat with a Bráhman, he was to be gashed in the part offending.[15]

---

[10] Manu, i. 94—101.

[11] Manu, ix. 313.

[12] Manu, ix. 315.

[13] Manu, viii. 380.

2nd, Privileges of Bráhmans.

The rights and privileges to be enjoyed by the Bráhman in the state were of a very high character, but were scarcely connected with the idea of nobility. The Raja was to appoint a Bráhman to be chief over all the Ministers; and in him the Raja was to place his fullest confidence.[16] The Raja was to appoint one Bráhman to be his Purohita, or family priest; and another Bráhman to be his Ritwij or performer of sacrifices.[17] The administration of justice was to be largely intrusted to the Bráhmans, and a court of four Bráhmans was called the Court of Brahma, or the Court of four faces; the god Brahma being always represented with four faces, corresponding to the four Vedas, of which he was said to be the author.[18] Treasure trove was to be divided between the Raja and the Bráhmans; but if a Bráhman found the treasure none of it went to the Raja.[19] The property of Bráhmans was never to be escheated by the Raja. On failure of heirs the wealth of all other castes might be taken by the Raja; but that of the Bráhman was to be divided amongst his caste.[20] Above all, the Bráhman, provided he was learned in the Veda, was to enjoy a perfect immunity from taxation. Under no circumstances whatever was a Raja to levy a tax upon such a Bráhman, or permit him to be hungry. On the other hand, the Raja was to provide for the maintenance of the Bráhman, and protect him as a father protects a son.[21]

---

[14] Manu, iv. 165—168.

[15] Manu, viii. 281.

[16] Manu, vii. 58, 59.

[17] Manu, vii. 78.

[18] Manu, viii. 1, 9, 11.

[19] Manu, viii. 37—39.

3rd, Occupations of Bráhmans.

As regards the mode of life to be followed by a Bráhman, it is laid down in the code that he might gain his subsistence by lawful gleaning and gathering, by what was given to him in alms, and by tillage. He was, however, to receive no gifts whatever from bad men or from Súdras. If deeply distressed he might support life by traffic and money lending, but never by service which is styled dog-living.[22] If unable to subsist as a Bráhman, he might adopt the profession of a Kshatriya or Vaisya; but he was to avoid tilling the earth, for the iron-mouthed pieces of wood wounded the earth and the creatures dwelling in it. In like manner he was not to sell flesh-meat, or spirituous liquors, or other articles which are expressly prohibited.[33] A Bráhman was never to indulge in any sensual gratification, nor follow any pursuit which might impede his reading the Veda; but he was to bring his apparel, his discourse, and his frame of mind to a conformity with his age, his occupation, his property, his divine knowledge, and his family. He was not to eat with his wife, nor to look at her while she was eating. He was never to dwell in a city which was governed by a Raja who was a Súdra; nor in one surrounded by men who neglected their duties; nor in one abounding with professed heretics; nor in one swarming with low-born outcastes. He was never to play at dice; nor gain wealth by music, or by any act which pleased the sense.[24]

---

[20] Manu, ix. 188, 189.

[21] Manu, vii. 133—135.

[22] Manu, iv. 1, 6; xi. 194—197; xiii.

[23] Manu, x. 81—89.

4th, Diet of Bráhmans.

As regards diet the precepts of Manu are explicit, although somewhat contradictory. A Bráhman was to carefully avoid all garlic, onions, leeks, and mushrooms; all bad milk; and all rice and bread which had not been first offered to some deity.[25] "Beasts and birds," says Manu, "may be slain by Bráhmans for sacrifice, since Agastya did this of old; and no doubt in the funeral sacrifices by holy men, and in oblations by Bráhmans and Kshatriyas, the flesh of such beasts and birds as might be legally eaten, was presented to the gods. A Bráhman, however, should never eat the flesh of cattle which has not been consecrated by mantras; but should he earnestly desire to taste such meat, he may gratify his fancy by forming the image of some beasts with dough or chickened ghee."[26]

Compromise involved in the laws respecting the diet of the twice-born castes.

The general ordinances laid down by Manu, as regards the diet of the twice-born castes, is characterized throughout by that extraordinary spirit of compromise between opposite institutions and usages, which so largely prevails throughout the code. That milk and vegetables were considered as the staple of Brahmanical food seems to be proved by the prohibition as regards bad milk and particular vegetables, from which all Bráhmans are called upon to abstain. In like manner flesh-meat would appear to be considered as the staple food of other twice-born men, namely, the Kshatriyas and Vaisyas, from the prohibitions as regards particular animals and birds, from which all twice-born men should abstain. This conclusion is not perhaps logically proved, inasmuch as all twice-born men, including Bráhmans as well as Kshatriyas and Vaisyas, are required to abstain from particular flesh and birds. Indeed, in Bengal there are many Bráhmans in the present day, who eat the meat which has been offered to Durgá or Kálí.

---

[24] Manu, iv. 15—84.

[25] Manu, v. 5—10.

[26] Manu, v. 36—42.

Opposition between the milk and vegetable diet of the Bráhmans and the flesh-meat of the Kshatriyas.

But according to the national idea the Bráhman is supposed to live on milk and vegetables, whilst the Kshatriya and Vaisya may eat mutton and goats' flesh; and this idea finds full expression in the precepts of Manu, although the attempt to arrive at a compromise between the conflicting usages renders the language somewhat equivocal.

Repugnance of Manu to flesh-meat.

That flesh-meat was repugnant to Manu is manifest from the condemnation which he pronounces against every one who is connected, however remotely, with the slaughter of an animal, either by consenting to it, or killing the animal, or cutting it up, or selling the flesh, or buying it, or cooking it, or serving it up, or eating it. Even whilst admitting that no sin is committed by eating flesh-meat after it has been[27] offered to the gods and Pitris, Manu declares that the man who abstains from it, will obtain a reward equal to that of a man who has performed a hundred Aswamedhas.[28]

Toleration of the usages of Kshatriyas and Vaisyas.

But still it was only natural that the Brahmanical lawgiver should exhibit some amount of toleration towards the usages of those twice-born men, to whom the Bráhmans chiefly looked for presents and maintenance. Moreover, he had to deal with another difficulty, namely, the old animal sacrifices of the Vedic period, and to defend those sacrifices from the denunciations of the Buddhists. Accordingly, notwithstanding the simple character of the offerings to the gods and Pitris in treating of religious duties, he does permit and even enjoin sacrifices of cattle on certain occasions, and allow twice-born men to eat the flesh-meat which has been thus consecrated.[29] Other texts carry the spirit of toleration still further. Manu declares that there is no sin in lawfully eating flesh-meat, in drinking wine, and in caressing women, as all men are prone to those enjoyments; but he adds that men who refrain from such enjoyments will obtain a signal reward in another life.[30] The simplicity of Manu upon those points is truly charming, and the doctrine is not unknown in western systems of morality. It may be put in the following form. Certain pleasures are lawful, but still they are pleasures; if therefore a man abstain from such pleasures now, he will enjoy other pleasures hereafter. It should however be added that later Brahmanical legislators prohibited altogether the use of flesh-meat, either at entertainments to guests, or at the Sráddhas, or feasts of the dead; on the ground that whilst they were permitted in the earlier ages of mankind, they were forbidden in the present age of Kálí.[31]

---

[27] Manu, v. 11—18; 48—53.

[28] Manu, v. 54.

Abstinence from lawful pleasures to be rewarded in another life.

5th, Scale of punishments for slander.

The scale of punishments in cases of slander furnishes a still more distinct idea of the caste system as conceived in the time of the code. A Kshatriya who slandered a Bráhman was to be fined a hundred panas; for the same crime a Vaisya was to be fined a hundred and fifty or two hundred panas, but a Súdra was to be whipped.[32] On the other hand, if a Bráhman slandered a Kshatriya he was to be fined fifty panas; if he slandered a Vaisya he was to be fined twenty-five panas; but if he slandered a Súdra he was only to be fined twelve panas. If, however, a Súdra insulted any man of the twice-born castes with gross invectives he was to have his tongue slit; if he mentioned the name and caste of the individual with contumely, an iron style ten fingers long was to be made red-hot and thrust into his mouth; and if through pride he dared to instruct a Bráhman respecting his duty, the Raja was to order that hot oil should be poured into his mouth and ear.[33]

---

[29] Manu, v. 26—48.

[30] Manu, v. 56.

[31] See Manu, appendix to the English translation.

Chandálas or outcastes.

In addition to these four castes there were a large number of outcastes, of whom the lowest were called Chandálas. The Chandálas were said to be the sons of a Súdra by a Brahmaní woman;[34] but probably they merely formed the lowest class of the community, and the origin of such hated unions as those indicated were condemned to belong to that class. "Chandálas," says Manu, "must dwell without the town. Their sole wealth must be dogs and asses; their clothes must consist of the mantles of deceased persons; their dishes must be broken pots; and their ornaments must consist of rusty iron. No one who regards his duties must hold any intercourse with them; and they must marry only amongst themselves. By day they may roam about for the purposes of work, and be distinguished by the badges of the Raja; and they must carry out the corpse of any one who dies without kindred. They should always be employed to slay those who are sentenced by the law to be put to death; and they may take the clothes of the slain, their beds, and their ornaments."[35]

---

[32] The pana was a copper weight, or a copper coin, of about 200 grains; and was probably equivalent to the modern piece, or something less than a half-penny. See Princep's *Essays*.

[33] Manu, viii. 266—276.

[34] Manu, x. 12, 29, 30.

It is scarcely necessary to add, that subsequent to the time of Manu the number of castes became largely increased, and every hereditary calling became regarded as a separate caste. But still every Hindú is regarded as belonging to one or other of the four great castes; or else to one of those dubious classes of the community, which has caste laws of its own, although they cannot be referred to either of the four great castes which are specified by Manu.

---

[35] Manu. x. 51—58.

CHAPTER XI.

THE FOUR STAGES OF LIFE.

Two objects of the code of Manu already unfolded.

Two of the main objects which the compilers of the Brahmanical code appear to have had in view have now been unfolded, namely :—

1st, The establishment of a national ritual.

1st, The authoritative promulgation of a ritual which should include the polytheistic worship of the Vedic deities, and at the same time superadd the dogma of rewards and punishments in association with the monotheistic worship of the god Brahma.

2nd, The establishment of the caste system.

2nd, To enforce a strict code of caste laws, which should for ever separate the twice-born castes from the Súdras, whilst establishing the ascendancy of the Brahmanical hierarchy over the whole.

Question of four stages in the life of individuals treated in the present chapter.

A third and equally important measure may now be taken into consideration; namely, the grand effort to map out the life of every man of the twice-born castes into four distinct periods, corresponding to four distinct phases of human existence; that of a student, a householder, a hermit, and a devotee. The object of this extraordinary division of individual existence seems to have been to bring every action of civil and family life into the area of religious duty. That such an arbitrary disposition of the individual should be universally accepted could scarcely be expected. The student may be eager to throw off the restrictions of pupilage, and to undertake the duties of a husband and a father; but the householder, as he advances in years, is not always prepared to sacrifice his domestic happiness for the sake of becoming a hermit or a devotee. Still the system of the four orders, as it is called, is universally recognized by the Hindús; and as the pious householder finds old age creeping upon him, he devotes more and more time and thought to his religious duties, with the view of approximating his life as far as possible with that of a devotee; and with the hope that in so doing he may expiate his sins by penances and good works, and obtain after death a happier existence in the next state of being.

Four stages or orders still recognized but not accepted.

In other words, the ideal of Brahmanical life is always before the Hindú, and indeed is pleasing to his imagination. As a student the Bráhman must acquire a perfect knowledge of his duties; as a householder he must practise all those duties in the character of a married man and the father of a household; as a hermit he must mortify his body by penances and religious austerities; and as a devotee he must pass his remaining years in the contemplation of that Divine Essence in which he hopes to be ultimately absorbed, or of that Divine Spirit with whom he hopes ultimately to dwell.

Ideal of Brahmanical life.

The four orders.

The names of these four orders are as follows:—

1st, The Brahmachári, or student in the Veda.

2nd, The Grihastha, or married man and householder.

3rd, The Vánaprastha, or hermit.

4th, Sannyásí, or devotee.

1. THE BRAHMACHÁRI, or student.

The life of a Brahmachári commences from the day of investiture with the thread; but prior to that

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

ceremony certain rites are ordained, which are performed without the concurrence or knowledge of the child, and which are devoid of all historical significance. These rites consist in the purification of the babe, the giving it a name, the feeding it with rice in the sixth month from its birth, and the shaving of the head.[1] But the investiture with the thread is of the utmost importance in the life of the twice-born. The thread is the symbol which distinguishes the twice-born man from the Sudra; and the investiture is a second birth, which introduces the twice-born youth to a religious life, and sanctifies him for the study of the Veda.

Rites prior to the investiture with the thread.

Significance of the thread.

As regards the ceremony itself, a pleasing illustration is to be found in the story of the childhood of Ráma; but some important additional data are furnished by the code of Manu. The thread of the Bráhman is made of cotton, and is put over the head in three strings. The thread of the Kshatriya is made of hemp; but in more ancient times it seems to have been made of a strip of antelope's skin.[2] The thread of the Vaisya is made of wool. Considerable latitude is allowed as regards the age at which the ceremony should take place. The investiture ought to be carried out in the eighth year of a Bráhman, the eleventh year of a Kshatriya, and the twelfth year of a Vaisya. It might, however, be performed as early as the fifth year of a Bráhman,

Details.

Nature of the thread of the three twice-born castes.

Age of investiture.

---

[1] Manu, ii. 27—35.

[2] See the narrative of the investiture of Ráma, *ante*, Part iv. chap. iii. There are several allusions to the antelope, both in the Epics and in Manu, which seem to indicate that it was regarded as a sacred animal by the Vedic Aryans. It was not only frequently sacrificed to Vedic deities, but Manu states that the land on which the black antelope grazes is held fit for sacrifice; and thus he seems to lay down a distinction between the land of the Aryans and the land of Mlechhas. Manu, ii. 23.

the sixth year of a Kshatriya, and the eighth year of a Vaisya. But on no account was it to be delayed beyond the sixteenth year of Bráhmans, the twenty-second year of Kshatriyas, or the twenty-fourth year of Vaisyas. The reason for this differential scale probably lay in the fact that it was considered more incumbent on the young Bráhman to commence the study of the Veda at an early age than for the Kshatriya or Vaisya. If a twice-born youth passed the allotted age without investiture he was virtually excommunicated, and became an out-caste. He was degraded from the Gáyatrí; in other words, he was not permitted to offer up that prayer, which a twice-born man was alone permitted to utter. He was in fact treated as an impure man with whom no Bráhman would form a connection.[3]

Ceremony of begging for alms.

The most significant point in Manu's account of the investiture with the sacred thread is the ceremony of begging for alms.[4] On the day of investiture, the youth was to take his staff, and stand opposite to the Sun; this last rite being perhaps a relic of the ancient Sun worship. The youth was next to walk round the fire and beg for alms; and this ceremony is still performed by twice-born boys of every degree, by the son of a Raja as well as by the son of a Vaisya. In the case of a Bráhman youth, this begging for alms is not confined to the day of investiture, but may be carried on day by day throughout the whole period of student life; and in this manner the Brahmachári is supposed to maintain both himself and his religious preceptor. But in the case of the Kshatriya or the Vaisya, the ceremony of begging is merely formal, and is confined to the day of investiture. At the present time the ceremony is performed precisely as it is described in the story of the investiture of Ráma and his brethren. The day is one of festivity. All the friends and relations gather together to witness the ceremony; and one and all are generally moved by that deep sympathy with childhood which is a special characteristic of the Hindú. The mother, the sisters, and the aunts are all anxious that the young neophyte should acquit himself with grace and dignity; and they all in turn give alms in food according to the simple ritual. Meantime humble friends and dependents are also admitted, and give their dole to the youthful mendicant as a mark of respect to the whole family and an honour to themselves.

---

[3] Manu, ii. 36—40. Other details are added concerning the girdle, staff, and mantle of men of the three twice-born castes; but they are of no historical significance, and are mere matters of ceremonial law.

[4] Manu, ii. 48—51.

Origin of the ceremony.

The origin of this strange rite is somewhat obscure. The idea especially of a son of a Raja collecting alms of food finds no expression in the Rig-Veda, and seems to have originated in the teachings of Buddha; but whether it is a relic of Brahmanism or Buddhism is a question which can be best decided after a consideration of the state of the Hindú world at the advent of Buddha, which will find a place in the next succeeding volume.

Purification of daughters by marriage, instead of by the thread.

The only point remaining for consideration is the purification of daughters. Manu directs that the same ceremonies should be performed for girls as are ordained for sons, but without either the utterance of sacred mantras, or the investiture with the sacred thread. Indeed, the nuptial ceremony in the case of girls is considered as taking the place of the investiture of the thread, and is the commencement of the religious life of the female.[5]

Rules for the conduct of a Brahmachári after investiture. Their object.

The rules for the conduct of a Brahmachári after investiture may now be taken under consideration. The main object of these rules was to discipline every youth of the twice-born castes in the habitual discharge of every religious observance; and above all, to bring his reason under the perfect control of a faith which admits of no dispute, and which hears and obeys without a question or a murmur. This process is carried on during a period when the affections are the strongest and the mind the most impressible; and if at the same time the passions are kept under strict control by sacred study, by abstinence from all self-indulgence, as well as by daily worship of the gods and daily service rendered towards his preceptor, the student is soon imbued with a deep religious enthusiasm, and regards his preceptor with a reverential regard far exceeding that which pertains to any other form of religious or moral training.

Result.

No absolute term of years is fixed for the discipline of student life. According to the code, it may be extended over thirty-six years, or eighteen years, or nine years, or until the student perfectly understands the Veda.[6] At the same time rules are laid down for those who are desirous of continuing the religious life of a Brahmachári throughout the whole term of existence. If the preceptor died first, the student for life was to attend upon his son, or upon his widow, or upon one of his paternal kinsmen, paying in either case the same respect which he had paid to his deceased master. Should, however, neither

---

[5] Manu, ii. 66, 67.

[6] Manu, iii. 1.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

a son, nor the widow, nor a deceased kinsman be alive, the student was to take the place of the preceptor, and occupy his station, and maintain the sacred fires which he had consecrated.[7] The result of these rules is that even in the present day there are Bráhman students, or disciples, who devote their whole lives to sacred study and religious observances in the hermitage of an honoured and loved preceptor.

Duties of a Brahmachári in connection with religion.

The duties of the Brahmachári which are more immediately connected with religion, have been already described in the chapter devoted to the religion of the Bráhmans.[8] It consists in the reverent reading of the Veda in the attitude of worship, and the daily worship of the gods; and to this must be added the conduct of a Brahmachári towards his preceptor, and the control which he was constantly to maintain over his passions. The reverential study of the Veda was to begin and end each day with the three suppressions of the breath, and the utterance of the three mystic letters known as AUM, the three mystic words known as the Vyáhritis, and the three mystic measures known as the Gáyatrí; and it was also to begin and end with the ceremony of clasping the feet of the preceptor as a token of worship. Equal in importance to the study of the Veda was the daily worship of the gods at morning, noon, and night. The Brahmachári was first to purify himself with water, and then to repeat the Gáyatrí, with all his organs under control, and his attention fixed on the Supreme Being. This act of worship was to be especially performed at sun-rise and sunset; and should the sun rise or set while the stu-

Reverent study of the Veda.

Worship of the gods.

---

[7] Manu, ii. 243, 244, 247, 249.

[8] See *ante*, Chap. vii.

dent was asleep, he was to fast and repeat the Gáyatrí throughout an entire day. In like manner, day by day, the Brahmachari was to bathe and purify himself, and then to present the appointed offerings to the Devatas, the Rishis, and the Pitris; and to worship the images of the deities, and bring wood for the maintenance of the sacred fire. He was also to bring all that was required by his preceptor for the performance of religious rites, namely, pots of water, flowers, fresh earth, and the sacred kusa grass.[9]

Service to a preceptor.

Three classes of Brahmans.

As regards preceptors, it should be remarked that Manu lays down three different classes of Bráhmans, namely, the Achárya, the Upádhyá, and the Ritwij.[10]

1st, The Achárya, or Guru.

The Achárya is pre-eminently the spiritual preceptor of the young Bráhman. He is, or should be, the perfect master of the whole Veda. It is he who invests the Brahmachári with the sacrificial thread, and then imparts to him a knowledge of the four Vedas, with their respective Bráhmanas, or sacrificial codes, and Upanishads, or metaphysical teachings. It is this venerated preceptor who should be diligently served by his disciple; and who should indeed be supported by the daily mendicancy of the youthful Bráhman, who lives beneath his roof, and attends him as an affectionate and obedient pupil.

2nd, The Upádhyá, or schoolmaster.

The Upádhyá is a kind of sub-lecturer, or schoolmaster, who is said to instruct his pupils as a means of livelihood, and who teaches the six Vedángas, which are as follows:—

1st, Sikshá, or pronunciation.
2nd, Chandas, or metre.

---

[9] Manu, ii. 70 -87, 176; 182.

[10] Manu, ii. 140—143.

3rd, Vyákarana, or grammar.
4th, Nirukta, or explanation of words.
5th, Jyotisha, or astronomy.
6th, Kalpa, or ceremonial.[11]

3rd, The Ritwij, or sacrificer.

The Ritwij is the sacrificer, or priest properly so called, who receives a stipend for preparing the holy fire and conducting sacrifices. In the more elaborate ritual of an earlier period, the priests who appear to have served in the great sacrificial sessions, were divided into different classes according to their respective capacities. This classification, however, is merely illustrative of the ancient ritual of the Bráhmanas, and is otherwise devoid of all historical significance.

Respect due from a Brahmachári to his preceptor.

The student was bound on all occasions to show respect to his preceptor, and to salute him first at every meeting, whether the teacher was a Bráhman or otherwise, and whether the instruction received was popular, ceremonial, or sacred.[12] This law has left a lasting impress upon the national mind; and all who have ever imparted instruction to youthful Hindús will be able to testify to their docility and good manners, and to their special anxiety to give no offence. Manu, with a singular knowledge of human nature, has also ordained that the student is never to imitate the gait, speech, or manner of his preceptor. Should the student hear any censorious discourse respecting his preceptor, he was either to cover his ears, or to move to another place. Should he venture to censure his preceptor, however justly, he would be born again as an ass; should he defame his preceptor falsely he would be born a dog; should he take the goods of his preceptor without leave he would be born a small worm; should he envy the merit of his preceptor he would be born an insect or reptile.[13]

---

[11] For a learned account of the six Vedángas, see Professor Max Müller's History of Sanskrit Literature, page 109 *et seq.*

[12] Manu, ii. 117.

Maintenance of a strict control over the passions.

The remaining important point in the training of the Brahmachári was the maintenance of a strict control over the passions. "A wise man," says Manu, "will restrain his organs as a charioteer restrains restless horses. Desire is not satisfied by enjoyment any more than the sacrificial fire is appeased by ghee, but rather will blaze more vehemently. The man who resigns all the pleasures of sense is better than the man who enjoys them all. The man who devotes himself to sensual gratifications can never procure happiness, either by the Vedas, or by alms, or by sacrifices, or by rigid observances, or by pious austerities; for if a single organ obtain the mastery, his knowledge of divine things passes away, as water flows away through a single hole in a leathern bottle."[14] Under these general rules the Brahmachári is strictly enjoined to abstain from honey, flesh-meat, perfumes, chaplets of flowers, gaming, music, dancing, and from wantonly looking upon women.[15] He must, however, salute the wives of his preceptor, but he must render them no personal service; and he must never sit in a sequestered place, even with his nearest female relatives, "lest desire should snatch wisdom from the wise."[16]

Brahmanical disquisition on earthly happiness.

In connection, however, with these strict rules, there is a curious disquisition in the Brahmanical code upon earthly happiness, which terminates in the material conclusion that the chief temporal good consists in the union of virtue, wealth, and lawful pleasure.[17] Perhaps a higher tone of moral sentiment might have been expected from a divine lawgiver; but whatever may be the ostensible idea of the day, the bulk of mankind appear to be still actuated by the principle laid down by the old Hindú legislator.

---

[13] Manu, ii. 194—201.

[14] Manu, ii. 88, 94, 96, 97, 99.

[15] Manu, ii. 177—179.

[16] Manu, ii. 210—215.

II. The GRIHASTHA, or householder.

When a twice-born had passed through the order of Brahmachári, or religious student, he entered that of a Grihastha, or married man and householder. Here it should be remarked that marriage is an obligation in the eyes of the Hindú lawgiver which he never fails to enforce. Even in the case of Bráhmans he seems to consider it as incumbent upon every man to marry a wife, as it is to study the Veda or worship the gods; for he specifies three debts that all men are bound to satisfy, namely, that to the Rishis by the study of the Veda, that to the gods by the offering of sacrifices, and that to the Pitris, or ancestors, by begetting a son.[18] This obligation of begetting a son originated in the ancient belief, which finds expression both in Hindú and Greek mythology, that after the death of a father the services of a son were necessary to offer water and cakes to the ghost of the deceased parent. Having thus established marriage as an institution by the strongest of all religious obligations, namely, the happiness of parents in a future state, the Hindú

Obligation to marry incumbent upon all men.

Necessity for a son to offer the funeral cakes to a deceased father.

Marriage regulations for producing a healthy progeny.

---

[17] Manu, ii. 224.

[18] Manu, iv. 257. In another text, however, reference is made to thousands of Bráhmans who have avoided all sensuality, and have consequently left no families. Manu, ii. 249; v. 159. From this it would appear that the Bráhmans represented some of the more famous Buddhist teachers as being Bráhman sages, in the same way that they represented the old Vedic Rishis as belonging to their order.

lawgiver lays down certain rules for insuring a strong and healthy offspring to every marriage union. He indicates with tolerable clearness the age at which a young man should marry; the degrees of relationship in which a man and woman should not marry; the families from which a man ought not to take a wife; and even the damsel whose moral or physical defects might prevent her from finding favour in the eyes of a husband. He then proceeds to describe the model damsel whom a young man should marry; and winds up with a very brief notice of the marriage ceremony.

Four classes of precepts.

These laws and precepts may be considered under four different heads; and will be found to illustrate the national ideas of marriage which still prevail among the Hindús. These four heads are as follows:—

1st, Ceremonies at the close of student-life.
2nd, Prohibited marriages.
3rd, Qualified damsels.
4th, Marriage ceremonies.

1st, Ceremonies connected with the close of student-life.

The ceremonies connected with the return of a Brahmachári to his father's house would seem to indicate that the Hindú lawgiver was in no way cognizant of infant marriages as far as the bridegroom was concerned. No mention is made of early betrothals, and every man of the twice-born castes is directed to marry at the termination of his life as a student.

Relative age of bridegroom and bride.

Manu says:—"A man aged thirty may marry a girl of twelve; a man aged twenty-four may marry a girl of eight; but if his duties would be otherwise impeded let him marry immediately."[19]

---

[19] Manu, ix. 94.

It is, moreover, easy to infer from the regulations as regards the conduct of a Brahmachári towards the wife of his preceptor, and from the specified periods of student-life, that twice-born men could rarely have been married before they had attained a full marriageable age. Under such circumstances the return of the Brahmachári to his father's house involved a family festivity. The studies of the neophyte had been brought to a conclusion. The sweets of married life were all before him. Manu, accordingly, enjoins that the student should be praised by his preceptor, and honourably welcomed by his father. That he should be seated on a couch and decked with flowers as the hero of the occasion. Above all, that he should be presented with a cow.[20] Now, the possession of a cow by a Hindú in a rural village is a sign of comparative affluence, whilst the animal itself is worshipped and reverenced as a deity. It furnishes the primitive luxuries, the milk, the butter, and the curds, which are so grateful to the Hindús; and it is the living representative of the prolific earth-goddess, the type of the beautiful Lakshmí, who is the wife of Vishnu and the goddess of all prosperity. When, therefore, a young man possessed a cow, it was only natural that he should dream of possessing a bride.

Festivities associated with the return of a bridegroom to his father's house.

Present of a cow.

As regards prohibited marriages, Manu directed that a man should not marry a wife whose family name indicated that she had descended from the same family stem as his father or mother, or who was in the sixth degree of relationship.[21] Again, a twice-born man was never to take a wife from a

2nd. Prohibited marriages.

Degrees.

Unsuitable families.

---

[20] Manu, iii. 3, 4.

[21] Manu, iii. 5.

family which had omitted to fulfil its religious duties, or had produced no sons, or in which the Veda had not been read, or which was distinguished by thick hair on the body, or which was subject to consumption, indigestion, epilepsy, leprosy, or elephantiasis. Here it should be remarked that Manu distinctly classifies the non-observance of religious duty, and neglect of the Veda, with physical defects, such as leprosy and elephantiasis. Thus, whilst the young student, fresh from the instructions and discipline imparted by his preceptor, was effectually restrained from marrying a wife out of an irreligious family, a strong pressure was placed upon heretics and unbelievers to observe their religious duties and devote some time to the reading of the Veda, lest their daughters should remain unmarried. Some of the laws as regards constitutional debility are amusing from their frank simplicity. To refrain from marrying a damsel because her father had a weak digestion, might be a prudent measure; but the law would bear rather hardly upon the weaker sex, inasmuch as a damsel could scarcely refuse to be given to a husband, whatever might be the state of his digestive organs. The restriction against marrying a girl because her family was distinguished by thick hair on the body, seems somewhat inexplicable. It probably originated in the current Oriental idea that thick hair on the body denoted strong passions; and such tendencies on the part of women are always regarded by Hindús with peculiar aversion, and are often denounced by Native moralists with a bitterness which is scarcely fair.

Non-observance of religious duty classified with physical defects.

Unsuitable damsels.

Manu's list of damsels whom a man is forbidden to marry, is equally curious. He says:—"A twice-born man should not marry a girl with red hair, nor one with a deformed limb, nor one troubled with habitual sickness, nor one without hair, nor one with too much hair, nor one who talks too much, nor one with inflamed eyes. Neither should he marry a girl with the name of a constellation, or a tree, or a river, or a barbarous nation, or a mountain, or a winged creature, or a snake, or a slave, or with any name which raises an image of terror. Neither should he marry a girl who has no brother, lest her father should take her first-born son as his own to offer the funeral cakes; nor one whose father is not well known, lest an illicit marriage should already have been contracted between the girl and another man."[22] The last two laws seem to call for some explanation. It was ruled that every man ought to have a son, who should perform the funeral rites of his father, and present his spirit on stated occasions with cakes and libations. If a man had no son, but only a daughter, he might adopt the first-born son of his daughter, and thus perchance leave his daughter's husband childless. Accordingly a twice-born man was prohibited from marrying a girl who had no brothers, lest after becoming a father he should find himself virtually childless. The remaining law is significant in another direction. The sentiment with regard to female purity is very strong amongst the Hindús. A damsel who has been once betrothed is regarded as ineligible for marriage to another, even if no consummation has taken place. Accordingly Manu directs that a twice-born man should never marry a damsel whose father was not well known, lest an illicit marriage should have been previously contracted.

---

[22] Manu, iii. 8, 9.

3rd, Qualified damsels.

As regards damsels who are qualified to become the wives of twice-born men, Manu lays down the following precepts:—"A man of the three twice-born castes should choose a girl for his wife whose form is without defect, who has an agreeable name, who walks gracefully like a young elephant, who has a moderate quantity of hair, whose teeth are of a moderate size, and whose body is exquisitely soft."[23] This description of a qualified Hindú female is sufficiently general without being too particular; but like the list of prohibited families and prohibited damsels, it is strangely wanting in that sentiment which prevails in the traditions of the Kshatriyas. Moreover, there is an opposition between the Kshatriyas ideal and the Brahmanical ideal, which is worth noting. The conception which appears to have floated before the fancy of a Kshatriya bard was that of a fair or golden complexioned nymph, graceful and retiring, delicate and slender-waisted. The later Puránic bards were more materialistic and sensuous, and their ideal was that of a young damsel who walked, as Manu says, like a young elephant, and who was moreover endowed with all the exuberant charms of maturer years. In other words, the Kshatriyas loved fair and graceful women, and sought to be loved in return, after the manner of young and chivalrous warriors; whilst the later Bráhmans were as devoid of sentiment as monks shut out from the world by the bars of their cells, and indulged in dreams of voluptuous forms that merely pleased the senses and provoked desire.

Opposition between the Kshatriya and Brahman ideal of female beauty.

---

[23] Manu, iii. 10.

4th, Marriage ceremonies.

The marriage ceremonies of the Hindús are but very briefly indicated by Manu, probably because they were considered to be so well known as to render details unnecessary. It is simply ordained that when the bridegroom is of the same caste as the bride he should take her hand before the altar.[24] It may, however, be as well to indicate in the present place the leading rites in the marriage ceremony, such as are performed in the present day, and which appear to have been handed down from time immemorial. These rites are eleven in number, namely :—

Eleven leading rites.

Procession.

1st, The procession of the bridegroom to the house of the father of the bride.

Hospitality.

2nd, The hospitable reception of the bridegroom.

Gift of bride.

3rd, The gift of the bride by her father to the bridegroom.

The binding.

4th, The binding together of the hands of the bride and bridegroom with kusa grass.

Gift to the bride.

5th, The gift of a waistcloth and mantle by the bridegroom to the bride.

The tying.

6th, The tying together of the skirts of the mantles of the bride and bridegroom.

Oblations to Agni.

7th, The oblations of the bridegroom to the god Agni or "Fire," and the dropping of the rice on the fire by the bride.

The hand.

8th, The hand of the bride solemnly taken by the bridegroom in marriage.

The steps.

9th, The steps of the bride on a stone and muller, the domestic implement for grinding spices and condiments.

Walk round the fire.

10th, The walk of the bride round the nuptial fire.

---

[24] Manu, iii. 43.

The seven final steps.

11th, The seven steps in seven circles, which the bride is directed to take by the bridegroom; the seventh step rendering the marriage complete and irrevocable.

Domestic life of the Grihastha.

The precepts which refer to the domestic life of the Grihastha, or householder, are characterized by the same minuteness of detail as those which refer to his marriage duties and religious observances. During the most responsible period in the life of man, when he is discharging all the onerous obligations of a husband, a father, and the master of a household, he is virtually deprived of all independence, and compelled to regulate his daily life by a code of authoritative law, which brings almost every one of his acts within the sphere either of merits or demerits, to be punished or rewarded hereafter according to the balance of the sum total of the one over the sum total of the other. These ordinances might be considered under the two heads of means of livelihood and moral conduct; but the former have already been indicated in the preceding chapter on the four castes, whilst the moral rules find general expression in the Brahmanical system. It may, however, be remarked that the precepts respecting means of livelihood refer, not so much to the twice-born castes generally, as to the Bráhmans alone. Indeed, the occupations of the two other twice-born castes were sufficiently known and acknowledged. The Kshatriyas were the rulers and defenders of the community. As soldiers they were maintained by the state, and also were occasionally in a position to acquire lands and riches by foreign conquest. The Vaisyas, again, maintained themselves by merchandise; and it will be seen hereafter, in dealing with

Means of livelihood and moral conduct.

Respective occupations of the three twice-born castes.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

the Buddhist period, that such merchants became an important part of the community, and carried their goods from city to city in hundreds of waggons. But the Bráhmans had no ostensible calling save their religious duties as preceptors and priests; and Manu endeavoured to place them as far as possible upon an independent footing, by setting forth the duty of Kshatriyas and Vaisyas to present alms and gifts to the Bráhmans, not merely as a religious obligation, but as a privilege only accorded to worthy and virtuous men. The compilers of the code, however, appear to have been fearful lest the Bráhmans should sink to the position of sordid mendicants; and specially enjoined that the Bráhman should avoid the habit of begging, since by taking many gifts the divine light soon fades away from the soul.[25]

Idea that the Bráhmans should be maintained by the public.

Significance as regards the gifts to be accepted by Bráhmans.

III. The VÁNAPRASTHA, or hermit.

The third and fourth orders, of Vánaprastha and Sannyásí, or hermit and devotee, are frequently recognized in the Epics, and express the very essence of Brahmanism. These two orders, although apparently similar as regards external life, present some striking points of difference as regards internal life, with reference to the objects to be respectively gained by each mode of living. Thus the Vánaprastha, or hermit, devoted his time to religious austerities with the view of mortifying his passions. The Sannyásí, or devotee, is supposed, on the other hand, to have overcome all, the desires of the flesh; and therefore devoted the remainder of his days to religious contemplation, with the view of attaining final beatitude. The latter object was indeed kept

Distinction between the Vánaprastha and Sannyási.

---

[25] Manu, iv. 186.

in view by men belonging to either order; but was more immediately the aim of the Sannyásí. The duties of these two orders may now be indicated as follows.

Manu says:—

Religious austerities of the Vánaprastha, or hermit.

"When the twice-born man has remained in the order of Grihastha, or householder, until his muscles become flaccid, and his hair grey, and he sees a child of his child, let him abandon his household and repair to the forest, and dwell there in the order of Vánaprastha, or hermit. He should be accompanied by his wife, if she choose to attend him, but otherwise he should commit her to the care of his sons. He should take with him the consecrated fire, and all the domestic implements for making oblations to the fire, and there dwell in the forest, with perfect control over all his organs; and here day by day he should perform the five sacraments with many sorts of pure food, such as holy sages used to eat, with green herbs, roots, and fruit. He should wear a black antelope's hide, or a vesture of bark, and bathe morning and evening; and he should suffer his nails, and the hair of his head and beard, to grow continually. He should make offerings from such food as he himself may eat, and give alms to the utmost of his power; and he should honour all those who visit his hermitage with presents of water, roots, and fruit. He should be constantly engaged in reading the Veda; he should be patient in all extremities; he should be universally benevolent, and entertain a tender affection for all living creatures; his mind should be ever intent on the Supreme Being; and he should be a perpetual giver of gifts, but not a receiver.[26] He should slide backwards and forwards on the ground; or stand a whole day on tip-toe; or continue in motion by rising and sitting alternately; but every day at sunrise, at noon, and at sunset he should go to the waters and bathe. In the hot season he should sit exposed to five fires, namely, four blazing around him, whilst the sun is burning above him; in the rainy season he should stand uncovered without even a mantle, while the clouds pour down their heaviest showers; in the cold season he should wear damp vesture. He should increase the austerity of his devotion by degrees, until by enduring harsher and harsher mortifications he has dried up his bodily frame."[27]

---

[26] Manu, vi. 1—8. Vishnu Purána, iii. 9.

As regards the life to be pursued by a Sannyásí, Manu lays down the following direction:—

IV. The Sannyásí, or devotee.

"When a Bráhman has thus lived in the forest during the third portion of his life as a Vánaprastha, he should for the fourth portion of it become a Sannyásí, and abandon all sensual affections, and repose wholly in the Supreme Spirit. When a Bráhman has reposited in his mind the sacrificial fires, he may proceed direct from the second order, or that of Grihastha, or even from the first order, or that of Brahmachári, to the fourth order, or that of Sannyásí. The glory of that Bráhman who passes from the order of Grihastha to that of Sannyásí illuminates the higher worlds. He should take an earthen water-pot, dwell at the roots of large trees, wear coarse vesture, abide in total solitude, and exhibit a perfect equanimity towards all creatures. He should wish neither for death nor for life; but expect his appointed time, as a hired servant expects his wages. He should look down as he advances his foot, lest he should touch anything impure. He should drink water that has been purified by straining through a cloth, lest he hurt an insect. He should, if he speaks at all, utter words that are purified by truth. He should by all means keep his heart pure. He should bear a reproachful speech with patience, and speak reproachfully to no man; and he should never utter a word relating to vain illusory things. He should delight in meditating on the Supreme Spirit, and sit fixed in such meditation, without needing anything earthly, with-

Life of religious contemplation to obtain final beatitude.

---

[27] Manu, vi. 22—32. Vishnu Purána, iii. 9.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

out one sensual desire, and without any companion but his own soul."[28]

Means of subsistence.

"The Bráhman who has become a Sannyásí should at no time gain his subsistence by explaining omens and prodigies; nor by skill in astrology and palmistry; nor by casuistry and expositions of holy texts. He should not go near a house which is frequented by Vánaprasthas, or Bráhmans, or birds, or dogs, or other beggars. The vessels on which he should receive food are a gourd, a wooden bowl, an earthen dish, or a basket made of reeds. He should only ask for food once a day, and that should be in the evening, when the smoke of the kitchen fires has ceased, when the pestle lies motionless, when the burning charcoal is extinguished, when people have eaten, and when dishes are removed. If he fails to obtain food he should not be sorrowful; if he succeed in obtaining it he should not be glad. He should only care to obtain a sufficiency to support life, and he should not be anxious about his utensils. He should not habituate himself to eat much at a time; for if a Sannyásí habituates himself to eat much, he becomes inclined to sensual gratification.[29]

Subjects of reflection.

"A Sannyásí should reflect on the transmigrations of men which are caused by their sinful deeds; on their downfall into a region of darkness, and their torments in the mansions of Yama; on their separation from those whom they love, and their union with those whom they hate; on their strength overpowered by old age, and their bodies racked with disease; on their agonizing departure from this corporeal frame, and their formation again in the womb; on the misery attached to embodied spirits from a violation of their duties, and the imperishable bliss which attaches to embodied spirits who have abundantly performed every duty.[30]

The Supreme Spirit.

"A Sannyásí should also reflect with all the powers of his mind on the subtle indivisible essence of the Supreme Spirit, and its complete existence in all beings, whether extremely high or extremely low.[31]

---

[28] Manu, vi. 22—31.

[29] Manu, vi. 32—49.

[30] Manu, vi. 61—64.

[31] Manu, vi. 65.

Inferiority of material existence.

"The body is a mansion, with bone for its rafters and beams; with nerves and tendons for cords; with muscles and blood for mortar; with skin for its outward covering; and filled with no sweet perfumes, but loaded with refuse. It is a mansion infested by age and by sorrow; the seat of diseases; harassed with pains, haunted with the quality of darkness, and incapable of standing long. Such a mansion of the vital soul should always be quitted with cheerfulness by its occupier.[32]

Resemblance between the Sannyásis and the Buddhist devotees.

It will now be seen from the foregoing precepts that in all essentials the life of the Sannyásí resembled that of the Buddhist priest; and hence it may be inferred, that whilst the compilers of the code of Manu were consistent in their denunciations against atheism and heresy, they exhibited a toleration, very much resembling that which was displayed by the Roman Catholic Church, towards all fanatics and enthusiasts, and utilized them for the maintenance of the supremacy of Brahmanism. This spirit of inclusion was doubtless one of the causes of the success which attended the rise of the Brahmanical hierarchy. Whilst the Bráhmans represented the Rishis of the old Vedic times as belonging to their own order, they held out the hand of religious fellowship to those devotees, who would otherwise have sought for rest under the shadow of Buddhistic heresy.

Spirit of inclusion displayed by the Brahmanical hierarchy.

Ideal of Hindú life may have been partially derived from Buddhism, but not from the Vedic worship.

Such, then, was the ideal of Hindú life as understood by the ancient Bráhmans. How far it was modified by Buddhism, or associated with Buddhism, is a difficult question, which must be reserved for investigation in the next volume. One conclusion seems to be certain, that this Brahmanical ideal was

---

[32] Manu, vi. 76, 77.

Originated in a belief in a future state.

not that of the Vedic Aryans, who indulged in healthy but material aspirations for a long life of physical enjoyment.[33] It was rather an ideal which originated in an elaborate belief of a future existence of the soul after the death of the body, combined with the dogma that happiness hereafter depended upon a close adherence in the present life to the arbitrary dictates of ceremonial and conventional law, and a useless concentration of the intellectual energies in contemplating mere metaphysical abstractions. In the old patriarchal time of the Vedic Aryans, men appear to have led active lives to the very last; to have taken young wives in their old age, and gathered in their harvests, and bargained their cattle and merchandise, and fought against their enemies, and feasted and revelled, until perchance they drifted into dotage and sank into the inevitable tomb, to enter upon a dreary existence as ghosts or shades. But under the priestly domination of the Bráhmans, advancing age was not only regarded as a sign of decay, but as a sharp intimation that the individual was about to enter upon an existence in which he would be rewarded or punished according to the sum of his good and evil deeds in this life; and that the individual must peremptorily prepare for that future existence by turning his back upon all the pleasures of the world, and by contemplating that Supreme Spirit to whom he was about to return. These two conflicting ideas still find expression in modern humanity; and the

Expression of Vedic and Brahmanic ideas of life in modern humanity.

---

[33] There are several allusions in the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana to Rajas who have spent their old age in contemplation and austerities; but the incidents are so foreign to the main spirit of Vedic tradition, as well as to the aspirations expressed in the hymns of the Rig-Veda, that they may be regarded as mythical interpolations of a comparatively recent date.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

great problem of old age appears to be how to combine the two. Each one separately considered seems to involve a departure from true wisdom; an attempt to escape from the responsibilities of existence. The man who continues to devote his old age exclusively to the pursuits of this world, seems to ignore those religious duties which are associated with a belief in the immortality of the soul; and the man who devotes his old age exclusively to religious retirement and contemplation, seems in like manner to ignore those moral duties which appertain to the father and the citizen.

CHAPTER XII.

HINDÚ WOMEN.

Condition of Hindú women in Vedic and Brahmanic times.

THE social condition of Hindú men, as members of a caste system and masters of households, has now been brought under consideration; but an important branch of inquiry yet remains for investigation, namely, the condition of Hindú women in Vedic and Brahmanic times.

Marriage relations in the Vedic period.

In the previous chapter, which describes eight kinds of marriage, the circumstances under which marriage relations were formed in the Vedic period were brought under review; and it was seen that damsels were purchased, or won by feats of arms, or carried away captive after a victory; or a union, more or less temporary, was occasionally brought about in the old idyllic fashion, without any rite or ceremony whatever. But as far as can be gathered from the Kshatriya traditions preserved in the Epics, the two leading institutions in Vedic times were Polyandry, or the marriage of one woman to all the brothers of a family, and the Swayamvara, or choice of a husband on the part of the maiden.

Compensation to the female in the case of irregular unions.

The social condition of women who have been purchased, or won by feats of arms, or carried away captive, is a question which may be safely left to the imagination of those who are familiar with the peculiar conditions of the feminine mind. It may be remarked that in general there is a latent power of adaptation to circumstances in human nature, which would speedily reconcile the female slave and captive to a change of condition; especially if the damsel found that she had really gained the affections of her new lord and master. Moreover, in a lawless age polygamy is virtually a protection to the damsel, who has been deprived of her natural protectors by the chances of war or death of kinsmen; and the services she might render in a patriarchal household, would in a great measure neutralize the jealous hatred with which she would otherwise have been regarded by the legitimate wife and mistress of a family. Unless, however, polygamy is an established institution, maintained by the religious dogma that every man should be the father of a son, an amount of feminine influence is generally exercised by the legitimate wife, which is sufficient to curb the irregular desires of a discontented husband.[1] Indeed,

Position of a damsel in a polygamous household.

Superior authority of the legitimate wife.

---

[1] An ancient legend is preserved in the Vishnu Purána, which treats of a submissive husband as an exceptional case occurring in a polygamous age, but at the same time sufficiently illustrates the moral strength of women. As it is given as a quotation from an ancient ballad, it may possibly be referred to the Vedic age. It may be reproduced in the following form:—

"There was a certain Raja, named Jyámagha, and he was the husband of Saivyá. And Jyámagha was more submissive to his wife than any man who has ever been born, or whoever will be born; for Saivyá was barren, but her husband was sore afraid of her, and would not take another woman to be his wife. And it came to pass that Jyamagha went out to fight his enemy; and he routed him, and drove him from the field of battle. And the daughter of the enemy was very beautiful, and she was left alone in the battle-field, and her large eyes rolled wildly with fear, and she cried out:—'Save me! Save me!' And Jyámagha was smitten with her beauty, and he said within his heart:—'This damsel is very fair, and I have no child; therefore I will take her to be my wife, and she shall bear me a son.' So Jyámagha took the damsel in his chariot, and drove away to his own city; and his wife Saivyá, and all his Ministers and Chieftains, and all the people of the city, came out to meet him. And when Saivyá saw the damsel standing on the left hand of the Raja, her heart swelled within her, and she said:—'Who is this damsel?' And the Raja was afraid, and knew not

Natural tendency to monogamy.

it would be easy to infer that in a primitive and peaceful community, where polygamy was not recognized as an institution, and where the duty of becoming the father of a son was not regarded as a religious obligation, the free play of the affections and emotions would speedily settle the main problem connected with marriage, by generally distributing the young men and women into married pairs, bound to each other by an instinctive affection, and separated from all others by a mutual jealousy.

Polyandry and the Swayamvara.

As regards the two main institutions of Vedic times, Polyandry and the Swayamvara, little need be said. Modern taste revolts from a consideration of the conditions of Polyandry, which only satisfies an instinct at the expense of all delicacy of feeling and sentiment. The Swayamvara is a far more pleasing ceremony, associated as it is with a pure idea of woman's love centering in a single individual to the exclusion of all others, and finding a full response in the chivalrous affection of a Hindú hero. Indeed, in the story of Nala and Damayantí the ceremony is accompanied by an exquisite conception of maidenly modesty, followed by the self-abnegating devotion of a wife and a mother; and the charming details will scarcely fail to excite the sympathies of all who care to apprehend the depths of woman's tenderness towards a husband whom she

Pleasing idea involved in the Swayamvara.

---

what to say; and he replied in haste:—'This is my daughter-in-law!' Then Saivyá said:—'No son has been born unto me; therefore tell me what son of yours is the husband of this damsel?' And the Raja replied:—'The son you have yet to bear to me, the same shall be the husband of this damsel.' At these words Saivyá smiled gently, and said:—'So let it be!' And the Raja and his wife entered the palace."

It will be seen that the foregoing legend bears a marvellous resemblance to that of the return of Agamemnon and Cassandra to Argos after the siege of Troy. Had Jyámagha proved less submissive, his wife Saivyá might have appeared in the character of Clytemnestra.

Exaggerated expression of chivalry.

has really and truly loved. But still the institution is an exaggerated expression of the age of chivalry, and seems to have originated in the very Polyandry which later Hindúism affects to ignore. That a lover should seek to win the affections of the damsel whom he loves, by a series of fond attentions and devoted service, is in strict accordance with the instincts of human nature; but it is contrary to the conception of maidenly modesty, which prevails in all civilized communities, that a damsel should publicly manifest her passion for a man who has not previously given her undoubted proofs of his affection. This maidenly modesty is certainly to be found in the story of Nala and Damayantí; but it bears the impress of having been introduced by the Hindú bard, and the mythical details respecting the talking birds with golden wings seem to give weight to the suspicion.

Marriage relations in the Brahmanic period.

Polyandry and the Swayamvara ignored.

If, however, we turn to the Brahmanic age, as it finds expression in the code of Manu, we find that Polyandry and the Swayamvara are alike ignored, and so too is the sentiment that the woman is in any way the equal to the man. The old Vedic idea that religious worship should be performed by a married pair is indeed preserved in Manu, but without any observation which would imply equality. "Women," he says, "were created to be mothers, and men to be fathers; it is therefore ordained in the Veda that religious rites should be performed by the husband together with the wife."[2] But in every other direction the entire dependence and subordination of women is indicated in the most decided language, as will be seen from the following texts:—

Social inferiority of women.

Dependence of females upon fathers, husbands, and sons.

---

[2] Manu, ix.

"A girl, a young woman, or a matron must do nothing according to her own pleasure, even in her own dwelling-place. In childhood she is dependent on her father; in youth on her husband; in widowhood on her sons. If she has no sons, she must be dependent upon the kinsmen of her deceased husband; if he left no kinsmen, she must be dependent upon the kinsmen of her father; if she have no such kinsmen, she must be dependent upon the Raja. A woman must never seek to be independent. She must never wish to separate herself from her father, her husband, or her sons; for by such a separation she exposes both her father's family and her husband's family to contempt. The father is reprehensible who does not give his daughter in marriage at the proper time; the husband is reprehensible who does not pay due attention to his wife; and the son is reprehensible who does not protect his mother after the death of her lord.[3]

---

[3] Manu, v. 147—149; ix. 3, 4. Notwithstanding, however, these restrictions upon Hindú women, the wife is occasionally the master in the household, and exercises an influence which would be startling even in Europe. An amusing illustration of this fact is to be found in the biography of Ramdoolal Dey by Baboo Grish Chunder Ghose. Ramdoolal had purchased and stocked his warehouses with six hundred bags of the finest sugar. After a while the sugar market became favourable and he sold the whole. Meantime his wife had engaged a number of Bráhmans to read the Mahá Bhárata; and for ninety days thousands of native women flocked to the house to hear the sacred stories, and were entertained with sherbet made from the sugar. When, therefore, Ramdoolal ordered delivery of the six hundred bags he found that he had only forty left. In the excitement of the moment he called his wife an angel of ill-luck; upon which she ran to her bed-chamber, and bolted the door behind her. The finale of the story may be best told in the language of the biographer:—"Let those who call the Bengalee ungallant and the oppressor of the female sex, contemplate the scene I am about to describe. Slowly Ramdoolal bent his steps in the direction his wife had taken. Finding the doors of her chamber closed, he knocked gently; sobs alone answered him from within. He confessed the enormity of his crime; he called himself a coward and a fool. By a thousand endearing epithets he craved his lady's pardon; mercy was accorded by heaven, and would a woman deny it? There he stood in that outer room; the great man humbled to the dust, moaning and sobbing himself as the moans and sobs of his wife came piercingly upon his ears. At last the bruised heart of his spouse softened; she cried herself to pity. Rising from the bed on which she had flung herself, she slowly drew back the bolts and her husband entered. Throwing himself at her feet, he again and again craved for forgiveness. Forgiveness was at last purchased by him for the worth in gold of one lakh of rupees. This little fortune (about £10,000) Ramdoolal's wife, at her death, left

Duty of a father to his daughter.

The duty of a father as regards the marriage of his daughters is laid down very explicitly by Manu; and indeed is felt by every Hindú in the present day to be a religious as well as a family and social obligation.

Cases when a damsel may choose her own husband.

"Every man," says Manu, "should give his daughter in marriage to an excellent and handsome youth of the same caste, even though she has not attained her age; but it is better that a damsel, though marriageable, should stay at home until her death, rather than that her father should give her in marriage to a worthless bridegroom. A damsel should wait three years after she is marriageable; and then if her father has not given her in marriage, she may choose for herself a bridegroom of equal caste, and neither she nor her chosen husband commits any offence. A damsel who thus chooses her husband should not carry with her the jewels which she received from her father, nor those which have been given to her by her mother or brethren; and if she carries them away she commits theft. A man who thus marries a damsel after she is of full age, should not give a nuptial present; since her father lost his dominion over her by detaining her at a time when she might have been a mother."[4]

Duties of husbands towards their wives.

The duties of husbands towards their wives are also defined with significant fulness of detail in the Brahmanical code; and an attempt is obviously made to reconcile the wife to the subordinate position in which she is placed by the Hindú lawgiver.

---

to her brother." The writer of this biography is an enlightened and educated Hindú, and the editor of a Native newspaper in the English language; but his idea of gallantry is open to correction. A European would scarcely consider it gallantry on the part of a husband to purchase the forgiveness of a wife with £10,000.

[4] Manu, ix. 88—96. This permission, which is granted to maidens of a certain age, to choose their own husband, must not be confounded with the Swayamvara, although it may be a Brahmanical reproduction of the Vedic custom. The Swayamvara involved the idea of a father providing for a daughter on her arriving at a marriageable age, by inviting a number of young men to an entertainment at which she was to choose a bridegroom.

Wives to be honoured and decorated.

"A married woman," says Manu, "must be honoured and adorned by her father, her brethren, and her husband, if they would obtain abundant prosperity. Where females are honoured, there the deities are pleased; but where the females are not honoured, there all religious acts are of no avail. Should the women of a family, not being duly honoured, pronounce a curse against any house, that house and all belonging to it will utterly perish, as if destroyed by a sacrifice for the death of an enemy. Therefore let all men who are desirous of wealth continually supply the women of their family with ornaments, apparel, and food at all times of festival. If a wife be not elegantly attired she will not exhilarate her husband, and unless her husband be pleased there will be no offspring. When a wife is gaily adorned her whole house is embellished, but if she be without ornament the whole house will be deprived of decoration.[5] When good women thus irradiate the houses of their lords, they are like unto Lakshmí, the goddess of abundance. From the wife alone proceed offspring, good household management, solicitous attention, most exquisite caresses, and heavenly beatitude. She who deserts not her lord, but keeps her heart, speech, and body in subjection to him, shall obtain his mansion in heaven, and be called Sadhwí, or good and faithful; but she who is disloyal to her husband, will be born in the next life from the womb of a jackal, or be tormented with the horrible diseases which punish vice."[6]

Duties of a wife.

The duties of a wife towards her husband and household generally are equally significant.

"She must always," says Manu, "be in a cheerful temper, devoting herself to the good management of the household, taking great care of the household furniture, and keeping down all her expenses with a frugal hand. The husband to whom her father has given her, or to whom her brother has given her with the consent of her father, she must obsequiously honour while he lives, and never neglect him when he dies. The husband gives bliss continually to his wife here below, and he will give her happiness in the next world. He must be constantly revered as a god by a virtuous wife; even though he does not observe approved usages, or is enamoured of another woman, or is devoid of good qualities. No sacrifice is allowed to women apart from their husbands, no religious rite, no fasting; so far only as a wife honours her lord, so far is she exalted in heaven. A faithful wife who wishes to attain heaven, and dwell there with her husband, must never do anything unkind towards him, whether he be living or dead."

---

[5] Manu, iii. 55—62.

[6] Manu, ix. 26—30.

Duties of a widow.

The duties of widows are equally explicit, and involve no idea of the horrible Satí. Manu says:—

"When the husband is dead let his widow emaciate her body by living voluntarily on pure flowers, roots, and fruit; but let her not even pronounce the name of another man. Let her continue until death, forgiving all injuries, performing harsh duties, avoiding every sensual pleasure, and cheerfully practising the incomparable rules of virtue, which have been followed by such women as were devoted to one husband alone. Many thousands of Bráhmans have avoided sensuality from their early youth, and have, consequently, had no children, but, nevertheless, when they have died they have ascended to heaven; and in like manner a virtuous wife ascends to heaven, though she have no child, if after the death of her husband she devotes herself to pious austerities. But a widow, who, from her desire to bear children, slights her deceased husband by marrying again, brings disgrace upon herself here below, and will be excluded hereafter from the seat of her lord. In no part of this code is a second husband allowed to a virtuous woman."[7]

Duties of a widower.

The duties of a widower are placed upon another footing by the Hindú lawgiver. Manu says:—

---

[7] Manu, v. 157—162.

"If the wife of a twice-born man die before him, and if she be of his own caste, and if she has lived a virtuous life according to the ordinance, her body must be burned by her husband with sacred fire and fit implements of sacrifice; and when he has thus performed the funeral rites to his wife he may again marry and light the nuptial fire."[8]

Restrictions to be placed on women.

The system of confinement and repression, however, was not always successful in subduing the irregular desires of such women as were unmindful of their duties and obligations.

"Husbands," says Manu, "should diligently keep their wives under lawful restrictions. No man, indeed, can wholly restrain women by lawful measures; but a wife may be employed in the collection and expenditure of wealth, in purification and female duty, in the preparation of daily food, and in the superintendence of household utensils. Women are not secure by confinement at home, even under affectionate and observant guardians; and those only are truly secure, who are guarded by their own good inclinations. Six faults bring infamy upon a woman:—Drinking intoxicating liquors, associating with evil persons, absence from a husband, rambling abroad, sleeping at unseasonable times, and dwelling in the house of another. Such women care not whether a lover be handsome or ugly, young or old; they think it is enough that he is a man; and through their passion for men, their mutable temper, their want of settled affection, and their perverse nature, they soon become alienated from their husbands."[9]

Vices of women.

Maintenance and conduct of a wife in the absence of her husband.

As regards the maintenance and conduct of a wife during the absence of her husband on business or pleasure, the following rules are laid down in the code of Manu:—

"Should a man have business abroad, he should assure a fitting maintenance for his wife while he is away; for

---

[8] Manu, v. 167—169.

[9] Manu, ix. 6—15.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

even if a wife be virtuous she may be tempted to act amiss, if she be distressed by want of subsistence. If the maintenance of a wife be thus provided for her, she should continue firm in the practice of religious austerities whilst her husband is absent; but if her maintenance be not provided for, she should subsist by spinning and other blameless arts. If the husband live abroad on account of some sacred duty, she should wait for him eight years; if he is abroad on account of knowledge or fame, she should wait six years; if he is abroad on account of pleasure, she should wait three years."[10]

Question as regards the period of absence.

The significance of these texts lies in the law which directs the wife to await the return of her husband for certain periods of years, which are to be longer or shorter, according to the circumstances which have led to the absence of her lord. This law would seem to imply that after a specified period of separation a woman might marry again; but such a conclusion is opposed to the spirit of another law, which denounces the second marriage of a woman.

Forced explanation of Kulluka.

The commentator Kullúka, however, endeavours to remove the difficulty by adding that at the end of the period of separation the woman should rejoin her husband.[11] But this addition bears obvious marks of being an arbitrary interpretation; and it seems more likely that there existed an old law respecting the number of years during which a wife was to await the return of her husband; and that Kullúka has simply brought this law into apparent conformity with the rule which denounces all second marriages of females.

Law respecting divorce.

The laws of Manu as regards divorce, and the circumstances under which a man might marry a second wife whilst the first is still alive, are full and explicit; and they tend to prove that whilst polygamy was an institution in Vedic times, monogamy was the dominant idea in the Brahmanic period. Manu says:—

---

[10] Manu, ix. 74—76.

[11] Manu, ix. 76.

Supersession of a wife by a second wife to obtain a son.

> "Should a wife treat her husband with aversion, he should bear with her for one whole year; but after that period he may deprive her of her separate property, and cease to treat her as his wife. She who neglects her husband, though he be addicted to gaming, or fond of spirituous liquors, or diseased, must be deserted for three months, and deprived of her ornaments and household furniture. But if she is averse to her husband because he is mad, or a deadly sinner, or without manly strength, or afflicted with such maladies as are the punishment of crimes, she must neither be deserted, nor stripped of her property.[12] A wife may at all times be superseded by another wife if she drinks spirituous liquors, or acts immorally, or manifests hatred towards her husband, or is diseased, or mischievous, or wastes her husband's property. A wife who is barren may be superseded by another in the eighth year; she whose children are all dead may be superseded in the tenth year; she who brings forth only daughters may be superseded in the eleventh year; but she who speaks unkindly may be superseded without delay. A wife, however, who is afflicted with disease, but at the same time is beloved and virtuous, must never be disgraced, although she may be superseded by another wife with her own consent. If a wife, who has been legally superseded, departs in wrath from the house, she must either be instantly confined, or she must be abandoned in the presence of the whole family."[13]

Good wives to be superseded only with their own consent.

It will be seen from the foregoing precepts that a Hindú was justified in putting away a wife, not only if she proved unfaithful, but also if she indulged in spirituous liquors, or was diseased, or barren, or only gave birth to daughters. In the three latter cases a

---

[12] Manu, ix. 77—79.

[13] Manu, ix. 80—83.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

good wife was not to be superseded by a second wife without her own consent; and even then she was not to be divorced or put away. As regards a wife who was barren, or who only gave birth to daughters, it will be observed that a patriarchal custom, originating in an age of polygamy, was converted into a religious obligation; and such is the force of religious obligation in the minds of many women that it will override one of the strongest instincts of human nature. Thus it was that when Sarai found that she bore no children, she took Hagar her Egyptian handmaid, and gave her to Abram to be his wife;[14] and even in the present day Hindú wives are to be found, who are prepared to see a husband take a second wife, rather than that he should die without becoming the father of a son.[15]

Force of the religious obligation to beget a son.

---

[14] Genesis xvi.

[15] The following incident in the life of Ramdoolal Dey, as described by Grish Chunder Ghose, furnishes a graphic picture of a scene which not unfrequently occurs in a Hindú household, when the first wife has grown old without giving birth to a son:—"A strict Hindú, filled with the orthodox horror for *put*,—the hell of the Hindús, which is declared by the sastras to yawn for the childless,—Ramdoolal was advised by the Bráhmans who constantly surrounded him, to marry another wife. With hesitancy and by stealth was the marriage consummated—unknown to his first wife, unsuspected even by her. But the news of such an important event in the life of a husband cannot long be kept a secret from a spouse. It soon travelled into the ears of the rival, who repaired in gloomy dissatisfaction to her brother's house in Moolajore. Ramdoolal dared not bring this second wife to his home, without softening and conciliating the first. The latter was at last found to be not unreasonable; though the woman within her, the natural feeling of her sex, had made her at first a rebel against her lord. She returned in the best of all possible humours; returned to welcome the bride to her home, to carry in her arms the rival in the affections of her husband; the child, who, arrived at womanhood, gave that husband two boys and five girls as the heirs of his vast estate. Yet the lives of the two wives did not run smoothly. The jealousy natural to the sex embittered existences, which had otherwise no ground for distraction. Outwardly the two ladies exhibited no signs of discord. The youngest never dared ever to raise her veil before the eldest; or to address her, except in a low, not direct, respectful tone of voice. But there was gall and bitterness in their hearts. Ramdoolal invariably took his meals in the apartments of his first wife, and skulked into those of his second after the former had fallen sound asleep.

Laws against adultery.

The laws against adultery, which appear to have been in force in the Brahmanic age, are naturally very severe.

"Adultery," says Manu, "causes a mixture of castes, from whence arises violation of duties, and the destruction of the root of felicity. Men, therefore, who manifest adulterous inclinations for the wives of others, should be punished by the Raja with such bodily marks as excite aversion, and be banished from the realm. A man who converses in secret with the wife of another, and has been previously noted for such an offence, shall pay a fine of two hundred and fifty panas.[16] But if a man so converses for some reasonable cause, and has not been previously noted for such an offence, he shall pay no fine, for he has incurred no transgression. He who talks with the wife of another man at a place of pilgrimage, or in a forest, or grove, or at the confluence of rivers, incurs the guilt of an adulterous inclination. To send her flowers or perfumes, to sport and jest with her, to touch her apparel and ornaments, to sit with her on the same couch, are held to be adulterous acts on his part. The wives of all the four castes ought to be

---

He dared not speak to the latter in the presence of the former; and all his children by his second wife were born in a separate house, which belonged to that wife's relatives; for he would not wound the feelings of his first spouse by parading before her eyes the evidences of his secret love towards the second. It was not until the children grew up, and were able to walk and to hop, that they were brought to his own mansion. And then, such was the caprice of a truly benevolent heart, their own mother was not more watchful and affectionate towards them than their step-mother. Yet this step-mother constantly laboured to estrange her husband from her rival by spells and by poojahs; and her weakness on this point was so extravagant that even the lads about her, whenever they wanted money, had only to present her with a cocoa-nut, or other fruit curiously marked, declaring that it was a charm,—to extract from her foolish credulity whatever sums they required. Her rival having died before her, she anxiously inquired of the Bráhmans, if there was any means available for preventing the former from joining her husband in heaven prior to her own death." *Lecture on the Life of Ramdoolal Dey, the Bengalee millionnaire, delivered in the Hall of the Hooghly College on the 14th March, 1868, by Grish Chunder Ghose.*

[16] A pana was apparently equivalent to the modern pice, or something less than a half-penny. But a pice in the time of Manu may have borne a much higher value than it does in the present day. The penny of Anglo Saxon times was an important coin.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

ever most especially guarded; but the Súdra who commits actual adultery with the wife of a Bráhman should be put to death. Any man who converses with the wife of another, after he has been forbidden by her husband or father, shall pay a fine; but mendicants, eulogists, Bráhmans prepared for a sacrifice, and artisans are not prohibited from speaking to married women."[17]

Punishment of unfaithful wives and their paramours.

"Should a wife actually violate the duty which she owes to her husband, let the Raja condemn her to be devoured by dogs in a public place; and let the adulterer be burned to death upon an iron bed. A Súdra who has committed adultery with a woman of a twice-born caste, who has been guarded by her husband at home, shall suffer death; but if the woman has not been guarded, he shall be mutilated and deprived of all his substance. A Vaisya who commits adultery with a guarded Brahmaní woman shall be imprisoned for a year and forfeit all his wealth; and if a Kshatriya commit the same crime, he shall be fined a thousand panas, and be shaved with impure water; but if the Brahmaní woman has not been guarded by her husband, the Vaisya shall be fined five hundred panas, and the Kshatriya one thousand panas."[18]

Punishment of Bráhmans.

"A Bráhman who has criminal intercourse with a guarded woman with her free consent shall be fined five hundred panas; but if against her will, he shall be fined a thousand panas. When a Bráhman commits adultery, for which one of the other castes would be put to death, he must be shaved ignominiously; for a Raja must never slay a Bráhman, even though he be guilty of all possible crimes. Indeed no greater crime is known on earth than that of slaying a Bráhman: the Raja may banish him, but even then he must retain his property and be sent unhurt out of the realm."[19]

Public women and female anchorites.

"These laws," continues Manu, "do not relate to the wives of public singers and dancers, or of such base men as live by the intrigues of their wives; men who either carry women to others, or who live concealed at home and permit their wives to carry on a criminal intercourse. Yet that man who carries on a private intercourse with such women, or with servant girls kept by one master, or with female anchorites, shall be compelled to pay a small fine. If a man has intercourse with a damsel without her consent, he shall immediately suffer corporal punishment; but if the damsel was willing, and belonged to his own caste, he shall not suffer such punishment."[20]

---

[17] Manu, viii. 352—360.

[18] Manu, viii. 374—376.

[19] Manu, viii. 378—381.

Question of guarded wives.

It will be unnecessary to comment upon the foregoing laws which refer to the relations of the sexes, as they will fully speak for themselves. It may, however, be observed that great stress is laid upon the question of whether the wife was guarded or otherwise; thus implying an obligation on the part of the husband to place his wife under certain restrictions. Again, it will be seen that whilst the existene of public women was recognized by the code, yet men who visited them were punishable by a small fine. It is doubtful, however, whether this fine was regarded as a punishment, or simply as a tax; for if the former, it would seem to imply a higher standard of morality than that which actually prevailed. At the very commencement of the Buddhist period, and for centuries later, public women were living in great splendour and luxury; whilst the presence of a mistress in the same house with a legitimate wife, was not opposed to the moral sense of the general community. At the same time this laxity of morals was brought so far under the cognizance of the common law, that a dancing girl could be punished by the civil authorites, if, without

Punishment for visiting public women.

Position of public women and private mistresses.

---

[20] See Bigandet's *Life of Buddha*, Wilson's *Hindu Theatre*, and Halhed's *Gentoo Laws*. This subject, however, will be fully treated hereafter in dealing with the later history of the Hindús.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

reasonable excuse, she broke any engagement she might have made.[21]

Female anchorites placed in the same category with public women.

There is, however, one strange and significant feature in the laws of Manu as regards public women, which demands special notice. It will be seen that female anchorites are placed in the same category with singing and dancing girls. This law is so widely different from the old stern Roman rule as regards the chastity of Vestals, that it can only be regarded as a sarcasm levelled at those Buddhist nuns who devoted themselves to a convent life. The existence of female devotees seems to have been unknown to the old Brahmanical system, although such women are to be found in the present day at Benares and other sacred places. Hence it is easy to apprehend the full bitterness of the law of Manu, which classifies female anchorites with public women, and enacts that those who violated their chastity should be punished by a small fine.

Sarcasm levelled at Buddhist nuns.

Conduct of a Hindú towards the wives of his brethren.

The law as regards the conduct to be observed by a Hindú towards the wives of his several brothers is sufficiently indicated in the code by the simple statement, that the wife of an elder brother was to be considered as a mother-in-law, and the wife of a younger brother as a daughter-in-law.[22] There was, however, one important exception to this rule, which originated in an old Vedic custom, and is partially recognized by Manu. In ancient times, when women were regarded as property, the widow or widows of a deceased husband were inherited by his brother or nearest male kinsman. This custom seems to have been continued to a comparatively recent

Law for raising up a son to a deceased brother.

---

[21] Manu, viii. 362–366.

[22] Manu, ix. 57, 58.

period by the force of a religious obligation connected with the Sráddha, or feast of the dead. It was deemed essential that the offerings made to the soul after death, should be presented by a son of the deceased; and consequently it was necessary that every man should by some process or other become the father of a son. Accordingly the dogma seems to have been generally accepted, that if a man died childless, his nearest kinsman should beget a son upon the surviving widow, who should be regarded as the son of the deceased, and should present the necessary offering to his shade. Manu was aware of this custom, which indeed has already been exemplified in the legend of Vyása, who raised up sons to his deceased brother Vichitra-vírya;[23] but he can scarcely be said to tolerate it. He directs that under any circumstances the kinsman should be free from all impure desire, and that after the birth of a son no further intercourse should be permitted under pain of loss of caste. But he adds that no woman of a twice-born caste is authorized to become a mother by any one but her husband; and that the practice is fit only for cattle, and is reprehended by the learned Bráhmans. He refers the custom itself to the reign of Vena, one of those mythical Rajas who may be referred to a very remote antiquity, and who are said to have governed the whole earth. It is also stated in Manu that Vena indulged in his fondness for women to such an extent as to weaken his intellect and cause a confusion of castes. Now according to such vague traditions of Raja Vena as have been preserved in the Mahá Bhárata and

Custom recognized but not tolerated by Manu.

Custom referred to the reign of Raja Vena.

---

[23] In *ante*, Vol. I. Part ii. chap. 1.

Puránas, he appears at some primitive period to have displayed great hostility to the Bráhmans. It is not, therefore, surprising that the compilers of the Brahmanical code should have referred an evil custom to so obnoxious a Raja, and should otherwise have sought to blacken his name.[24]

Modern custom of adoption.

This degrading custom still largely prevails amongst the lower orders of Hindús, but is no longer practised by men of the twice-born castes; and with its decline another custom has arisen, namely, that of adoption. According to Manu, a man without a son might appoint his married daughter to raise up a son to perform the necessary ceremonies at the Sráddha; but in this case the son of the daughter would ultimately be required to offer two funeral cakes, namely, one to his natural father, and one to his maternal grandfather who had adopted him. A childless man might also adopt a son from another family; but in that case he could offer no funeral cake to his natural father, but only to his adopted father; and he could consequently never claim the estate of his natural father, as that would devolve on the son who offered the cake.[25]

---

[24] Manu, ix. 59—69. Compare Vishnu Purána, Book i. chap. 13.

[25] Manu, ix. 132, 142, 145—147, 162—164, 167.

CHAPTER XIII.

HINDÚ GOVERNMENT.

HISTORY OF INDIA. PART V.

Contrast between the theory of government in Manu, and the patriarchal and feudal types in Vedic tradition.

THE theory of Hindú government which is set forth in the code of Manu, presents a marked contrast to the patriarchal and feudal types which appear in the Vedic traditions of the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana. The loyal attachment of kinsmen and retainers, and their obligations to render military service to their suzerain, which characterize the great story of the war of Bhárata, find no expression whatever in the code of Brahmanical law; and no precepts are to be discovered, which recognize in any way that patriotic interest in the welfare of the Raj which was respectively displayed by the general community during the gambling match of Nala, and during the movement in favour of installing Ráma as Yuvaraja. To all appearance the old Roman sentiment of devotion to the common weal, which is to be found amongst all Aryan nations, and which certainly appertained to the old Vedic Aryans, had passed away beneath the blighting influence of Brahmanical oppression; and the public spirit which had animated the body politic in the Vedic age, and which is essential to the permanence of states and

Absence of patriotism and public spirit.

empires, seems to have been narrowed down to the caste, the village, or the family. The result has been that for ages the people of India have had but one political tie, one nationality, and one patriotism, and that is religion, and religion alone. Foreign rule may be introduced, a Raj may be annexed by a paramount power, and a once reigning family be condemned to obscurity or exile; but the masses have never exhibited a spark of that deep-seated loyalty, which led the old Barons of England to rally round the standard of King Charles, and which stirred up the Highland clans to fight lustily for the Chevalier, and to spurn the tempting rewards that were offered for his capture. If, however, the religion be assailed, or only threatened by the temporal power, common superstitions and common fears seem to unite the people into a mysterious brotherhood, which will fight to the last with the high-souled daring of Crusaders, although it may be wanting in the stern discipline of Cromwell's Ironsides.

Religion the only political and national tie.

Political system of the Bráhmans based upon fear.

The political system of the Bráhmans, like their religious system, was based upon fear. Under the gloomy influence of a remorseless priesthood, the Raja and his people ceased to glory in the worship of the old Vedic deities, and were kept in a state of abject submission by the dread of mysterious evil, either in this life, or in the life hereafter. In the isolation of a village, or a household, an independence might have been occasionally displayed; but all constitutional checks upon the conduct of a Raja seem to have disappeared; excepting such as were exercised by the Bráhmans alone. The Raja was regarded as a divine administrator of the law; but the law was to be interpreted by the Bráhmans. He was a despotic sovereign; but he was restrained in every direction by religious obligations. He held the country by a military occupation; but he was controlled by Brahmanical advisers. If, like Saul, he sought to throw off the yoke of the priesthood, another Raja would be set up in his room; and he might expect poison in every dish, and a dagger in the dress of every female in his household.

Hindú Government treated under four heads.

The system of Government which finds expression in the Institutes of Manu may now be considered under four several heads, namely:—

1st, The Raja, his Court and Ministers.
2nd, Government of the Provinces.
3rd, Administration of Justice.
4th, Laws of War.

1. The Raja, his Court and Ministers.

The precepts which refer to the Raja, his Court and Ministers, comprise in the first instance a sketch of the Hindú ideal of a Raja as a divine being, followed by the obligations which bind him to reward the good and to punish all evil-doers. His daily duties are there laid down; the worship of the gods, the vices he is to avoid, his public appearance, his secret Councils, his noon-day meal, the precautions he is to take against poison and assassination, his women, military reviews, reception of spies, evening meal, and music. The whole winds up with full directions as regards his Metropolis, Fort, and Palace; his Rání and Priests; his Minister and officials; his Ambassador or Minister for Foreign Affairs; and the distribution of the chief offices. The details connected with these several subjects may now be considered in regular order.

Hindú ideal of a Raja.

The Hindú ideal of a Raja is in exact accordance

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

with the Oriental idea of sovereignty, which still prevails amongst the people of India.

Divine attributes.

"Brahmá," says Manu, "created a Raja for the maintenance of the law; for without a Raja the world would quake with fear. And Brahmá formed the Raja out of the essence of the eight deities who guard the universe; and thus the Raja surpasses all mortals in glory, and should exercise the attributes of the eight gods. As Indra, the god of the firmament, sends plentiful showers during the four months of the rainy season; so let the Raja rain abundance upon his people. As Súrya, the sun-god, draws up the water by his rays; so let the Raja by his sovereign power draw the legal revenue from his dominions. As Pavana, the god of air, moves throughout the world; so let the Raja pervade all places by his spies. As Yama, the judge of the dead, punishes friends and foes; so let the Raja punish all offending subjects. As Varuna, the god of the waters, binds the guilty in fatal cords; so let the Raja keep evil-doers in rigid bonds. As Chandra, the moon-god, delights the world in the fulness of his glory; so let the Raja appear before his subjects in the splendour of his sovereignty. As Agni, the god of fire, burns and consumes; so let the just wrath of the Raja destroy all evil ministers. As Príthiví, the earth-goddess, supports all creatures; so let the Raja protect all his subjects. The Raja is a powerful deity in human form; and even as a child he must not be treated lightly. He is the firmament, the sun, the wind, the judge of all men, the deep ocean, the full moon, the fire, and the earth. He is the perfect essence of majesty, by whose power the goddess of abundance rises on her lotos, in whose valour dwells conquest, and in whose wrath dwells destruction."[1]

Just punishment of evil-doers the special duty of a Raja.

The duty of a Raja as regards rewarding virtuous men, and punishing evil-doers, is thus laid down in the code :—

---

[1] Manu, vii. 1—13; ix. 303—311. The goddess of abundance is Lakshmi.

"The Raja should reward the good and punish the wicked. Punishment is the perfection of justice, the true manager of public affairs, the dispenser of all laws, the governor of all, and the protector of all. When it is inflicted with consideration and justice, it makes all the people happy; when it is inflicted hastily and unjustly, it wholly destroys them. If the Raja were not to punish the evil-doers, the stronger would roast the weaker like fish on a spit; the crow would peck at the consecrated food; the dog would eat up the sacred ghee; the rich would be deprived of all their wealth; the twice-born would be overcome by the Súdra. If punishment were withdrawn, or inflicted unjustly, all castes would become corrupt, all barriers would be destroyed, and there would be an utter confusion among all people. But when punishment advances with a black countenance and red eyes to destroy sin, the people dwell undisturbed. That Raja is the fit dispenser of justice who speaks the truth on all occasions, who understands the sacred books; and such a Raja, if he inflicts just punishment, and knows the distinctions of virtue, pleasure, and wealth, will increase the happiness which men derive from all three. But punishment itself will destroy that Raja, who is crafty, voluptuous, and wrathful. Punishment shall overtake his castles, his territories, and all that exist therein, and all his race; whilst the gods and Rishis will be filled with affliction and return from earth to the sky. Let the Raja act with justice in his own dominions, chastise his foes with vigour, be honest and truthful to his friends, and lenient to the Bráhmans: and his fame will spread over the whole world like a drop of oil on the surface of water. But if he is unjust, untruthful, and unkind to the Bráhmans, his reputation will be like a lump of ghee in a river."[2]

A good Raja.

A bad Raja.

---

[2] Manu, vii. 13—34.

The daily duties of a Raja are thus indicated:—

Daily duties of a Raja

Oblations to the gods.

Attendance on Bráhmans.

"Every morning the Raja should rise at early dawn, and make his oblations to the gods, and respectfully attend to Bráhmans who are versed in the Veda, and in the science of morals. From the Bráhmans he should learn to be modest and composed; for without humility many Rajas have perished with all their possessions. In this manner Raja Vena was utterly ruined, and so was the great Raja Nahusha. Day and night must the Raja endeavour to control his organs, and to shun the eighteen vices; the ten vices of pleasure and the eight vices of wrath, all of which end in misery. The ten vices which are born of pleasure are hunting, gambling, sleeping by day, censuring rivals, excess with women, intoxication, singing, music, dancing, and useless travel. The eight vices which are born of wrath are tale-bearing, violence, insidious wounding, envy, detraction, unjust confiscation, reviling, and open assault. Vice is more dreadful than death; since after death the vicious man sinks to the lower regions, whilst the virtuous man ascends to heaven."[3]

Control of the passions.

Ten vices born of pleasure.

Eight vices born of wrath.

Public appearance of the Raja.

Secret Councils.

"Having paid due respect to the Bráhmans, the Raja should enter the hall of his palace, and gratify his subjects with kind looks and words. He should then dismiss them all and take secret counsel with his Ministers, either by ascending a mountain, or going privately to a terrace, a bower, a forest, or some other lonely place where he can consult with his Ministers unobserved and without listeners; for that Raja whose secrets are hidden shall attain dominion over the whole earth, although he may possess no treasure. He must exclude from his Councils all who are stupid, or diseased, as well as all heretics, women, and talking birds: since those who are disgraced are apt to betray secret counsel, and so are talking birds, and above all so are women."[4]

Noon-day meal.

"At noon, after the Raja has consulted with his Ministers, and taken exercise, and bathed, he should enter his private apartment for the purpose of taking food. His victuals

---

[3] Manu, vii. 35—53.

[4] Manu, vii. 145—150.

Precautions against poison and assassination.

should be prepared by servants who are attached to him and are incapable of perfidy; and when the food has been tested and proved innocent, and when it has also been consecrated by mantras which repel poison, he may eat thereof; but he should always swallow such medical substances with his food as resist poison, and constantly wear such gems as are known to repel poison. The dress and ornaments of his females should be examined, lest some weapon should be concealed in them; after which the females should render him humble service with fans, water, and perfumes. In like manner he should take diligent care when he goes out in a carriage or on horseback; when he sits or when he lies down; when he takes his food, and when he bathes and anoints himself, and puts on all his habiliments. When he has finished his noon-day meal, he may divert himself with his women in the recesses of his palace; and when he has idled a reasonable time, he should again think of the public affairs, and review his armed men with their elephants, horses, chariots, accoutrements, and weapons. At sunset he should perform his religious duty. After this he should proceed to his inner apartments, and there in private and well armed, he should take the reports of his spies, of whom he should take five kinds in his pay, namely:—active and artful young men, degraded anchorites, distressed husbandmen, decayed merchants, and false devotees. When he has heard all that they have to say, he should dismiss them. After this he should go to another secret chamber, and eat his evening meal attended by his women; and then having been recreated by music, he should retire early to rest that he may rise on the morrow refreshed from his slumbers."[5]

Women.

Parades.

Evening duties.

Reception of spies.

Evening meal.

Music.

Modern life in Hindú courts similar to that described in Manu.

Commentary upon the foregoing details is perhaps scarcely necessary. The picture which they present of the life of a Hindú Raja is identical with that which may still be found in most native courts. Superstition, secrecy, suspicion, idling with women,

---

[5] Manu, vi. 154, 216, 225.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

espionage, and military display were and are the conditions of Oriental sovereignty. Meantime intrigues like those which agitated the zenana of Maharaja Dasaratha were doubtless as frequent in the past age, as they are in the courts of native princes of our own time.[6]

The directions laid down in the Institutes of Manu respecting the Metropolis, Fort, and Palace of the Raja, and also his Ránî, Priests, and Ministers, may be thus indicated :—

City of the Raja in a level plain surrounded by mountains.

"A Raja should dwell in a district where the country is level and open, and abounds in grain. The Raja should there dwell in a capital city, having round it a desert by way of a fortress, or else a fortress of earth, or one of water, or one of trees, or one of armed men, or one of mountains. Of all these a fortress of mountains is to be preferred; for wild beasts dwell in the desert fortress, vermin in the earth fortress, aquatic animals in the water fortress, monkeys in the fortress of trees, men in the fortress of armed men, but gods in the fortress of mountains. The Raja should dwell within a Fort; for one bowman placed upon a wall is a match in war for a hundred enemies, and a hundred bowmen on a wall is in like manner a match for ten thousand enemies. The Fort should be supplied with weapons, money, grain, beasts, Bráhmans, artificers, engines, grass, and water. In the centre of the Fort the Raja should raise his Palace, which should be completely defended, brilliant with white stucco, and surrounded with water and trees."[7]

The Fort.

The Palace.

A Rání.

Domestic priest and sacrificing priest.

"When a Raja has prepared a Fort and Palace he should choose a Rání of the same caste as himself, born of an exalted race, captivating the heart, adorned with every beauty and every virtue. He must also appoint a domestic priest or Purohita; also a performer of sacrifices, or Ritwij; and these Bráhmans may solemnize the religious rites of his family, as well as those which are performed with the three sacred fires."[8]

---

[6] *Ante*, Book iv. chap. 7.

[7] Manu, vii. 69—76

Sacrifices and gifts to Bráhmans.

"A Raja should perform sacrifices accompanied with gifts. He should pay due respect to Bráhmans who have returned from the dwellings of their preceptors; for a present to such a Bráhman is called a precious gem, which is deposited by Rajas with the Bráhman caste, which never perishes, and which neither thieves nor foes can take away. An oblation in the mouth of a Bráhman is far better than offerings to holy fire; it never drops, it never dies, it is never consumed."[9]

Ministers.

"The Raja must appoint seven or eight Ministers, who must be sworn. They should be men whose ancestors were the servants of Rajas; who are versed in the Sástras; who are personally brave; who are skilled in the use of weapons, and who are of noble lineage. He should perpetually consult with those Ministers on matters pertaining to peace and war; on his army; on his revenues; on the protection of his people; and on the proper expenditure of the wealth which he has acquired. He should ascertain the opinions of his Counsellors, first of each one separately, and then of the whole collectively; and then he should do that which is most beneficial in public affairs. To one learned Bráhman distinguished among them all, the Raja should impart his momentous counsel; and to this Bráhman he should intrust all transactions with full confidence; and when he has finally resolved how to act, he should commence his measures in conjunction with this Chief Minister."[10]

The Chief Minister to be a Bráhman.

Officials.

"A Raja must in like manner appoint other Officers, who should be men of integrity, well informed, steady, habituated to gain wealth, and tried by experience. Those who are brave, skilful, well-born, and honest he should employ in his mines of gold and gems, and in other similar works; but those who are pusillanimous he should employ in the recesses of his palace."[11]

---

[8] Manu, vii. 77, 78.

[9] Manu, vii. 79—84.

[10] Manu, vii. 54—59.

[11] Manu, vii. 60—62.

The Ambassador.

"The Raja should likewise employ an Ambassador who is versed in all the Sástras; who understands hints, external signs, and actions; whose abilities are great, and who is of illustrious birth. He should be one who is generally beloved; who is dexterous in business; who is endued with an excellent memory; who knows countries and times; and who is handsome, brave, and eloquent. In the transaction of affairs, the Ambassador should be able to comprehend the plans of a foreign Raja, by the signs, hints, and acts of his confidential servants; and he should also be able to discover the measures which a foreign Raja desires to undertake, by studying the character and conduct of his Ministers. Thus when a Raja has learned from his Ambassador all the designs of a foreign Raja, he may be able by vigilant care to guard himself against any evil."[12]

Distribution of offices.

"The government of the country and regulation of the treasury should be in the hands of the Raja; the administration of justice should be in the hands of the Raja's officers; the forces of the realm should be directed by the Commander-in-Chief; and the negotiations respecting peace and war should be conducted by Ambassadors."[13]

Characteristics of Hindú sovereignty.

The foregoing directions respecting the guarded security in which a Raja should dwell, and the Ministers and Officers by whom he should be surrounded, exhibit with sufficient clearness the timidity, distrust, and love of deception and artifice, which but too often characterize Native administration. The ideal of a city, a palace, and a fort, will be found strikingly illustrated in the description of the city of Ayodhyá, and the fort and palace of Mahá-raja Dasaratha; as well as in the description of Lanká, and the fort and palace of Rávana, which appear in the Rámáyana.[14] The character of an

Illustrations to be found in the Rámáyana and Mahá Bhárata.

---

[12] Manu, vii. 63, 64, 66, 68.

[13] Manu, vii. 65. Elphinstone justly observes that the officer who is here styled an Ambassador bears a closer resemblance to a Minister for foreign affairs.

[14] See *ante*, Part iv. chap. 1 and 20.

Ambassador, again, is similar to that of Sanjaya, the Minister and charioteer of Maháraja Dhritaráshtra, who was sent on an embassy to the Pándavas prior to the war of the Mahá Bhárata.[15]

2nd, Government of the Provinces.

A military occupation based upon the village system.

The administration of the Provinces, which is prescribed by the compilers of the code, seems to have partaken largely of a military character; and is such as might have been expected after the conquest and occupation of Hindústan by the Aryan invaders. A military force was cantoned in the several districts according to their extent; whilst a civil administration was introduced upon the basis of the ancient division of the country into villages or townships.[16] The village system appears to have originated in remote antiquity, and still continues to prevail throughout India, excepting, perhaps, in Bengal proper. A Hindú village, however, comprehends something more than an English village; and it will be necessary to glance at its constitution, before taking into consideration the administrative measures laid down in Manu.

Hindú village comprising both a district and a town.

The so-called Hindú village is in fact a township, or district including an area of land, as well as a village or town, properly so called. It varies in extent, but is inhabited by a single community; and is separated from all other villages by boundaries, which are carefully defined and rigidly guarded. The village lands may be of all descriptions; cultivated, culturable and uncultivated, pasture, and unculturable waste. The lands are divided into fields by boundaries, which are as well understood as those of the village; and the name of each field, with its qualities, extent, and holders, are minutely entered in the village records. Each village thus consists of lands, or farms, from which the community draws its subsistence; and the assemblage of houses or huts, which constitute the village proper, and in which the community dwell more or less together for the sake of security.[17]

---

[15] See *ante*, Vol. I. Part ii. chap. 10. A distinction, however, must be laid down between the marks of resemblance which are to be found in the original Vedic tradition, and those which appear in the modern Brahmanical version.

[16] Manu, vii. 114.

The village communities, or republics.

These village communities are little republics, each having its head-man, and its little body of village officials. But the officials themselves are controlled by the public opinion of the community, which is expressed by popular gatherings beneath shady trees, after the old-world fashion of our Saxon fore-fathers, and much in the same way that the elders and people of Israel assembled at the gates of their cities to settle disputes about heritance and lands.

Village officials.

According to the current idea there ought to be twelve officials in every village; but the number varies, and there are officers in some villages, who are not to be found in others.

The Head-man.

Each village has its head-man, who transacts all business with the ruling authority; apportions the payment of land revenue among the villagers, according to the extent of these lands and the nature of their tenures; lets out lands which have no fixed occupants; and partitions the water for irrigation. He also settles disputes and apprehends offenders.

Village assemblies.

All points of public interest are, however, arranged in free consultation with the villagers; and all disputes are decided with the assistance of arbitrators or assessors. The head-man is assisted by an accountant and a watchman. The accountant keeps the village records, manages the accounts, draws up deeds, and writes private letters when required. The watchman guards the boundaries of the villages, and those of the fields within the village; and he likewise watches the crops, and acts throughout the village as a constable, public guide, and messenger. In addition to these there is generally a Bráhman priest, who is sometimes an astrologer, and schoolmaster; a jeweller, who is also a money-changer; a smith, carpenter, barber, potter, and worker in leather. Sometimes, also, there is a tailor, washerman, physician, musician, and a poet, who is also a genealogist; and in the south of India there is generally a dancing-girl. The head-man and the accountant generally hold pieces of land, and sometimes receive allowances from government; but all the officials receive fees from the villagers, consisting either of money, or of a handful or two out of each measure of grain.[18]

---

[17] Elphinstone's *History of India*, Book ii. chapter 2.

The accountant.

The watchman.

The Bráhman priest.

Astrologer and schoolmaster.

Jeweller.

Miscellaneous village servants.

Emoluments of the village officials in land and fees.

These village communities have outlived dynasties, revolutions, invasions, and what appeared to be utter destruction. For years a village may have been depopulated by pillage and massacre; but still when tranquil times return, and possession is again possible, the scattered villagers will return to their old homesteads. A generation may pass away, but their sons will return, and re-establish the village on its ancient site, rebuild the houses which their fathers occupied, and again cultivate the fields which had been in the hands of their families from time immemorial.[19]

Antiquity and permanence of the Hindú Village system.

---

[18] Elphinstone.

[19] Sir Charles Metcalfe's minute, *quoted by Elphinstone*. See also Elphin-

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Village system as indicated by Manu.

The code of Manu does not expressly define the constitution of the Hindú village, as it is laid down in the preceding paragraphs; but there seems every reason to believe that the village, as it existed in the time when the code was promulgated, corresponded in all essentials with the village of the present day. The object of the lawgiver was not so much to define existing institutions, as to lay down laws and precepts; and, consequently, the data to be derived from the Institutes of Manu must be chiefly gathered from the laws respecting pastures and landmarks.

Law respecting the surrounding pasture land.

"A space for pasture," says Manu, "should be left round every village. In breadth it should be three hundred cubits, or three throws of a large stick. In the case of cities, or large towns, the surrounding pasture should be three times as broad. Every field bordering on the pasture land should be enclosed by a hedge, so high that a camel cannot look over it; and every gap through which a dog or a boar could thrust its head should be stopped. If the bordering fields are not enclosed in this mànner, and cattle enter in and damage the rising crops, the herdsman of the cattle shall not be punished. If, however, cattle in charge of a herdsman work mischief in a field near a highway, the herdsman must be fined a hundred panas; but the owner of such a field ought to secure it against cattle that have no herdsman. In other fields the owner of cattle working mischief should be fined one pana and a quarter; but in all cases the value of the damaged grain must be paid. No fine should be levied for damage done by a cow within ten days of her calving; or by a bull which is kept for breeding purposes; or by cattle which have been consecrated to the deity."[20]

---

stone's *History of India*, Book ii. chapter 3, which must always be regarded as a high authority on Indian revenue matters. Numerous other authorities have also been consulted, but specific references are unnecessary.

[20] Manu, viii. 237—242.

As regards boundaries and landmarks, the following directions are laid down in the code:—

Village boundaries and landmarks.

"In cases of dispute between two villages, or two landholders, respecting a boundary, the Raja, or his Judge, should investigate the matter in the month of Jayaishtha [about October], when the landmarks can be seen more distinctly than at other times. Some landmarks should be concealed under-ground, such as large pieces of stone, bones, tails of cows, bran, ashes, potsherds, bricks, tiles, charcoal, pebbles, sand, and other such substances, which are not corroded by the earth. Trees should also be planted along the boundary, with clustering shrubs and creepers. Lakes, wells, pools, and streams, should also be made on the common limits; and temples dedicated to the gods should also be built there. By these marks, or by the course of a stream, or by long-continued possession, the Judge may ascertain the limit between the lands of two parties in litigation; but should there be still a doubt, he must have recourse to the declarations of witnesses. These witnesses should be examined in the presence of all the townsmen or villagers, or of both of the contending parties. They should put earth on their heads, and wear red mantles, and chaplets of red flowers; and they should be sworn by the reward of all their several good actions to give correct evidence concerning the boundaries; and their evidence should be recorded in writing, together with all their names. Those who give true evidence are absolved from all their sins; but such as give unjust evidence shall be fined two hundred panas. If no witnesses are forthcoming, four men who dwell on the four sides of the two villages should be called upon in the presence of the Raja to make a decision concerning the boundary. If there be no such neighbours dwelling on the sides of the two villages, nor any men whose ancestors had lived there since the villages were built, nor other inhabitants who could give evidence respecting the boundaries, the Judge must examine those who dwell in the jungle, such as hunters, fowlers, herdsmen, fishers, diggers for roots,

Investigation of disputes respecting landmarks.

snake-catchers, and gleaners, and fix the boundary between the two villages according to their evidence. As regards the bounds of arable fields, wells, pools, gardens, and houses, the testimony of the nearest neighbours on every side must be regarded as the best means of decision. Should they say anything untrue, each of them must be made to pay five hundred panas. If the boundary cannot be ascertained, the Raja should consult the future benefit of both parties, and make a boundary line between their lands."[21]

Government of villages as laid down by Manu.

The scheme laid down by the code of Manu for the government of villages may be thus indicated:—

"A Raja should appoint a lord of one village, a lord of ten villages, a lord of twenty villages, a lord of a hundred villages, and a lord of a thousand villages. The lord of one village should report any robberies, tumults, or other evils which may arise within his district, to the lord of ten villages. In like manner the lord of ten villages should report to the lord of twenty; the lord of twenty to the lord of a hundred; and the lord of a hundred to the lord of a thousand."[22]

The head-man, or lord of one village.

Of all these officers, the head-man, or lord of a village, seems to be the only one who has retained his office intact to the present day; with this difference, however, that whereas in the time of the code the post was apparently in the gift of the Raja, it is now generally hereditary in a particular family.

The Purgunnah, comprising a hundred villages.

The division known as a Purgunnah appears to correspond to the hundred villages; but the officers employed in it are only known by their continuing to enjoy the hereditary lands or fees; or at the most by their being depositaries of the registers and

---

[21] Manu, viii. 245, 265.

[22] Manu, vii. 115—117.

Modern traces of other divisions.

records connected with the purgunnah. The other divisions may also be faintly traced, but the occupations of the respective officers appear to have altogether passed away.[23]

Emoluments of the District Officers in the time of Manu.

The emoluments of the several provincial officers are clearly specified in the code. The head of a village was to receive as his daily perquisite, the fees of food, drink, fuel, and other articles, which according to the law ought to be presented by the villagers to the Raja. The fees from every village being thus appropriated by its respective head-man, a separate provision had to be made for the lords of many villages. The lord of ten villages was to receive the produce of two ploughed lands; the lord of twenty villages was to receive the produce of ten ploughed lands; but why the one should receive five times as much as the other is somewhat unintelligible. The lord of a hundred villages was to receive the entire produce of one village; and the lord of a thousand villages was to receive the produce of one large town.[24]

Governors of cities.

Besides these lords of villages, or districts, a Governor was to be appointed in every city or capital, with high rank and authority, for the supervision of the provincial administration, and especially to watch the proceedings of the lords and villages. This supervision appears to have been very necessary. According to the code, the servants of the Raja who were appointed to guard the villages, were generally knaves, who seized what belonged to other men; and it was suggested that the Raja should confiscate the property of such knaves, and banish them from the realm.[25]

---

[23] Elphinstone's *History of India.* The head-man of a village is called Patel in the Dekhan, and in the centre and west of Hindústan; Mandel in Bengal; and Mokaddam in many other places, especially where there are, or have lately been, hereditary village landholders. The accountant is called Patwari in Hindústan; Kulkarni and Karnam in the Dekhan and south of India; and Tallati in Guzerat. The watchman is called Pasban, Gorayet, Peik, Douraha, etc., in Hindútan; Mhar in the Dekhan; Tillari in the south of India; Paggi in Guzerat. The lord of ten or twenty villages was called Naikwari, Tarref, etc. The lord of a hundred villages, or Purgunnah, is called Desmuk or Desai in the Dekhan, and his registrar is called Despandi; in the north of India they are called Choudris and Canongos. The lords of a thousand villages were called Sirdesmuks in the Dekhan, and their provinces are called Sirkars. Their hereditary registrars are still to be found under the name of Sir Despandis. See Elphinstone's *Appendix.*

[24] Manu, vii. 118, 119.

System of taxation in return for protection.

The system of taxation is so clearly indicated in the code, that it would appear to have been universally understood and recognized by the entire community. The principle is laid down in the first instance, that the taxes should be so adjusted that whilst merchants and others should gain a fair profit, the Raja should receive a just compensation for the protection which he afforded to the whole community. Accordingly, in levying a tax upon trades, the Raja was to consider not only the prime cost of the goods and the prices at which they are sold, but also the cost of conveyance and travelling, the expense of subsistence, the outlay necessary for insuring the security of goods, and the net profits which remained after all these charges had been defrayed. In this manner the Raja was to draw an annual revenue from his dominions by little and little; just as the leech, the bee, and the sucking calf take in their natural food. Here a new idea is expressed, which is unknown to modern taxation. The assessment was made not on the incomes of the people; but on what might be regarded as their

Tax upon traders.

Assessment on yearly savings.

---

[25] Manu, vii. 121—124.

yearly savings. Thus the Raja was to take one-fiftieth of all the cattle, gems, and gold and silver, which his subjects added every year to their capital stock; a law which not only furnished a convenient pretext for oppression and confiscation, but probably originated those habits of hoarding wealth in concealment, which have characterized the people for ages, but which are now fast disappearing from all parts of the country under British rule. As regards land revenue, the Raja was to take one-sixth, one-eighth, or one-twelfth of the grain produce, according to the difference of soil. He was also to take one-sixth of the clear annual increase of trees, flesh-meat, honey, ghee, perfumes, medicinal substances, liquids, flowers, roots, fruit, gathered leaves, potherbs, grass, earthen pots, articles made of leather and cane, and all things made of stone. The meaner inhabitants of the Raj, who lived by petty traffic, were only to be required to pay a mere trifle to the Raja as an annual tax; whilst those who supported themselves by labour, such as low handicraftsmen, artificers, and others, were required to give one day's labour every month to the Raja. But even though the Raja might be dying of want, he was never to receive any tax from a Bráhman who was learned in the Veda.[26]

Land revenue.

Raja's share of products and manufactures.

Tax on petty traders and artisans.

Exemption of Bráhmans.

Paramount duty of a Raja to protect his subjects.

But whilst the right of the Raja to levy taxes is duly maintained, the corresponding duty of protection on his part is asserted with a persistency which seems to intimate that it was frequently neglected.

"The Raja," says Manu, "who takes a sixth part of the

---

[26] Manu, vii. 127—138.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

grain, together with the market duties and tolls, and the small daily presents for his household, and the fines for offenders, and yet fails to protect his subjects, the same will fall after death into a region of horror. By protecting his people a Raja obtains a sixth part of all their religious merits; but by failing to protect them he will be visited by a sixth part of all their iniquities."[27]

3rd, Administration of justice.

The administration of justice, which finds expression in the code of Manu, seems to be little more than a Brahmanizing of the old patriarchal system, in which the Raja dispensed justice according to his own rude and primitive notions of right and wrong. A scheme is laid down by which the Raja may administer justice, or employ a deputy who is a Bráhman; but in the former case he is to be guided by the interpretations of the Bráhmans. The laws themselves refer to trust property, property which has no owner, lost property, treasure trove, and stolen goods; also to debts, money lending, sureties, deposits, false testimony, oaths, and ordeals; and finally, to damage to cattle, neglect of lands, and inheritance in the case of undivided and divided families. These may now be indicated in due order.

Brahmanizing of the old patriarchal system.

The administration of justice by a Raja, assisted by Bráhmans, is thus laid down in the code:—

"A Raja," says Manu, "should enter his Court of Justice with a grave and composed demeanour, and be accompanied by Bráhmans and Counsellors capable of advising him. There he should take his seat in suitable attire, with his mind attentively fixed, and should decide cases according to the law. Should he desire it, a Bráhman who is not a sacrificial priest, may interpret the law to him; but if a Raja looks stupidly on whilst cases are being decided by a Súdra, his Raj will be troubled like a cow who is sinking in deep mire. When the Raja cannot preside in person, he should appoint a Bráhman of eminent learning to be Chief Judge, accompanied by three Bráhmans to sit as Assessors; and this assembly is called the Court of Brahma with four faces."[28]

---

[27] Manu, viii. 302—311.

Court of Brahma with four faces.

Conduct of the Raja or Chief Judge.

"The Raja, or the Chief Judge appointed by the Raja, should commence proceedings by doing reverence to the deities who guard the world, and then enter on the trial of causes. He should understand what is expedient or inexpedient, but he should consider only what is law or not law; and in this spirit he should examine all disputes between parties in the order of their several castes. He should see through the thoughts of men by their voice, colour, countenance, limbs, eyes, and action; for the internal workings of the mind are to be discovered from the limbs, the look, the motion of the body, the gesticulation, the speech, and the changes of the eye and face."[29]

Laws respecting property.

The more important precepts of Manu as regards property are as follows:—

Trusts.

"Property should be held in trust by the Raja, when it belongs to a Brahmachári or an infant, until the Brahmachári has ceased his studentship, or until the infant has attained his sixteenth year. In like manner, property must be held in trust by the Raja when it belongs to a barren woman, or to a woman without sons, or to women without kindred, or to women whose husbands are in distant places, or to widows who are true to their lords, or to women who are afflicted with sickness. Such kinsmen as appropriate the property of women who are yet living should be punished by a just Raja with the severity due to thieves."[30]

Property without owners.

"Property for which no owner appears may be detained

---

[28] Manu, viii. 1—11; 20—22.

[29] Manu, viii. 23—26.

[30] Manu, viii. 27—29.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

by the Raja for three years; if the owner appear within that time he may take his property, but otherwise it may be confiscated by the Raja. The Raja may take a sixth, or a tenth, or a twelfth of the property which has been so detained by him."[31]

Lost property.

"Property which has been lost by one man and found by another should be secured by the Raja, who should commit it to the care of trustworthy men. If any should be convicted of stealing such property, the Raja should condemn the thief to be trampled upon by an elephant. If the right owner should claim the property, the Raja may restore it to him, after deducting a sixth or a twelfth part. But if a man set up a false claim, he may be fined either an eighth of his own property, or else a proportion of the value of the goods which he has falsely claimed."[32]

Treasure trove.

"A learned Bráhman who finds a hidden treasure may take it without any deduction being made to the Raja, for he is lord of all. But if the treasure be discovered by the Raja, he may lay up half in his treasury, and give the other half to the Bráhmans. The Raja is entitled to the half of all treasure trove and precious minerals, in return for the general protection which he affords, and because he is the lord paramount of all the soil."[33]

Stolen property.

"All property seized by robbers must be restored by the Raja to the rightful owners, whatever may be their caste; for a Raja who keeps the stolen goods for himself incurs the guilt of a robber."[34]

Patriarchal character of the law.

The foregoing laws thus seem to refer to a period when the administration was more patriarchal in its character than it became in later years. The Raja appears as the guardian of all infants and unprotected women, and to hold their property in trust. He also detained all unclaimed property, and it is remarkable that any one stealing such property was to

---

[31] Manu, viii. 30—33.

[32] Manu, viii. 34—36.

[33] Manu, viii. 37—39.

[34] Manu, viii. 40.

Punishment of elephant trampling.

be trampled to death by an elephant; the severity of the sentence being probably caused by the frequency of the crime.[35] The privileges of Bráhmans as regards treasure trove have already been treated elsewhere.

Miscellaneous law.

The laws as regards debts, money-lending, sureties, and deposits, are as follows:—

Debts.

"When a creditor sues a debtor before the Raja, the debtor should be required by the Raja to pay whatever is proved to be true, together with a small fine. Should a defendant deny the debt, then the plaintiff must call a witness who was present when the loan was made, or produce other evidence. When a defendant admits a debt he must pay a fine of five per cent.; but if he denies the debt, and it be afterwards proved against him, he must pay a fine of ten per cent."[36]

Money-lending.

"A money-lender may take an eightieth part of a hundred, or one and a quarter per cent., as interest per month for the money lent, provided he has a pledge. But if the money-lender has no pledge he may take two per cent. as a month's interest. He may also take interest per month according to the caste of the borrower; that is, two per cent. from the Bráhman, three per cent. from a Kshatriya, four per cent. from a Vaisya, and five per cent. from a Súdra. Stipulated interest beyond the legal rate is invalid, and is called usury."[37]

Bottomry.

"A lender of interest on safe carriage, who has agreed on the place and time, shall not receive such interest, if the goods are not carried to the place, or within the time. The amount of interest should be settled by men well acquainted with sea voyages and journeys by land."[38]

---

[35] A sepoy convicted of conspiracy was subjected by the Guicowar of Baroda to this demoralizing punishment as late as 1866; but since then, at the instigation of the paramount power, the punishment of elephant trampling has been abolished by the Guicowar.

[36] Manu, viii. 47—59.

[37] Manu, viii. 152.

[38] Manu, viii. 156, 157.

Sureties.

"The man who becomes surety for the appearance of a debtor, and does not produce him, shall be liable for the debt; but the son of such a surety shall not be liable; nor shall a son be liable for money which his father has idly promised to musicians and actresses, or lost at play, or owes for spirituous liquors, or for the balance of a fine or toll. If, however, the father shall have been surety for the payment of the money, and not for the mere appearance of the debtor, then his heirs may be compelled to discharge the debt. Again, if a debtor borrows money and expends it for the use of his family, and afterwards dies, the money must be paid by that family, whether it be divided or undivided, out of the estate."[39]

Deposits.

"If a defendant refuses to restore a deposit, and there are no witnesses, the judge should employ artful spies to deposit gold with the same man; then if the defendant restore the deposit given to him by the spies, there is nothing against him; but if he refuse to restore it, he shall be compelled to pay the value of both deposits."[40]

Exorbitant rates of interest in India.

The foregoing details call for very brief observations. Those which refer to debts and interest are perfectly simple; and the interest chargeable per month is quite in accordance with modern custom, although it may appear exorbitant in European eyes. The law which relates to the lender of interest on the safe carriage of goods despatched by land or sea, seems to approximate as regards sea voyages to the English law of bottomry; in which the owner of the ship borrows money on the security of his ship, and is not called upon to repay the advance unless the vessel returns in safety. The text is valuable as it indicates that sea voyages are not unknown to the Hindús in the time of Manu;

Sea voyages of the Hindús proved by the law of Bottomry.

---

[39] Manu, viii. 158–160, 166.

[40] Manu, viii. 182–184.

although later Pundits have declared that voyages by sea were only permissible in the yugas which preceded the age of Kali. The law as regards sureties was invested with a moral significance in connection with musicians and actresses, gaming and drinking, which is eminently Brahmanical; but its efficacy in restraining men from such amusements may well be doubted. The law as regards deposits betrays that talent for artifice which still characterizes the Hindú.

Moral significance of the laws respecting sureties.

Artifice in the law respecting deposits.

False testimony.

The laws respecting false testimony, oaths, and ordeals, are as follows:—

> "A witness who knowingly says anything different from that which he had seen or heard, will fall headlong after death into a region of horror, and be debarred from heaven. In some cases, however, the witness who gives false evidence from a pious motive, shall not lose a seat in heaven; such evidence is called by wise men the speech of the gods. Whenever the death of a man, whether a Bráhman, Kshatriya, Vaisya, or Súdra, would be occasioned by true evidence, falsehood may be spoken, and is even preferable to truth. Such witnesses must offer cakes and milk as oblations to the goddess Saraswatí; and thus they will fully expiate the venial sin of benevolent falsehood."[41]

Oaths.

> "No man should take an oath in vain on a trifling occasion, or he will be punished both in this life and in the next; but it is not a deadly sin to take a light oath to women at a time of dalliance, or on a proposal of marriage, or in the case of grass or fruit eaten by a cow, or of wood taken for a sacrifice, or of a promise made for the preservation of a Bráhman."[42]

Ordeals.

The want of veracity displayed in the foregoing laws unfortunately continues to be a characteristic of the Hindús; and may possibly have originated the trial by ordeal, which is applied by the code to witnesses alone. Manu says:—

---

[41] Manu, viii. 75, 103—105.

[42] Manu, viii. 111, 112.

> "Sometimes a witness may be required to hold fire, or to dive under water, or to touch the heads of his children and wife; and if the fire does not burn him, or if the water does not speedily force him to the surface, or if he does not speedily meet with misfortune, his testimony must be held to be true."[43]

Pastoral law respecting damage to cattle.

The law respecting damages to cattle is chiefly remarkable for its pastoral simplicity. Manu says:—

> "If any damage or hurt as regards cattle takes place in the day-time, the blame falls on the herdsman; but if it takes place in the night-time, the blame falls on the owner, if the cattle be kept in his own house. The wages of herdsmen are paid in milk, and they may with the assent of the master milk the best cow out of ten; the wages, however, may be paid in a different mode. If a beast has strayed through want of care on the part of the herdsman, and has been destroyed by reptiles, or killed by dogs, or has died by falling into a pit, the herdsman should make good the loss; but he should not be required to do so if the beast has been carried off by robbers, and if, after proclamation and pursuit, he gives notice to his master. When cattle die, the herdsman should carry their ears, hides, tails, and other portions to his master, and also point out their limbs. When a flock of sheep or goats is attacked by wolves, and the herdsman does not go out to repel the attack, he shall make good every sheep or goat that is slain; but if, whilst they are grazing together near a wood, a wolf suddenly springs out and kills one, the herdsman shall not be responsible."[44]

Neglect of land by cultivators.

The law respecting neglect of land is of real significance. The question of whether land in India was originally the property of the sovereign or the cultivator, has long been a subject of controversy. It has been ruled that the Raja was not the actual owner of the soil, but only the owner of a share of the crop. According, however, to Manu, the cultivator is not only bound to pay the established share of the crop to the Raja, but is under an obligation to keep the land in good cultivation, so that the Raja should be no loser by any negligence. Manu says:—

---

[43] Manu, viii. 114, 115.

[44] Manu, viii. 230—236.

> "If land be injured by the fault or neglect of the farmer, he shall be called upon to pay ten times as much as the Raja's share of the crop; but if the injury has been caused by the fault of his servants without his knowledge, he shall only be called upon to pay five times the Raja's share."[45]

The question of land tenures in India can, however, only be decided in dealing with the later periods of Hindú history.

Undivided and divided families.

The law as regards undivided and divided families involves a change in the national usage which is of some significance. Manu says:—

> "After the death of the father and mother, the brothers may assemble and divide among themselves the paternal estate; but they have no power over it while their parents live [unless the father choose to distribute it]. The elder brother may take entire possession of the patrimony; and the others may live under him, as they lived under their father [unless they choose to be separated]."[46]

Here it should be remarked that the passages within brackets are not to be found in the original texts, but are the glosses of Kullúka, the comment-

---

[45] Manu, viii. 243.

[46] Manu, ix. 104, 105.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

ator. The inference therefore seems to follow that in ancient times the general custom was for families to live undivided; but that as society progressed, the practice of dividing the family property among the several members came gradually into vogue. A very large proportion of Hindú families are still undivided.

Criminal law.

Severe punishment of thieves and cheats.

Criminal law amongst the Hindús presents but few points of significance. Those relating to breaches of caste, and injury to women, have already been treated in foregoing chapters.[47] The laws respecting theft are, however, worthy of special notice from their extreme severity. Manu says:—

> "Burglars who break a wall or partition, and commit theft in the night, should have their hands lopped off, and be impaled over a sharp stake. Cutpurses should be deprived of two fingers for a first offence; of a hand and foot for a second; and suffer death for a third. Those who furnish a thief with fire, food, arms, or apartments, or who receive a thing stolen, should receive the same punishment as the thief. The seller of bad grain for good, and the destroyer of landmarks, should suffer such corporal punishment as will disfigure them. But the worst of all cheats is a goldsmith; and if such a man commits fraud, the Raja should order him to be cut to pieces with razors."[48]

4th, Laws of war.

Four conflicting elements.

The laws of war, as laid down in the code of Manu, present the same strange intermingling of conflicting ideas, which have already been referred to the opposition between the Kshatriya and the Bráhman, between the Vedic period and the Brahmanic period. Moreover, they exhibit that two-fold opposition, which has already been noticed as existing in each period; namely:—

---

[47] See *ante*, chaps. x. and xii.

[48] Manu, ix. 276—278, 291, 292.

First, the opposition which existed in the Vedic age between a warlike community and a peaceful community, the worshippers of Indra and the worshippers of the Maruts.

Secondly, the opposition which prevailed in the Brahmanic period between the soldier and the priest, the Kshatriya and the Bráhman.

Difficulty of tracing each element to an individual community.

Each of these four elements may be traced in the laws respecting war; but the reference of each element to one of the four communities in question is only apparent and probable, and cannot be proved. Thus it is easy to refer all precepts implying praise of valour and contempt of cowardice to a warlike community; but it is difficult to classify such sentiments into Vedic and Brahmanic; although Brahmanic precepts may be occasionally detected by their association with the dogma of merits and demerits which especially belongs to the Brahmanic age. So, in like manner, the references to the value of alliances and diplomacy, and the benevolent laws respecting quarter and fair fighting, may be referred to a peaceful community of priests; but it is difficult to say decisively whether they originated in Vedic times or in Brahmanic times; although, as already seen in the war of the Mahá Bhárata, such precepts were but little regarded by the Kshatriyas of the Vedic period.

Division of the laws of war under four heads.

The laws of war laid down in the code of Manu may now be treated under four several heads, of duties of Rajas in defensive warfare, duties of Rajas in offensive warfare, rules as regards quarter and fair fighting, and treatment of a conquered country. These may now be considered in order.

The duty of a Raja when placed upon the defensive was very simple. Manu says:—

Duties of a Raja in defensive warfare.

"Whenever a Raja is threatened by an enemy of equal or superior force, he must never turn his face from battle, nor forget the duties of the Kshatriya caste to which he belongs, namely, to accept every challenge, to protect the general community, and to honour the Bráhmans. Every Raja who fights briskly to the last will ascend to heaven immediately after death."[49] "The soldier who turns his back to the enemy out of fear, and happens to be slain by his foes, shall take upon his own soul all the sins of his Commander, and shall give to his Commander all the merits of his own virtuous acts."[50]

Incongruity of Brahmanic and Vedic ideas.

Here the incongruity of Brahmanic and Vedic ideas seems abundantly manifest. The Brahmanic dogma of merits and demerits, has been superadded to the old Kshatriya notion, which finds even fuller expression in the Scandinavian belief, that the soul of the valiant soldier who fell in battle would ascend to the heaven of Odin, whilst the coward, or man who died a natural death, descended to the hell of Niflheim. The duties of a Raja after the commencement of the war are of a somewhat hesitating character.

Duties during actual operations.

Advance and retreat.

"When a Raja," says Manu, "perceives that his subjects are firm in their allegiance, and feels that he is powerful against the enemy, he should stand on the defensive. When a Raja knows that his own troops are in good spirits and well supplied, and that his enemy is disheartened and ill provided, he should eagerly march against him. On the other hand, when a Raja is expecting reinforcements, and suffering but little injury meanwhile, he should temporize, When he finds himself weak in troops and beasts of burden, he should remain quietly in camp, and endeavour to make terms. When he perceives that his enemy is in every way stronger than himself, he should detach a portion of his army to amuse the foe, and meantime secure his own safety in some inaccessible locality. When he finds himself open to attack on all sides, he should seek the protection of a just and powerful Raja, and propitiate him with all the honours which should be paid to a father. But should a Raja find that the alliance is a source of evil, he should wage war alone. In a word, a Raja should so conduct his affairs, that neither an ally, nor a neutral, nor an enemy should ever gain an advantage over him; and this is the sum of political wisdom."[51]

---

[49] Manu, vii. 87—89.

[50] Manu, vii. 87—89.

Alliance.

Duties of a Raja in offensive warfare.

The duty of a Raja in offensive warfare is of a decided character.

Invading an enemy's territory.

The march.

"When a Raja," says Manu, "invades the territory of an enemy, he should advance towards the enemy's metropolis. He should commence his march either in the spring or in the autumn, so that he may find either the vernal or the autumnal crops on the ground; but if he has a clear prospect of victory, or if his enemy is weakened by disasters, he may commence his march at any season. He must always, however, be upon his guard against secret friends who are in the service of a hostile Raja; and against all those who bring messages from the enemy's camp. On a plain he should fight with chariots and cavalry; in a region where there is water, he should fight on boats and elephants; in a woody country he should fight with bows and arrows; and where the ground is clear he should fight with swords and targets, and other weapons adapted to those quarters. In blockading an enemy, a Raja should sit encamped, and lay waste the surrounding country; spoiling the grass, wells, fuel, and trenches of the enemy, and harass-

Secret friends and emissaries.

Tactics.

Blockades.

---

[51] Manu, vii. 94, 95.

ing him night and day. A Raja should secretly gain over all such leading men from the side of his enemy as can be brought in with safety. He should keep himself thoroughly informed of all that his enemies are doing; and then when a fortunate moment is offered by heaven, he should give battle without hesitation. At the same time, however, he should be more desirous of reducing his enemy by negotiation, or by suitable bribes, or by creating dissension, than by risking all upon a battle."[52]

Rules of fair fighting and quarter.

The rules as regard fair fighting and quarter are identical with those which are laid down in the Mahá Bhárata.[53] Manu says:—

Prohibited weapons.

"Men should not fight with concealed weapons, nor with arrows mischievously barbed, nor with poisoned arrows, nor with darts blazing with fire. Again, a horseman, or a soldier in a chariot, should not fight a man who is on foot. Quarter should be given to the following individuals, namely:—one who sues for life with joined hand; one whose hair is loose and obstructs his sight; one who is sitting down fatigued; one who surrenders himself a prisoner; one who is asleep; one who has lost his coat of mail; one who is disarmed; one who is only looking on, or fighting another man; one who is grievously wounded, or terrified, and one who is running away."[54]

Individuals who are to receive quarter.

Policy to be pursued in a conquered country.

The course to be followed by a Raja after a conquest is worthy of notice, as it may possibly throw light upon the policy by which the Aryan conquerors established their empire over Hindústan. Manu says:—

"When a Raja has conquered a country, he should respect the deities which are worshipped in that country, as well as the virtuous priests of those deities. He should also distribute largesses, and reassure the people by loud proclamation. He should respect the laws of the country, and place it under a Prince of the royal race, and gratify him with presents of jewels. Or he may form an alliance with the Raja whom he has conquered, and act in unison with him. He should also pay due attention to any Raja who has supported his cause, and to any Raja who has been hostile to his ally; so that both from an ally and an enemy he may secure the fruit of his expedition. By securing a firm ally a Raja obtains greater strength than by gaining wealth and territory."

---

[52] Manu, vii. 181—199.

[53] See *ante*, Vol. I. Part ii. chap. 11.

[54] Manu, vii. 90—93.

These precepts are curious, inasmuch as they exhibit the Oriental custom of conciliating a people and consolidating a conquest. No change of rulers was carried out, and no change of laws; and an alliance was merely formed for the purpose of increasing the military strength of the conqueror, without any reference whatever to the moral or material welfare of the people. The utter failure of this policy to maintain order and law, and to provide for the defence of the country at large, will form hereafter one of the most important political lessons, which are to be gathered from the history of India under native rule.

Its failure.

CHAPTER XIV

HISTORICAL RESUMÉ.

Absence of perspective in the ancient history of India.

The two earliest ages in Hindú history, namely, the Vedic and Brahmanic periods, have now been investigated; and the results have been classified into chapters, and reduced to an available form. But still the labour of the historian is incomplete. The utter want of perspective, which has hitherto characterized the early legends of India, as it characterizes those of ancient Greece, has only been partially filled up. It is true that the ideas and institutions of the Vedic Aryans have been distinguished from those of the Bráhmans; and so far the task may be regarded as satisfactory; inasmuch as the two periods have for ages been blended into one in the belief of the people of India. But with this exception, the ordinary requirements of history appear to be altogether wanting. Imagination may fill the ear with the roar of distant ages, and please the eye with visions of primeval men; but there is no vista of the past carrying the mind back by successive stages to the earliest glimmer of legend. Two pictures are certainly presented, one of the Vedic times, and the other of Brahmanic times; and it appears to be established that the two differed widely from each other. But in each case there is a

No chronological sequence beyond the distinction between the Vedic and Brahmanic epochs.

want of chronological sequence. The annals of the Vedic Aryans, and the annals of the Bráhmans, are alike unknown; and no record whatever has been preserved of the circumstances under which the two have been blended together; although the process by which the ideas and institutions of the Vedic age have been Brahmanized in the Hindú literature has been partially explained. The question, therefore, remains to be solved of whether it is possible, by comparing the different phases of civilizations which appear to belong to different Epic traditions, to discover the clue to a chronological sequence, which shall in any degree correspond to the notion of annals that is implied in the modern idea of history.

Possibility of discovering a clue to a sequence.

Limits of the inquiry.

Before, however, attempting this task, it will be necessary to define clearly the limits of the inquiry. Many questions have been passed over in the present work, which have been largely and profitably discussed by eminent Sanskrit scholars, and especially by the great school of German philology of which Professors Lassen and Weber may be regarded as representatives. Among these questions may be mentioned the origin of the Vedic people, and their apparent line of march before they entered the Punjab; the interpretation of Vedic myths by reference to natural phenomena; the reduction of traditions of individual heroes into allegorical histories of tribes or clans; and the classification of Vedic and Brahmanic literature into epochs, like that which has been attempted with so much success by Professor Max Müller. The importance of these inquiries, as contributions to the history of human development, cannot be denied; but they can scarcely be regarded

Questions passed over in the present history.

as having a direct bearing upon a history of the Hindús, which has been mainly undertaken for the purpose of illustrating the civilization and institutions of the people, with especial reference to their present condition and future prospects, and to the political relations of the British Government with the great Indian feudatories of the crown. Moreover, an exhaustive investigation of these points would necessitate a preliminary training of many years in purely philological studies; and such a training would tend to wean away the mind from such historical criticism as is based upon the lives of men, rather than upon their languages. Finally, with all respect for the eminent scholars whose names have been mentioned, grave doubts may perhaps be expressed as regards the reduction of many of the Epic traditions into descriptions of natural phenomena, or allegorical histories of tribes or clans. That the hymns of the Rig-Veda abound with mythical allusions of the former character cannot be doubted; and Professor Max Müller's forthcoming translation of the hymns will in all probability open up a new field of thought in this direction. But, as regards the Hindú legends in the Epics, another question has to be taken into consideration; namely, whether natural phenomena has not often been described in language and illustrated by incidents, which have been borrowed from authentic tradition. Again, it is a comparatively easy task to select certain incidents in the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana, and point out the striking resemblance which they bear to astronomical phenomena; but it would be as easy to select certain incidents from modern history and biography, in which the resemblance would

Unsatisfactory character of modern modes of interpretation.

References to natural phenomena in the Vedic hymns.

Objections to the interpretation of Epic traditions by reference to natural phenomena.

be equally startling. Unless, therefore, the upholders of the so-called mythological theory are prepared to show that the whole of the Epics are amenable to a mythological interpretation, their method may possibly prove an *ignis fatuus*, tending in many cases to lead the student astray from the beaten track of authentic tradition into the field of conjectural allegory. The attempts which have been made to transmute the Tale of Troy, and indeed the whole mass of Greek legends, into similar myths, can by no means be regarded as satisfactory; and other attempts which have been made to reduce the sacred traditions of the Hebrews to the same category are still more open to criticism. The same remarks would in some measure apply to the theory which would reduce some of the traditions of individual heroes into allegorical histories of tribes or clans. Here, however, a distinction must be laid down between mythological legends of the gods, and what appear to be historical traditions of heroes. Legends of Indra and other gods, and the wars between gods and demons, appears to be generally capable of allegorical interpretation. But the case seems somewhat different as regards the Epic traditions of individual heroes, who have never been admitted into the Hindú Pantheon, or who have only been deified at a comparatively recent period. As regards this latter class of traditions, the simple method has been preferred of stripping the authentic tradition as far as possible of what appeared to be the Brahmanical accumulations of a later period, and thus attempting to restore the original story as far as may be to its pristine form; referring the Brahmanical additions to the later age in which they seem to have

Reduction of traditions of heroes into allegorical histories of clans applicable only to mythological legends, and not to traditions of heroes.

originated, and proposing to consider them hereafter in connection with the history of the period to which they appear to belong, namely, the age of Brahmanical revival. This method is left to stand upon its merits. Indeed, controversy would be out of place in the present work, and is, perhaps, best avoided; and the allegorical modes of interpretation are thus left to rest upon the authority of the eminent scholars by whom they have been suggested.[1]

First scene in Indian history—the Vedic Aryans in the Punjab.

The first scene in the history of India opens upon the Aryan occupation of the Punjab. A teeming population had apparently been settled for generations, and perhaps for centuries, in the land of the five or seven rivers. That the people had attained a certain civilization is evident from the allusions to houses, chariots, mailed armour, ships, and merchandise, which are to be found in the Vedic hymns as well as in the Epics. Their means of subsistence appear to have been generally drawn from lands and cattle; and doubtless their civilization varied, not only according to the affluence or otherwise of different families, but according to the fact of whether they dwelt in long established and well protected villages, or in new and outlying settlements recently cleared from the jungle, and bordering on an alien population. In that remote period the river Saraswatí flowed into the Indus; and it is easy to infer from hymns already quoted, that a line of Aryan settlements was to be found on the banks of both rivers. In the subsequent age of

---

[1] It is much to be regretted that the works of the leading continental Orientalists have not been reproduced in an English form. In India there are many scholars, both Native and European, who would be glad of such a republication of the works of Lassen, Weber, and some others, who are at present only known at second-hand or by reputation.

Second scene in Indian history: —the Aryan conquest of Hindústan.

Vast unrecorded interval between the two.

Brahmanism, the Aryans had conquered Hindústan, and the geography of the region bordering on the Saraswatí had almost faded away from the national memory; and but little was known beyond the fact that the river itself disappeared in the sand long before it reached the Indus. The period between the establishment of Vedic settlements on the Saraswatí, and the Aryan conquest of Hindústan, probably covers an interval of thousands of years; and yet the only positive facts which have been preserved in connection with this period are the disappearance of the Saraswatí and the rise of Brahmanism. Certain inferences, however, may be drawn from the Epic legends and traditions which have been reproduced in the present work, as well as from obscure and isolated allusions in other sacred books. It should, however, be added that whatever may have been the date in which the Epics and Institutes of Manu received their present form, the old Vedic and Brahmanic ages preceded the advent of Buddhism; and, consequently, they preceded the invasion of Alexander, and cannot be illustrated by the coins and inscriptions which have been hitherto discovered, and which appear to belong to a later era. Probably, however, it will be seen hereafter that the history of the Buddhist period furnishes further illustrations of the Brahmanic era, in the same way that Brahmanic literature has been found to furnish illustrations of the Vedic period.

Classification of different phases of civilization in Epic traditions: —the patriarchal, heroic, and monarchical.

Under such circumstances it may perhaps be as well to compare the different phases of civilization which appear to characterize different legends, and then to attempt a classification of the results in a form corresponding to annals. In the history of

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

every people of which a record has been preserved there appear to have been three political stages, namely :—

1st, The Patriarchal.

2nd, The Heroic.

3rd, The Monarchical.

Modification of the three stages of civilization by human nature.

Each of these stages, however, may be more or less modified by three different and powerful elements, which have their origin in human nature, and are more or less common to all classes of the community, namely :—

Instincts.

1st, The instinctive desires which develope into passions.

Democratic yearnings.

2nd, The yearning after individual freedom and power, which finds expression in democracy.

Religious aspirations.

3rd, The higher aspirations after temporal and spiritual good, which are involved in the conception of religion.[2]

Action of human nature upon the three stages of political development the essence of history.

A critical narrative of the modifications produced upon the three stages of political development by the instincts, the yearnings of democracy, and the aspirations of religion, would form the very essence of history; and would prove infinitely more valuable than the narratives of migrations, wars, and court intrigues, to which the name of history has been often improperly applied. Accordingly, it may be advisable to arrange the historical conclusions to be gathered from the Hindú traditions as far as possible under the three heads of patriarchal, heroic, and monarchical; and at the same time to inquire step by step how far each stage in Hindú history has been modified by the three influences indicated.

---

[2] This classification is not strictly logical, as democratic and religious yearnings might with certain reservations be reckoned amongst the instincts. But the classification is practical and intelligible, and controversy is avoided by its adoption.

1st, Patriarchal age of Hindú history illustrated by the war of Bhárata and adventures of the Pándavas at Viráta.

The most valuable illustrations of the patriarchal age of Hindú history are perhaps to be gathered from the tradition of the great war of Bhárata, and the episode, which describes the adventures of the Pándavas in the court of Raja Viráta. These two stories present important differences as regards religious belief, and must, therefore, be considered separately.

Family settlement at Hastinápur involved in the tradition of the war of Bhárata.

The tradition of the war of Bhárata involves in the first instance the settlement of a family at Hastinápur on the banks of the upper Ganges, which had been conquered and cleared by a remote ancestor. The pursuits of this family were eminently patriarchal. The cultivation of land is implied, though not directly expressed; probably because according to the caste system, which was fully in force when the tradition was reduced to its present form, the cultivation of land was left to the Vaisyas and Súdras. The keeping of cattle, however, is sufficiently indicated by the fact that the younger members of the family were accustomed to go out into the pastures at regular intervals for the purpose of marking all the calves, and re-marking all the older cattle. There were two branches in the family, namely, the sons of a reigning Chieftain who were named Kauravas, and those of a deceased Chieftain who were named Pándavas. All were brought up together and trained to defend their crops and cattle against enemies and robbers; and thus they were all more or less proficient in pugilism, wrestling, archery, throwing stones, casting nooses, and hurling chakras. As regards enemies there appears to

Pursuits of the settlers. Agriculture.

Keeping cattle.

Training in the use of arms.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

have been a feud with a neighbouring Raja named Drupada; whilst the Bhíls in the neighbourhood were kept in strict subordination.

Feuds.

Breach between two rival branches of the family.

Subsequently a breach arose between the Kauravas and Pándavas; and the Kauravas remained behind at Hastinápur, whilst the five Pándavas went out with their mother, and founded a new settlement at Indra-prastha on the banks of the Jumná.

Migration of the Pándavas to Indra-prastha.

Laxity as regards marriage in the family traditions.

An episode occurs in connection with this new settlement, which illustrates the prevailing idea as regards marriage. Monogamy and polygamy seem to have been recognized institutions in the family history of the settlement at Hastinápur; but otherwise there appears to have been little sentiment in the marriage unions. A young damsel was induced to become the wife of an aged Chieftain, by the promise that any sons she might bear him should inherit the estate to the exclusion of the heir-apparent. In another case three young sisters were carried away by force to be the wives of a young Raja. Again, the widows of a deceased Kshatriya were made over on his death to his nearest kinsmen, in order that sons might be begotten to inherit the family estate. Lastly, before the Pándavas commenced clearing a new settlement at Indra-prastha, they married one woman amongst them, according to a depraved custom which finds expression in the Vedic hymns; the eldest brother being regarded as the real husband of the lady, whilst the younger brothers were permitted to share his privileges.[3]

Polyandry of the Pándavas.

---

[3] The idea which prevails amongst the Bhooteas, who still practise polyandry, is that a younger brother is entitled to a share of the wife of the eldest brother until he procured a wife of his own; and that in return for this privilege he is

Colonial life at Indra-prastha.

Glimpses of the old colonial life of the five brothers and their joint wife at Indra-prastha, frequently appear beneath the dense overgrowth of later myths. The daily meals were apparently cooked and distributed amongst the brothers, first by the mother and afterwards by the joint wife. The Pándavas cleared their land by burning down the jungle; and in so doing they appear to have come into collision with a Scythian tribe of Nágas or snake worshippers. After the Pándavas had established themselves at Indra-prastha, they gave a great banquet, called a Rajasúya, which appears to have been an assertion of possession or sovereignty, but which is represented in the Mahá Bhárata as a great sacrifice to Indra and the other Vedic deities. Subsequently the Kauravas challenged the Pándavas to a gambling match; and the Pándavas lost both their estate or Raj, and their wife Draupadí; but were subsequently permitted to depart with Draupadí, on the condition that they should absent themselves for thirteen years. The residence in the jungle is chiefly valuable from an illustration which it furnishes of an ancient law, that a wife should never be captured until her husband or husbands had been first conquered.

Clearing the jungle.

Possession asserted by a great feast.

Pándavas lose their wife at a gambling match.

Feud between the Pándavas and Kauravas settled by a war to the knife.

The feud between the Kauravas and Pándavas was subsequently settled by a terrible war; and the narrative becomes more fruitful of illustrations of patriarchal times. The negotiations which preceded the war appear to have been carried on in an age when writing was unknown, for messages were sent between the rival parties by word of mouth. The war

---

bound to render personal service to the household, and is expected to make some presents to the wife. The question of parentage is settled by the mother.

which ensued between the Kauravas and Pándavas was almost like a savage contest between wild beasts. The warriors fought with their fists, feet, and teeth; and cut and hewed and mangled and maimed each other with knives and clubs. Sometimes they threw an enemy down, and knelt upon his breast, and cut off his head; and in one case a warrior drank the blood of his slaughtered enemy with wild exultations of joy. The victory was ultimately gained by the Pándavas, but on the night of their final triumph, their camp was broken open by an ally of the Kauravas who had survived the fray, and their five sons were slaughtered, and the bleeding heads carried off as trophies of the revenge which had been achieved. The Pándavas resigned themselves as they best could to this fearful blow, and ultimately effected a reconciliation with their uncle, whose sons had fallen in the war. They performed the funeral rites of the slain, which are remarkable as showing the absence of all idea of burning the living widow with the dead husband. Finally, the Pándavas returned in triumph to the old family inheritance, and inaugurated their eldest brother Yudhishthira as Raja; and eventually asserted his supremacy as lord paramount of all the neighbouring Rajas, by the celebration of an Aswamedha. In this significant ceremony a horse was let loose by the Pándavas to wander where it pleased; a proceeding which was regarded as a challenge to all the neighbouring Rajas either to acknowledge their submission by letting the horse alone, or to hazard a battle by leading it away. After the lapse of a certain time, said to be a year, during which the Pándavas had asserted and maintained their suzerainty by conquering all who

Horrible revenge.

Absence of Sati.

Return of the Pándavas to Hastinápur, and celebration of an Aswamedha.

interfered with the horse, a great feast was held, in which the horse was killed and roasted as a sacrifice to Indra, and then served up to the conquered Rajas who attended as guests.

Allegorical myths referring to wars against the Scythian Nágas.

The story of the great war is followed by some myths, which throw a curious light upon the subsequent fortunes of the reigning house at Hastinápur. These myths seem to refer to some ancient wars between the Aryans and Scythian Nágas, or snake-worshippers. Parikshit, who succeeded Yudhishthira in the Raj, is said to have been killed by a snake, which seems to indicate that he was slain by a Nága. In revenge his son Janamejaya is said to have performed a sacrifice of snakes, in which the snakes were irresistibly impelled by the divine power of the sacrificing Bráhman to enter the sacred flame; a myth which seems to cover a tradition of some treacherous massacre of Scythic Nágas at a great banquet. In later legends these Nágas are identified with the Buddhists; and it is not improbable that these legends denote the subsequent overthrow of the reigning dynasty in the neighbourhood of Delhi by a Buddhist conqueror.

Free play of the instincts in the patriarchal age.

The illustrations of the patriarchal period, which are furnished by the tradition of the great war of Bhárata, may be further amplified by a consideration of the modifications of the patriarchal stage of human development, which were produced by the instincts, the yearnings of democracy, and the aspirations of religion. At such an early period the instincts appear to have had full play, and the passions became the dominant powers. The Pándavas sacrificed all sentiment to instinct by taking one wife amongst them. They were driven by sheer want to clear out lands and keep cattle in a distant jungle, where they appear to have been surrounded by enemies and robbers. Finally, after they had lost their cleared lands at a gambling match, they were impelled partly by want, and partly by a passion for revenge, to enter upon a bloody fratricidal war, which terminated in the destruction of their rival kinsmen. In like manner the rude democratic yearnings and uncultured religious aspirations partook of the nature of instincts. The young men simply struggled against the authority of the elders, and plunged into a war to the knife contrary to the sober counsel of experienced age. The religious idea consisted in offering to their rude national or tribal gods such savoury meat as pleased themselves, for the sake of imparting a superstitious significance to the possession of cultivated land, and to the assertion of superiority over their neighbours. A few sentiments, chiefly in reference to war, seem to have been more or less recognized by the warrior caste of the patriarchal period. The precept that a wife should not be carried away as prize until her husband had been conquered, has already been noticed. To this may be added the notion that a challenge should always be accepted; that a third party should never interfere whilst two combatants are fighting; that death is to be preferred to dishonour; and that revenge is more or less a virtue. Indeed, the Oriental passion for revenge can only be kept within bounds by a system of order and law, like that which prevails under British administration; and it has always attained a fearful growth both in the patriarchal age, and in the heroic time which follows it, when each man does what seems right in

Democratic struggles of young men against the elders.

Sacrifices associated with the possession of land and assertion of sovereignty.

Sentiments in reference to war.

Force of the Oriental passion for revenge.

his own eyes. The terrible massacre perpetrated by the sons of Jacob, in revenge for the seduction of their sister Dinah by the Prince of Shechem, is a striking illustration of the force of this sentiment. So too is the episode in the life of Samson, whose Philistine wife had been given away by her father to one of his companions; and who thereupon set on fire the standing corn of the Philistines by attaching firebrands to the tails of three hundred foxes. In return for this outrage the Philistines burnt both the faithless wife and her offending father; and again in revenge for this atrocity the Hebrew slew a thousand Philistines with the jaw-bone of an ass. The history of Native rule has for ages been characterized by the story of such bloody feuds, excepting when order has been maintained and justice administered by a paramount power. The tribes beyond the pale of the North-West frontier, who are also more or less beyond the pale of British administration, are probably the relics of the time when the sons of Pándu fought the sons of Dhritaráshtra; and to this day a Sepoy in the pay of the British Government, who has been enlisted from these frontier tribes, will occasionally take a furlough for the definite purpose of settling some old family feud by the slaughter of an enemy; and it is often the case that the enemy will be slaughtered, together with every member of his family down to the babe in arms, so that no one may remain to perpetuate the feud. As, however, the tide of European civilization spreads over Asia, such atrocities will cease to be.

Native rule in India characterized by bloody feuds.

Patriarchal basis of the story of the adventures of the Pándavas at Viráta.

The second tradition which appears to illustrate the patriarchal age, is to be found in the episode in the Mahá Bhárata, which narrates the adventures of the Pándavas and their wife at the court of Raja Viráta.[4] This tradition is presented in an artificial form corresponding to later Hindú fiction; but it certainly has a patriarchal basis. The Raja kept cattle which were carried away by an enemy. Upon this the ryots and herdsmen were required to bring all the remaining cattle into the so-called city, which was probably only a fortified village; whilst the Raja or Chieftain marched out with his servants to pursue the cattle-lifters and recover what had been stolen. The details of this story have perhaps been sufficiently discussed in the previous volume. The main point, however, demands a further consideration, namely, the belief that ghosts can be comforted by the society of a favourite female, a belief which subsequently found a modified expression in the rite of Satí. It should here be remarked, that whilst a belief in ghosts is fully intimated in the hymns of the Rig-Veda, there is apparently no reference in those hymns to the burning of a living widow with a dead husband; nor, indeed, is there any trustworthy reference to such a rite in the Vedic traditions which have been preserved in the Epics. On the contrary, the widows of those who were slain in the great war of Bhárata were not burnt with their dead husbands, but lived many years afterwards; whilst neither a wife nor a concubine of Maharaja Dasaratha, the father of Ráma, was put to death at his decease. But the story of the adventures of the Pándavas at the court of Raja Viráta throws considerable light upon the origin of Satí,

Absence of the rite of Satí from the Vedic hymns.

Idea of the rite involved in the tradition of Viráta.

---

[4] All the Hindú legends here quoted will be found either in the present or previous volume.

before it was associated with Brahmanical doctrines, or even involved the idea of a voluntary sacrifice on the part of the widow. The downright realism of the story has already been commented upon, and furnishes curious illustrations of the primitive customs of patriarchal times. The Commander of the forces falls in love with the waiting maid of the Rání who is his sister. He asks his sister to send the maid to his house, which is accordingly done; but the maid refuses to listen to his proposals, being in fact the wife of the Pándavas in disguise. Subsequently the maid feigns consent, and agrees to give him a meeting; but sends one of her husbands in her room. Accordingly, instead of meeting a mistress, the lover finds himself at the mercy of the husband, who eventually pommels him to death. The brothers of the dead man then determine to burn the living maid with the corpse, partly to avenge his death, and partly to solace the ghost of the deceased with her society in the world of spirits.

Scythian custom of strangling a concubine at the grave of a king.

This idea is perhaps not Aryan but Scythian; that is, if any opposition between Aryan and Scythian is to be recognized. According to Herodotus the Scythians were accustomed on the death of a King to strangle one of his concubines, and bury her with him, without apparently any regard to her willingness or otherwise.[5] The custom might also have been adopted as a safeguard from all attempts at assassination on the part of a wife or concubine.

Viráta a Scythian settlement.

It may be therefore inferred from these data that Raja Viráta was the Chieftain of a Scythian tribe, which had encamped in the neighbourhood of an

---

[5] Herodotus, iv. 71.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Aryan settlement. It does not, however, appear that the Scythians of Viráta were Nágas, or snake-worshippers, like those whom the Pándavas fought in the jungle; although the identity is not impossible, inasmuch as the peculiar habits of snakes, in disappearing in holes beneath the surface of the earth, led to their being worshipped in primitive times as deities of the under-world, and that worship still lingers in every quarter of India.

Difference between the Aryan and Scythian treatment of widows.

The difference between the Aryan and the Scythian custom may now be indicated. Amongst the Aryans, a widow was made over to a kinsman of the deceased husband; amongst the Scythians, a favourite widow or concubine was sent to accompany the dead man. That the Aryan custom ultimately fell into disuse amongst the twice-born castes, and was superseded by the later Satí, subsequently to the promulgation of the Institutes of Manu, has already been shown. Still the fact, that traces of the rite are to be found in a tribe dwelling in India during the Vedic period, seems to justify an investigation of those instinctive passions under which it eventually merged into Brahmanical law.

Difference between the later Brahmanical rite of Satí and the early Scythic form.

Two ideas are involved in the later Brahmanical rite which find no expression in the early Scythic form, namely, that the act was voluntary on the part of the widow, and that it was associated with a well-grounded belief in the immortality of the soul. The widow, indeed, entered the fire with a profound conviction that she would thereby rejoin her husband in abodes of bliss. The Thracians had a similar custom, except that the widow was not burnt, but slaughtered at the grave of her dead husband by her next of kin; and it is curious to note that the doctrine of the immortality of the soul had been promulgated amongst the Thracians at an early period by a religious teacher named Zalmoxis.[6]

Connection of the later rite with a belief in the immortality of the soul.

A further reference to the working of the human heart will indicate, that wherever the belief in a future state has superseded the old crude idea of wandering ghosts, and become the unquestioned faith of the people, a latent desire exists in every wedded pair who have truly lived and loved together, to accompany each other to the tomb; and this desire is stronger in the wife, to whom by common consent a larger measure of delicacy and sentiment is awarded.[7]

Phase in the civilization of India in which Sati originated.

In India this desire appears to have been brought into play during that phase of civilization when sentiment begins to triumph over materialism; when the husband shuddered at the knowledge that after his death his widow would be transferred to a kinsman, and the loving wife revolted at the idea of being made over to the same individual, who might already have had a wife of his own.

Exceptional circumstances tending to the extension of Sati.

There were also exceptional circumstances which would lead to an extension of the rite of Satí. The precautions to be taken by a Raja against being poisoned or assassinated by a female, were rendered unnecessary when the female was condemned to enter the fire after the death of her deceased master, and when the prolonged existence of a Raja was a point of paramount importance to every wife and concubine in his zenana. Again,

---

[6] Herodotus, iv. 94, 95; v. 5.

[7] A story has been preserved in the Arabian Nights, in which a man, who has been thrown upon a distant island, and has married the daughter of the king, finds that it is the custom of the country for the husband to follow a deceased wife to the tomb, and accordingly expresses the greatest possible alarm at the discovery.

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

the unprotected state in which widows were left in a lawless age, and the harsh treatment they would receive as mere dependants in the family, must have driven many a distracted woman to enter the fire and follow the soul of a loving husband. In a still later age, when the Satí became associated with the Brahmanical religion, and was glorified as an act which conferred lasting fame upon the wife, and immortal happiness upon herself and her deceased, it is not surprising that the rite should have become general throughout India. In that terrible hour which succeeds the death of a beloved husband, when the reason is crazed with grief, and the zenana is filled with weeping and wailing, it is easy to understand that a widow would prefer a glorious death before a thousand spectators, and immediate re-union with a deceased husband, to a life of degradation, in which every pleasure would be denied her, and her very presence would be regarded as an evil omen.

Glorification of the Sati by the Bráhmans.

Turning now from the patriarchal age, during which the Vedic Aryans were probably restricted to the neighbourhood of Meerut and Delhi, it becomes necessary to glance at the period during which they descended the valleys of the Ganges and Jumná, and achieved the conquest of Hindústan. This era of Aryan conquest may be regarded as the heroic age of Hindú history, but it is almost a blank to the historical student. In Hebrew history the corresponding period of conquest is depicted with a fulness and truthfulness, which would alone suffice to perpetuate the story to the end of time. Indeed the books of Joshua and Judges comprise the only authentic annals of heroic times, when a patriarchal

2nd, Heroic age of Hindú history identified with the Aryan conquest of Hindústan.

Pictures of the heroic age furnished by Hebrew history.

form of government was modified by the rise of individual warriors, who conquered new territories, and ruled them with a strong arm, by the common consent of the people at large. In Greece the heroic age is obscured by legends, which have yet to be subjected to a tedious critical process before they can be expected to yield historical results. But in India the case is even worse. The age of Aryan conquest may have been one of convulsion and upheaval. The valleys of the Ganges and Jumná may have rung with victories as memorable as those of Joshua, Barak, Gideon, Jephtha, and Samson. Old landmarks may have been destroyed, and a new religious faith superadded to the grosser superstitions of the aborigines. But scarcely a vestige or record of the conquest remains, beyond what philologists may elicit from a study and comparison of languages. Even the names of the men who fought the battles and subjugated the country from the Himálayas to the Vindhya mountains have passed away like the memory of the Shepherd Kings. There may have been old Kshatriya ballads which celebrated the establishment of Aryan empires at Delhi, Agra, Oude, and Bahar. If so, however, they have long been converted into nursery fictions, like the stories of the wars of Bhíma against the Usuras, or the stories of the wars of the four younger Pándavas in connection with the Aswamedha of Yudhishthira. Perhaps also they have been transmuted into obscure myths of wars between the Devatas and Daityas, the gods and demons; which may possibly be identified with the conflict between the fair-complexioned Aryans and the black-skinned aborigines; although in their present form they certainly seem to refer

Meagre relics of the heroic age in India.

Nursery fiction.

Mythological wars.

more frequently to the later antagonism between the Bráhmans and the Buddhists. Here and there in the Epics and Puránas glimpses may perhaps be obtained of Rajas who had conquered the surrounding Rajas, and had thereby attained a certain supremacy as local suzerains. In this manner mention is made of Indra as a temporal sovereign; of Nahusha, Vena, Prithu, Manu, and others; and of a succession of lords paramount who were known as Indras. But these lists, as will be shown hereafter, are utterly untrustworthy. Some of the sovereigns are represented, in the inflated language of Oriental exaggerations, as conquerors of the earth, and rulers over all its continents and seas. Others are said to have conquered the three worlds, namely, earth, heaven, and the under-world. Meantime the reigns of the several rulers are extended over many thousands of years. It will, however, suffice to state here, that with the dubious exceptions noted, not a single relic has hitherto been recovered, which can be regarded as a veritable illustration of the old Aryan conquest of Hindústan.

Glimpses of Rajas reigning as lords paramount.

Two inferences respecting the heroic period.

Two inferences, however, may be drawn from existing data, which throw some light upon the heroic period, namely:—

1st, That the Aryan conquest of Hindústan was mainly carried out whilst the Bráhmans were employed as mere animal sacrificers, and before they had attained political power as a hierarchy.

2nd, That during the rise of Hindú suzerainties, the Bráhmans may have occasionally struggled to assert their supremacy; but in so doing they met with considerable opposition from the Maharajas.

Aryan conquest of Hindústan

The rise of the Bráhmans as an ecclesiastical completed before the rise of the Brahmanical hierarchy.

hierarchy was certainly subsequent to the Aryan conquest. When Nishadha, Ayodhyá, and Mithila were already in existence as independent empires, the Bráhmans are merely introduced as messengers and sacrificers; and every attempt to represent them as holding important posts in the government is palpably mythical. The early Rajas were their own priests, and marriage rites were performed not by a Bráhman, but by the father of the bride. Indeed it would appear that the heroic age of Hindú history was eminently an age of sacrifice. During the patriarchal period the assertion of proprietorship over cleared land was celebrated by a Rajasúya sacrifice; and the assertion of local suzerainty by an Aswamedha, or sacrifice of a horse; and it is easy to infer that the acquisition of large territories, and the establishment of substantive empires, would be accompanied by vast holocausts, at which cattle would be slain by hundreds and thousands, and the banquet would be truly national and imperial. It is probable that under such circumstances the mystic sacrificial ritual laid down in the Aitareya Bráhmanam was gradually moulded into formal shape; whilst the extensive employment of Bráhmans at such sacrifices may have originated the caste idea, with which it was undoubtedly associated, that no food was so pure as that which was cooked by a Bráhman.

Extended employment of the Bráhmans as annual sacrificers in the heroic age.

Early antagonism of the Bráhmans to the Mahárajas.

During the rise of Hindú suzerainties the Bráhmans seem to have been occasionally in antagonism to the Mahárajas. In the myths of successive Indras and other lords paramount, to which reference has already been made, one single idea predominates throughout, which indicates either their Brahmanical origin, or the extent to which they have been manipulated by the Brahmanical compilers. If a Maháraja treated Bráhmans with respect, and adhered strictly to Brahmanical law, his empire was described as prosperous, and his reign as glorious. If, on the contrary, a Maháraja was disrespectful to the Bráhmans, and gratified his passions without regard to Brahmanical law, which appears to have been the case with Raja Vena; then, according to the myth, he was deprived of his Raj, and condemned to exile or destruction. The same idea finds full expression in the Institutes of Manu, where certain Rajas are specified as having been utterly ruined because they had not learned virtuous humility from the Bráhmans; in other words, who had not shown that deference to an arrogant priesthood, which was claimed by the Brahmanical hierarchy

Worthless character of the mythological myths shown by reference to the myth of Indra, and Nahusha.

The worthless character of these myths, beyond perhaps indicating an early opposition between the Bráhmans and the Mahárajas, may be further proved by a reference to the myths respecting Indra. Here it should be remarked that the name of Indra is sometimes applied to deity, sometimes to sovereignty, sometimes to a mortal hero, and possibly on some occasions it may be the eponym of the Aryan race. In the myths, however, his deity is recognized, but serious charges of impiety are brought against him. In a legend already quoted he is said to have seduced the wife of a pious sage;[8] and in the Vishnu Purána he is represented as having treated with disrespect a flower which had been given to him by a sage named Durvásas; and on both occasions he was severely punished by the loss of power. At another time, having offended the Bráhmans, a rival named Nahusha was permitted to conquer him, and to exercise his sovereignty. Indra is then said to have concealed himself in a lotos, whilst Nahusha required Indra's wife to accept him as her husband. The lady made no attempt to deny the right of Nahusha, under the old Kshatriya law by which the wife became the property of the conqueror of the husband; but she simply endeavoured to put off Nahusha with excuses and promises. At length Nahusha refused to grant her any further delay; and the lady agreed to yield to his wishes if he would fetch her away in a palanquin borne by Bráhmans. Nahusha acquiesced; the palanquin was prepared with Bráhman bearers; and the amorous conqueror set off to bring away his bride. But the bearers were slow, and Nahusha was in a hurry, and he accordingly abused the Bráhmans, and finally put out his foot and pushed one of them; on which the Bráhman turned round and cursed him into becoming a snake. The result was that Nahusha lost both the lady and the sovereignty; whilst Indra recovered both, on the implied understanding that he would be more respectful to the Bráhmans in future. This myth is one of many which may be referred either to the earlier wars between the Aryans and the Nágas, or to the later opposition between the Bráhmans and Buddhists, but the question will be considered hereafter in dealing with the history of the Buddhist period.

---

[8] See *ante*, Part iv. chap. 49.

Limited analogy between the

Possibly some further light might be thrown upon heroic age of the Hindús and Hebrews.

the heroic period of Hindú history, by reference to the same period in Hebrew history; and perhaps the wars carried on by the so-called Judges against the Canaanites and the surrounding tribes, were of a similar character to those which were carried on by the unknown heroes of the age of Aryan conquest against the aboriginal tribes in the valley of the Ganges and Jumná. But there the analogy ceases. Government in Hindústan never appears to have been a theocracy, such as prevailed under Eli the priest and Samuel the prophet; nor are there any traces of a Maháraja being selected from amongst the people, and anointed King, in the same manner that Saul and David were successively selected and anointed by the prophet Samuel. Consequently no analogy is furnished which will serve to clear away the deep obscurity which at present veils the rise and progress of Aryan conquest in Hindústan.

Absence of a theocracy in India.

3rd, Monarchical age of Hindú history.

The third and last period in early Hindú history, namely, the monarchical age, may now be brought under consideration. Here at the very outset will be perceived the vast interval which separates the patriarchal period which is depicted in the traditions of the war of Bhárata, and the monarchical period which is depicted in those of the Rámáyana. The primitive habits and simplicity of patriarchal households had passed entirely away; and beneath all the exaggerations of Oriental fancy it is easy to perceive that wealth, civilization, and luxury were really to be found in the palaces and courts of Mahárajas. Polyandry had entirely disappeared, and nothing remained of it but the Swayamvara; and married life, when not depressed by polygamy, appears in its

Vast interval between the patriarchal and monarchical periods.

most pleasing form, as the loving and devoted union of one woman to one man.

Distinction between the era of constitutional monarchy and that of despotism supported by the Brahmanical hierarchy.

Before, however, entering upon the history of the monarchical period, a distinction must be drawn between the constitutional form of government which finds expression in the Vedic traditions in the Epics; and the system of despotism, checked only by an ecclesiastical hierarchy, which is laid down in the Institutes of Manu. In the constitutional form of monarchy, the Hindú Mahárajas appear to have reigned in tolerably peaceful possession of their respective territories; and the interest in the traditions does not turn so much upon wars and blood feuds, as upon incidents of a domestic character, and the evils produced by polygamy and gambling. Indeed, but for these evils, it is difficult to understand why the independence of Hindú sovereignties should not have been maintained down to the present generation. A glance, however, at the later period of Hindú despotism, during which a Brahmanical hierarchy exercised supreme power, will help to solve the whole problem.

Ecclesiastical hierarchies fatal to constitutional forms.

The domination of an ecclesiastical hierarchy in alliance with monarchy invariably proves fatal to the liberties of a people and destructive to all constitutional forms. It seems to have swept away the popular element from the Aryan monarchies in Hindústan, in the same way that it has swept away the same element from the continental monarchies of Europe; and if England has been preserved from a similar fate, it is because during that half-century which formed the most critical period of her history, the Episcopal hierarchy found itself in the first instance in antagonism to the people, and subsequently in antagonism to the Crown. Had it proved otherwise Great Britain might have been in the present day of no more account in Europe than Portugal or Spain; and might have even succumbed to the imperial yoke of a Louis or a Napoleon.

Illustrations of the early monarchical period furnished by the tradition of Ráma.

The first and most important tradition, which has been preserved of the early monarchical period, is that of Ráma; but the narrative, as it appears in the Rámáyana, has been so intensely Brahmanized throughout, that its full significance cannot be apprehended until the age of Brahmanical revival has been brought under review. The main object kept in view throughout the Rámáyana is to represent Ráma as an incarnation of Vishnu, and a deified protector of the Bráhmans against the Buddhists. But the moral aim of the old Kshatriya tradition was to point out the political evils which were caused by polygamy; and especially to show the mischief which would be occasioned by any attempt on the part of a Maháraja to set aside the son of the first wife in order to give the succession to the son of a younger and favourite partner. This matter was apparently a favourite theme with the old Kshatriya bards; and no doubt the evils in question might have been exemplified at one time or another in the history of most reigning families in India. It finds expression in the old legend of Raja Sántanu and his son Bhíshma; it appears in a still grosser and exaggerated form in later Puránic legends; whilst the fratricidal wars which have been convulsing Afghanistan since 1863 are to be attributed to the fact that the late Ameer Dost Mahomed Khan passed over his eldest son Mahomed Afzul Khan, in order to appoint his favourite son Shere Ali Khan to succeed him as Ameer. In the

Moral aim of the old Kshatriya story; the mischief of setting aside the son of the first wife for the son of a younger favourite.

A favourite theme with the old Kshatriya bards.

case of Ráma it led to the exile of the rightful heir and the succession of a younger son; and with that event the original tradition appears to close. The subsequent life of Ráma in the jungle, and his wars against the Rákshasas, appear to refer to a later phase in Hindú history; and accordingly must be reserved for consideration hereafter in connection with the age of Buddhism and Brahmanical revival.

Points in the original Kshatriya tradition.

The main points in what appears to be the original tradition of Ráma may be very briefly indicated.

Family of Dasaratha.

Maháraja Dasaratha was sovereign over the great Raj of Ayodhyá, or Oude. He had three wives and four sons. Ráma was the son of the first and principal wife; and Bharata was the son of the youngest and favourite wife. The middle wife had two sons, who play subordinate parts in the story; one appearing as the friend of Ráma, and the other as the friend of Bharata.

Ráma's marriage.

When Ráma was grown, he proceeded on a visit to the neighbouring Raj of Mithila, where he married Sítá, the daughter of the Raja; and his brothers were likewise married to royal maidens of the same family.

Zenana intrigue respecting the appointment of a successor.

After the marriages the question arose as to the appointment of a Yuvaraja, or little Raja. This appointment is in accordance with an Oriental custom, which also existed under the Hebrew monarchy, of nominating an eldest son to the throne during the life-time of the reigning sovereign, in order that the young Prince might be trained in the duties of the administration, and relieve his father from the cares of state; and above all, that the question of succession might be fully settled during the life-time of the Maháraja Ráma, the son of Kausalyá, the first wife, seems to have had the best claim; but the beautiful Kaikeyí, the youngest and favourite wife of the Maháraja, seems to have long determined that her son Bharata should be appointed Yuvaraja. The Maháraja himself, like many a sovereign advancing in years, was not inclined to make the appointment; but the Chieftains and people probably found that he was getting old and uxorious, and they were anxious for the installation of a young Prince and a settlement of the question of succession. Accordingly a deputation of Ministers, Chieftains, and people proceeded to the palace, and prayed the Maháraja to appoint Ráma. The Maháraja, still hesitating summoned a great Council; and again the popular feeling seems to have been in favour of Ráma. The Maháraja now yielded, and announced to the Council that Ráma should be installed next morning. He had, however, anticipated the result, and had already sent Bharata to the city of his maternal grandfather to be out of the way; and in the evening he hinted to Ráma that he had better be on the watch against Bharata, as Bharata might have had an inkling of the contemplated installation, and taken steps to prevent it by force of arms. The news that Ráma was to be installed naturally ran through the city like wildfire, and of course reached the royal zenana. In the evening the Maháraja proceeded to the apartments of Kaikeyí, probably with the view of reconciling her to the disappointment; but he found her in a fit of sullen rage, in which by the force of angry tears and youthful beauty she managed to wheedle him into promising that Ráma should be sent into exile, and that Bharata should be installed as successor to the Raj.

Interference of the Chieftains and people.

Decision that Ráma should be installed.

Maháraja persuaded to set aside Ráma in favour of Bharata.

The denouement.

Meantime and throughout the night the city is said to have been in a fever of expectation. At early dawn the rural population were pouring in to behold the ceremony of installation; whilst the citizens watered the streets, and decorated their houses with flags and garlands; and singers, musicians, and dancing-girls began to perform before the joyous multitudes. At the same time Ráma and his wife Sítá were wholly ignorant of the intrigue that had been transpiring in the royal zenana; and when Ráma was summoned by the Maháraja, he proceeded in his chariot to the palace in the full expectation of being installed with the customary ceremonies. At that moment the blow fell. Instead of a throne, Ráma learned from his weeping father and relentless mother-in-law that he was to be sent into exile. He broke the sad news to his own mother, and beheld her dashed down from the height of felicity and triumph to the lowest depths of wretchedness and despair. Rebellion was suggested, but Ráma dutifully set his face against disobedience to his father. Ráma then proceeded to his own house and broke the sad news to his wife; but Sítá at once declared her intention of braving all the dangers and privations of the jungle, and accompanying him in his exile.

Exile of Ráma and Sítá.

The hapless pair then walked bare-footed to the palace, as a token of submission; and having taken leave of the Maháraja and Ránís, they were driven by the charioteer of the Maháraja to the dominions of a Bhíl Raja, who appears to have owed some allegiance to the Raj of Ayodhyá.

Death of the Maháraja.

On the night after the departure of Ráma, the Maháraja is said to have died with grief at the loss of his son; but the fact of his death was not made known, as the women who were with him at the time swooned away in horror and sorrow. Accordingly at early morning the palace life commenced as usual. The bards and eulogists sounded the praises of the Maháraja, and the men-servants and maid-servants were busy with their respective duties. All were expecting the appearance of the Maháraja, when suddenly a cry ran through the palace that he was dead, and the air was filled with weeping and wailing. But amidst all the commotion arising from the suddenness of the catastrophe, there was a strict attention to constitutional forms. The Ministers assembled together, and decided that the remains of the deceased Maháraja should not be burned in the absence of all his sons, but should be preserved in a bath of oil. Next a great Council was convened, and the question of the succession was debated; and it was determined that the decision of the Maháraja in favour of Bharata should be considered as binding and final. The exile of Ráma was accepted as a disqualification; and swift messengers were despatched to bring Bharata to Ayodhyá. On the arrival of Bharata, the funeral rites of the Maháraja were celebrated without a Satí, but with a pomp and circumstance which forms a striking picture of the times. The bards and eulogists appeared in front, chanting the praises of the deceased sovereign. Next followed the widows and other women of the Maháraja, with their long black hair dishevelled over their faces, piercing every ear with their shrieks and screams. Next the royal corpse was carried in state upon a litter covered with flowers and garlands, whilst the ensigns of royalty surrounded it. The rest of the procession was com-

Picture of palace life.

Constitutional forms.

Picture of the funeral rites of the Maháraja.

posed of chariots filled with the royal servants, who scattered gifts amongst the people. In this manner, the procession moved out of the city towards a lonely place on the bank of the river, where the funeral pile was erected; and the royal corpse was laid upon the pile, and speedily enveloped and consumed in a tower of flames. Here the tradition seems to end, so far as it refers to Vedic times. How Sítá was subsequently carried away by the Raja of the Rákshasas, and was recovered after some severe fighting, but separated from her husband and abandoned in the jungle on the bare suspicion of her purity, are incidents which may have had some foundation in truth, but which scarcely seem to call for notice in a sketch of the Vedic period. So too the alleged return of Ráma to Ayodhyá, and his subsequent reign as Maháraja, form a very interesting climax to the story, but are otherwise associated with traditions which seem to belong to a later age.

Close of the original tradition.

Play of the instincts.

The main features of the incidents connected with the exile may now be considered by the light of the three influences already specified. In the first instance it may be remarked that throughout the story flesh-meat appears as the ordinary diet; although, as already seen, such food is scarcely tolerated in the code of Manu, and was declared by later commentators to be improper and impure in the present Yuga. Ráma and his wife and brother appear to have lived chiefly on venison, and to have dried the meat in the sun after the manner of the American Indians. In connection with this subject a question might be raised as to the superior physique of flesh-eaters over vegetarians, and as to whether the change of diet, which was beginning to

General use of flesh meat.

Question of superior physique of flesh-eaters over vegetarians.

take place in the time of Manu, ultimately led to the subjugation. It is the common belief of the people of India that the European is stronger than the Hindú because he eats meat and drinks beer; and it was the senseless fear of the sepoys, that the British Government wished to break their caste for the purpose of inducing them to use the same diet, and to strengthen them for the conquest of Asia, that led in a great measure to the unhappy mutiny of 1857.

Pictures of married life: polygamy contrasted with monogamy.

The pictures of married life in the same story present a remarkable contrast between the intrigues which prevailed in a polygamous household, and the domestic felicity which was to be found even in the jungle, when the hero was married only to one wife. Indeed the pictures of zenana life furnish powerful illustrations of the working of the human heart under circumstances which are altogether foreign to European experiences. It will be seen that in the seclusion of the zenana the passions of jealousy and ambition will convert the woman into a tigress, as in the case of Kaikeyí; and will impel a woman to suggest a rebellion against her husband, which might eventuate in his assassination, as in the case of Kausalyá. As to the uxorious old Maháraja, who was induced by a young wife to commit an act of injustice which might have imperilled the well-being of the realm, abundant instances of a like nature might be found in almost every family history. It is in fact the story of every-day life, the same in India as elsewhere, aggravated only by the conditions of polygamy. The domestic felicity of Ráma and Sítá is by no means perfect, but it is infinitely more pleasing than that which prevailed

Character of Sítá.

in the palace of Maháraja Dasaratha. Up to the period of exile, and for some time after it, Sítá appears as the true ideal of a wife, animated by a loving and self-sacrificing devotion towards her husband; excepting of course in those portions of the Rámáyana which have been extracted from the modern version, in which the character more resembles the Hindú princess of the present day. The subsequent story of the exile is altogether dubious, and Sítá displays a wayward disposition, which is wholly at variance with what might have been expected from her previous behaviour. One peculiarity in the wedded life of Ráma and Sítá is worthy of notice, namely, the absence of all mention of children; for it was not until after the triumphant return to Ayodhyá, and the abandonment of Sítá in the jungle, that she appears in the character of a mother. This circumstance may have had something to do with the sequel of the story, in which the conduct of Ráma appears to have been harsh in the extreme, and is usually regarded with disapproval even by native commentators who believe in his divinity. The fact that Sítá was childless until after her deliverance from Rávana, and the subsequent discovery that she was about to become a mother, may have suggested to the mind of Ráma that he was not the father of the coming progeny, and induced him to abandon his wife under the cruel circumstances mentioned in the Rámáyana.

Ráma and Sítá without children.

Probable cause of the abandonment of Sítá.

Democratic element manifested in the popular Councils.

The democratic element in the Raj of Ayodhyá appears to have been much stronger than could have been anticipated under an Oriental despotism. It involved not only the existence of Councils of Ministers and Chieftains, but also assemblies of the people; and it would appear that even such questions as the appointment of a Yuvaraja, and the nomination of a successor in a case of the sudden demise of a Maháraja, were brought under the consideration of the whole body of the citizens; although efforts have certainly been made by the Brahmanical compilers to represent Vasishtha the Bráhman as the superior power who directed all and counselled all.

Religious ideas in the tradition.

Flesh sacrifices.

Vows of flesh and wine to the river goddesses.

The religious ideas which find expression in the original tradition are altogether of the old Kshatriya type. Flesh-meat is not only offered to the Vedic gods, but meat and wine are promised by Sítá to the river goddesses, provided only that Ráma returns in safety to the city of his fathers. The old Vedic idea of gratifying the gods with good things in return for favours received or expected, is thus fully expressed; and vows of gifts to Gangá and Jumná are made much after the fashion in which vows are said to be made to the Virgin and Saints in many Roman Catholic countries.

Further illustrations of the monarchical period furnished by the story of Nala and Damayanti.

Absence of polygamy and reference to gambling.

Apparent age of the story.

A second tradition, namely, that of Nala and Damayantí, furnishes a far more pleasing picture of the constitutional phase of early Hindú monarchy than is displayed in the tradition of Ráma. The story seems to have originated in an age not very remote from that of Ráma, but it is devoid of all reference to polygamy, and seems more especially to point to the evils which are likely to arise from an undue indulgence in gambling. It is evidently much later than the patriarchal story of the war of Bhárata, for whilst the existence of such a Raj as Nishadha implies an advanced stage in Aryan conquest, the tradition is free from all allusions to polyandry, or to any of the lawless forms of marriage which appear to have accompanied the earlier conquests of the Kshatriyas. Moreover the gambling match of Nala presents a more civilized picture than the gambling match of Yudhishthira, for the losing gambler altogether refuses to stake his wife upon a throw. At the same time the tradition is evidently Vedic. The institution known as the Swayamvara finds full expression in its happiest form; and the marriage rites of Nala and Damayantí are performed by the father of the bride. Moreover the tradition is prior to the rise of Brahmanism; for the proposition of a second Swayamvara in the case of Damayantí, implies the case of re-marriage of a widow, which is altogether opposed to Brahmanical law.

Play of the instincts.

Pure connubial affection.

The play of the instincts in this charming story is more delicate and refined than in the traditions of a patriarchal type. The expression of mutual affection is exquisitely true to human nature in a higher development. So true is the picture of the agony of the wife and mother during the progress of the gambling match; and her subsequent devotion to her husband, even after he had deserted her; and her love for the children subordinate to the love for her husband; and the final re-union of the pair after so many trials and sorrows. Above all, the passion for revenge is beautifully modified by a higher tone of moral sentiment than is displayed in patriarchal story. In the sequel Nala not only forgives his enemy, but dismisses him with many gifts.

Modified revenge.

Manifestations of the democratic element.

The democratic element in the tradition is of a peculiar type. Whilst the Chieftains and people display great anxiety during the gambling match, lest the Raja should lose his Raj, the Ráni freely consults with them as to the best means of avoiding the threatening catastrophe. Meantime no authentic traces are to be found of any interference on the part of a Brahmanical hierarchy; nor is the authority of religion brought into play for the purpose of restraining the Raja in his career of ruin.

Religious ideas.

The religious ideas in the story are all Vedic, but apparently of a comparatively late period. The personification of the gods of the elements is complete; and they appear in the heaven of Indra in much the same fashion as the Olympic deities appear in the Homeric poems. Moreover the Vedic deities, like the Olympic deities, are amenable to moral passions; and appear at the Swayamvara as candidates for the hand of the beautiful Damayantí. The signs by which the blushing damsel knew that her admirers were divinities, and not mortal men, are very poetically expressed; their feet would not touch the earth, their eyes winked not, their garlands were as fresh as if newly gathered, and not a stain of dust lay upon their raiment, nor drop of perspiration upon their brows. Damayantí, however, whilst paying all homage to the gods, would choose only Nala for her lord; whilst Nala in return publicly declared that he would be ever faithful to the maiden with the eye serene, since she had chosen him to be her husband in the presence of the gods.

Appearance of the gods in the heaven of Indra.

Signs of deity.

Stages in Hindú history prior to the spiritual domination of the Bráhmans.

Such then, step by step, the current of Indian history appears to have run from the earliest glimmer of patriarchal legend down to the monarchical age when the Brahmanical system, which is defined and explained in the code of Manu, began to exercise

Probable means by which the Bráhmans attained supreme power.

a dominant sway over the people of Hindústan. The earlier process by which the Vedic religion was gradually set aside by Brahmanical law must for the present be left to conjecture. In all probability the Bráhmans rose from the condition of mere mercenary sacrificers to that of an ecclesiastical hierarchy, by the ordinary means which accompany the rise of a priesthood to political power. In the first instance the Bráhmans appeared in their sacerdotal character as a medium between the worshippers and the deity worshipped; and in that capacity they probably first pretended to explain such religious omens as might be gathered from the manifestations and motions of the sacrificial flame, or from the marks which appeared on the animal that was sacrificed. In connection with this pretended knowledge of the will of the deities, the Brahmans seem to have practised astrology, and to have assumed the possession of supernatural power, such as the production of rain or drought, health or disease, prosperity or calamity. Finally they asserted for themselves a divine origin from Brahma, whom they exalted very far above all the Vedic deities. Consequently they arrogated for themselves a superiority over the popular gods, under which they promulgated new religious dogmas, and introduced a multiplicity of rites of purification and consecration. Subsequently at every birth, marriage, or death, there was the inevitable Bráhman, who thus became associated in the minds of the people with every household event that gladdened their hearts or moved them to tears. Moreover the prayers and incantations of the Bráhmans were supposed to be always necessary to insure the long life and prosperity of all individuals and families; to procure a favourable seed-time and an abundant harvest; to increase the profits of every bargain and promote the success of every undertaking; to purify the water of wells and strengthen the foundation of dwelling-houses; to consecrate and impart new powers to weapons, armour, ensigns, implements, books, and tools, and to ward off every danger and every calamity which can befall a human being and his belongings. In this manner every Hindú has moved for centuries in the fetters of religious superstition from his cradle to his grave; and the result has been that the national life has ebbed away, and the country has only been saved from the most hopeless of anarchies by the introduction of European rule.

Evil results of Brahmanical ascendancy.

Aggravated by the caste system.

The evils which have resulted from the establishment of a Brahmanical hierarchy have indeed far exceeded those which have followed the establishment of any other ecclesiastical ascendancy. Other priesthoods, like the Jesuits in Spain, have dominated over the minds of men, and crushed out the national aspirations and deadened the intellectual energies; but then such priests have generally sprung from the people, and have occasionally appeared as the protectors of the oppressed, and have stayed the hand of the tyrant and marauder by the threat of anathemas and excommunications. The Bráhmans, however, whilst occasionally exercising similar powers for the furtherance of their own ends, have been themselves the victims of a caste system which has necessarily shut them out from all sympathies with the masses. In other words, they formed an hereditary caste of priests, which had laboured to degrade the Súdra instead of supporting him, and fattened upon the credulity of a people whom they had neither the power nor will to serve. But still it must not be inferred that the rise of the Brahmanical hierarchy was productive only of evil. There were Bráhmans who passed their lives in divine contemplation, and who analyzed the thoughts, the language, the intellect, and the affections, until they obtained from the depths of their consciousness a deeper knowledge of divine things, and a more enlightened appreciation of the attributes of the Supreme Spirit. It was such Sages who succeeded in weaning away the minds of many from the grosser superstitions of polytheism to the higher faith in One God; and who taught after their own mystic fashion how man might obtain the absorption of his soul into the Divine Essence, or dwell hereafter as a purified spirit with the Supreme Soul.

Beneficial influences exercised by the Bráhmans.

Spiritual teaching.

Brahmanical aspirations after monotheism.

It may be that the aspirations after monotheism, which find expression in the Institutes of Manu, are couched in the pantheistic language of the Vedantists; but even amidst the aberrations of religious thought, the throes of the soul to escape from the trammels of polytheism, are to be found flashes of that eternal truth which is as old as the stars, and finds a response in every human bosom. "All gods," says Manu, "are in the Divine Spirit; all worlds are in the Divine Spirit; and the Divine Spirit produces the connected series of acts which are performed by embodied souls. Him some adore as present in the element of fire; others as present in Manu, lord of creatures; some as present in Indra; others as present in pure Ether; and others as the most High Eternal Spirit. It is He, who,

CC-0. Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

pervading all beings in five elementary forms, causes them by the gradations of birth, growth, and dissolution, to revolve in this world like the wheels of a car. Thus the man, who perceives in his own soul the Supreme Soul present in all creatures, regards them all with equal benevolence, and will be absorbed at last in the highest Essence, even that of the Almighty himself."[9] It was left for one greater than the Hindú legislator to teach the simpler and purer doctrine:—"God is a Spirit, and they that worship Him must worship Him in spirit and in truth."[10]

Political condition of Hindústan in the Brahmanic age.

Here it may be again remarked that in the time when the code of Manu was compiled, the area of Aryan conquest had spread far beyond the limits of Brahmanism, and probably included both Buddhism and Brahmanism within its frontiers. The Bráhmans as a body had not advanced beyond Kanouj on the banks of the Ganges; whilst the Aryans had conquered the whole of Hindústan from sea to sea. Again, the Aryans are directed to select their Brahmanical preceptors from Brahmárshí-desa, or the country of the Bráhman Rishis; whilst bitter denunciations are pronounced against atheists and heretics, in other words, against the followers of Buddha. From these data it is easy to infer that whilst the Bráhman missionaries were spreading from Brahmárshí-desa, on the west of Kanouj, Buddhism was really dominant in eastern Hindústan. At the same time it is difficult to say how far the ideas of the Buddhists passed into Brahmanism; or how far the ideas of the Bráhmans passed into Bud-

Growing opposition between the Bráhmans and the Buddhists.

---

[9] Manu, xii. 119, 123—126.

[10] St John iv. 24.

dhism. Originally the two currents of religious thought may have flowed on side by side, without exciting much antagonism. Subsequently, however, the practical atheism of the Buddhists in denying or ridiculing the gods of the Bráhmans, and the opposition of the Bráhmans towards the conventual system of the Buddhists, brought about those deadly hostilities which eventuated in the expulsion of the Buddhists and triumph of the Bráhmans. Meantime the Swayamvara, the Rajusúya, and the Aswamedha passed away. The rites of marriage were brought into conformity with Brahmanical law. The use of flesh-meat at meals and sacrifices began to disappear, and vegetable food was substituted. Finally, the great Aryan empires, which had long been established in Hindústan, began to be swayed to and fro by those religious convulsions which belong to the subsequent eras of Hindú history. Indeed the inquiries which have yet to be carried out in the religious history of India, will be found to be the most important of all. The origin of polytheism amongst the Aryan people, and its development into monotheism, or the worship of the Supreme Spirit, have been in some measure indicated; but before the European reader can comprehend the Hindú people as they think and act, it will be necessary to review the rise and decline of that form of atheism in association with asceticism, which is known as Buddhism; to point out the method by which the Brahmanical compilers of the Epics spiritualized Kshatriya heroes, such as Ráma and Krishna, into incarnations of Vishnu as the Supreme Being; to investigate that deification of the passions, which was superadded to the fetish worship of the aboriginal races in primi-

Subsequent religious convulsions.

tive times; to unfold the process by which the new and strange gods were admitted into the Brahmanical pantheon; and to explore those forms of religious thought and philosophical inquiry, which were promulgated by teachers and sages, whilst a dense cloud of superstition and ignorance overspread the land. Moreover there seems reason to hope that such inquiries will not only lead to a better knowledge of the progress of religious thought amongst the Hindús, but will help to solve the vexed problem of why Christianity has failed to achieve that conquest over the national faith which it has effected elsewhere. Hitherto the non acceptation of the Christian religion by the people of India has been referred to inscrutable causes, such as the mysterious dispensation of Providence, or the exceptional depravity of the heart of the Hindú. But it will appear hereafter that it should be rather ascribed to the current of religious ideas, which has flowed in channels unknown and unappreciated by the western world, and which has rendered Christianity less acceptable to the civilized Hindús of the plains than to the barbarous aborigines who inhabit the hills.

END OF VOL. II.

INDEX.

ACHARYA, or Guru, 550.

Adhyátma Rámáyana, a spiritualized version of the Rámáyana, 25.

Adoption, modern custom of, 585.

Adultery, laws against, 580.

Agastya, his hermitage near the Vindhya mountains, 252; legend of Vátápi and Ilwala, 253; devours Vátápi, ib.; his miracles, 254; entertains Ráma and acknowledges him as the lord of the universe, 255; gives him supernatural weapons, 256; denounces the evil nature of women, 256; upholds the worship of the Maruts and expostulates with Indra, 440; complaint of his wife, 444.

Agni, Indrajit's sacrifice to, 370; probable substitution of Agni for Kálí, 377; attests the purity of Sítá, 384, 385; identified with the Supreme Spirit, 412; identified with Brahma, 413; attributes, 437; regarded as the creator, 452; daily oblation to, 493.

Ahalyá, wife of Gautama, seduced by Indra, 48; cursed by Gautama, 49; freed from the curse by Ráma, ib.

Aksha, son of Rávana, slain by Hanuman, 341.

Alms, ceremony of begging for, 546; its origin, 547.

Ambassador, duties of one, 595.

Amrita, churning of the sea for, 47.

Anasúyá, wife of Atri, her miracles, 237; her interview with Sítá, ib.; gives her an ointment which renders her ever beautiful, 238; describes the approach of night in poetic language, 239.

Anchorites, female, 581.

Angu, Raj of, great drought, 12; the Raja marries his daughter to the Rishi Sringa, 13.

Angada, son of Bali, installed Yuvaraja of Kishkindhyá, 323.

Antelope, sacrifice of, to Vedic deities, 545, *note*.

Anumatí, goddess of the day, 493.

Apsaras, rise out of the sea and become the nymphs in Indra's heaven, 47; story of Rambhá who became a Rákshasa, 244; story of the Apsaras who sported with the sage Mandakarni, 251.

Arsha marriage, 506; referred to the Vedic period, 508; radical distinction between the Arsha and Brahmá rites, 509.

Aryans, advance from Delhi to Oude, 2; resemblance of their ancient marriage ceremony to the modern Hindú rite, 60; sometimes identified with their gods or Devatas, 426; progress of their invasion before the time of Manu, 432; conception of Manu as their ancestor, 453.

Aryávarta, or the Aryan pale, 431; question of whether it extended from sea to sea, 433, *note*.

Asamanja, Raja of Ayodhyá, tradition of, 126.

Astrology, planet of Dasaratha threatened by three malignant aspects, 83.

Asura marriages, 506; involved the purchase of the bride, 513.

Aswamedha, a horse sacrifice, of Mahárája Dasaratha, 10; invested with a different meaning to that in the Mahá Bhárata, ib.; loosening of the horse, 16; preparations for the sacrifice, ib.; the second sacrifice, 18; appearance of an emanation of Brahma, 20; two sacrifices involved, the horse and the homa, 22; performed to produce conception, ib.; substitution of páyasa for horse-flesh, 23; performed by Ráma to atone for having slain Rávana, 401.

Aswapati, Raja of Girivraja, father of Kaikeyí, and grandfather of Bharata, 78; dismisses Bharata, 163.

Aswins, custom of polyandry involved in a Vedic tradition, 502.

Atri, the sage, chronological difficulties connected with him, 230; Ráma visits his hermitage, 237; interview between his wife Anasúyá and Sítá, ib.

Autumn, poetical description of, 40.

Ayodhyá, the modern Oude, present appearance of the ruins, 1; ancient magnificence, ib.; known as the Raj of Kosala—*see* Kosala; description of the city, 3; fortifications, 4; the people, ib; assembly of the chieftains and people to consider which of the sons of Dasaratha should be appointed Yuvaraja, 79, 80; universal rejoicings on the approaching installation of Ráma, 86; profound sorrow of the people at the exile of Ráma, 122; reproach the Maháraja and Kaikeyí, ib.; mournful appearance of the city after the departure of Ráma, 137; gloomy appearance indicated in a succession of Hindú similes, 219; preparations of the people for the triumphant return of Ráma, 388; return of Ráma and Sítá with their sons, 403.

Bali, overcome by Vishnu in the dwarf incarnation, 43.
Bálí, the Monkey Chieftain of Kishkindhya, his ill-treatment of Sugríva, 320; his combat with Sugríva, 321; mortally wounded by Ráma, ib.; sudden appearance of his wife Tárá, ib.; her lamentations over him, 322; funeral ceremonies for him, ib.
Bhagiratha, Raja, legend of his restoring the sixty thousand sons of Sagara to life, 46, *note*.
Bharadwája, the sage, seat at Prayága, 135; receives Ráma and Sítá, 145; recommends the hill Chitra-kúta as a residence, 146; his extraordinary entertainment of the army of Bharata, 186; entertains the army of Monkeys, 387, *note*.
Bharata, son of Dasaratha and Kaikeyí, his birth, 21; sent to Girivraja with his uncle Yudhájit, 77; instructions of his father Dasaratha, ib.; residence and studies in the house of his grandfather Raja Aswapati, 78; significance of his absence during the preparations for the installation of Ráma as Yuvaraja, 87; summoned to Ayodhyá on the death of the Maháraja, 158; his ominous dream, 162; his return to Ayodhyá, 163; his presents to his grandfather, 164; scene between him and Kaikeyí, 165; his grief, ib.; demands the reason of Ráma's exile, 166; bitterly reproaches his mother, 167; proclaims the right of Ráma to the Raj, ib.; prevents Satrughna from slaying Manthará, 168; declares to Kausalyá his loyal attachment to Ráma, 169; performs the funeral rites for Maháraja Dasaratha, 179; his grief, 174; refuses the request of the council that he will accept the Raj, 179; prepares to visit Ráma at Chitra-kúta, 180; the march, 181; halt at Sringavera, 182; interview with Raja Guha, 183; passage of his army over the river Ganges, 185; proceeds to the hermitage of Bharadwája at Prayága, ib.; extraordinary entertainment of the soldiers by the sage, 186; march from Prayága to Chitra-kúta, 190; approaches the hermitage of Ráma, 203; acquaints him with the death of the Maháraja, 208; offers the Raj to Ráma, 211; the discussion, ib.; offers to go into exile, 217; final refusal of Ráma, ib.; rules the Raj through the shoes of Ráma, 218; returns to Ayodhyá, ib.; resides at Nandigráma, 219; review of his proceedings, 228; his austerities on account of Ráma, 259; his preparations for the triumphant return of Ráma, 388; meeting with Ráma, 389.
Bhíl country, frontier at Sringavera, 135; Raja Guha welcomes Ráma, 139.
Bottomry, law respecting, 608.
Brahmá, birth of, in an egg, 455; separation into male and female, 460; production of Viráj, ib.; day of, 465; simplicity of the idea, 467; court of, with four faces, 606.
Brahmá marriage, 505; referred to the Brahmanic age, 507; differed altogether from the rite of the Rishis, 510.
Brahma, mythical ancestor of the Rajas of Kosala, 2; Indra and the gods pray him to protect them against Rávana, 18; conducts them to the abode of Vishnu, 19; emanation from, presents a cup of páyasa to Dasaratha, 20; worshipped by Rávana, 232; Virádha preserved by his blessing, 243; arrow of, 256; his irresistible noose, 341.
Brahma placed above all the Vedic deities, 412; distinction between Brahma, the Supreme Soul, and Brahmá, or his creative energy, 413, *note;* identified with Agni and Prajápati, ib.; placed in opposition to the Vedic deities, 426; idea of sleeping upon the waters, 455; conception of Brahma and Brahmá, 478; decline of the worship, 479; connection with Om, the Vyáhritis and the Gáyatrí, 482; identified with the Sun, 483; significant indication of the unpopularity of the worship, 497; perhaps a different conception to Prajápati, 511.
Brahmachári, or student in the Veda, 544; rites prior to the investiture with the thread, 545; significance of the thread, ib.; age of investiture, ib.; ceremony of begging for alms, 546; its origin, 547; rules for the conduct of a Brahmachári after investiture, 548; their object, ib.; his religious duties, 549; reverent study of the Veda, ib.; worship of the gods, ib.; service to a preceptor, 550; respect due to a preceptor, 551; maintenance of a strict control over the passions, 552; festivities associated with his return to his father's house, 554; present of a cow, 555.
Brahmácharis, 4; Ráma and his brethren become Brahmacháris, 33.
Bráhmanas, or formal rituals, 448; account of, ib., *note*.
Brahmanic period, history of, 407; religion distinct from the Vedic religion, 412; compromise between the two, 413; chronology of, 418; probable duration, 420; settlements separated from the Vedic settlements by the Saraswatí river, 425; stratification of the four castes, 530; marriage relations in, 571; absence of chronological sequence, 620; political condition of Hindústan, 659; growing opposition between Bráhmans and Buddhists, ib.; subsequent religious convulsions, 660.
Brahmanical revival, period of, 416; appeal to the worship of the old gods of India, 417; characterized by the worship of Vishnu and Siva, ib.; chronology of, 418.
Brahmanism, its indefinite extension throughout the Buddhist age, 421; a re-

ligion of the masses, ib.; code of Manu a stand-point in its history, 422.

Bráhmans, their three classes of disciples, viz. servants, students, and Brahmacháris, 4; advise the Raja of Anga to give his daughter in marriage to Rishi Sringa, 12; production of rain by the Rishi, 13; refuse land because they are unable to rule, 17; opposition of the Rákshasas, 38, 230; Ráma and Sítá give their jewels to the Bráhmans, 121; settlements of the Bráhmans, 150; character of their hermitages, 229; sages introduced as types of the Bráhmans of the Dekhan, 230; picture of their hermitages, 240; their origin in Brahmárshi-desa, 431; distinguished from the Rishis, or Vedic psalmists, 435; wide difference between them, 438; stories of their marriages with young Princesses, ib., *note.*; their first appearance as mercenary sacrificers, 441; their ascendancy secured by asceticism, 442; Vedic faith in their power, ib.; compared with frogs in a Vedic hymn, 443; conception of Manu compared with the Vedic conception, 445; toleration of old customs, 450; the code of Manu their text book, 451; their cosmogony, 453; their bold attempt to map out eternity, 463; religion of the Bráhmans, 471; divisible into invocations and sacramental rites, 478; significance of the invocations as forming combinations of Three in One, ib.; significance of Om, the Vyáhritis and the Gáyatrí, 481; daily repetition of the invocations, 485; claimed the right of interpreting the Veda, 490; mode of interpretation, ib.; conception of marriage, 501; feasted at the great Sráddhas, 520; prohibited from worshipping inferior gods, 525; modifications of the old Vedic belief in the Sráddha, 528; veneration for, 535; privileges of, 536; occupation of, 537; diet of, 538; opposition between the milk and vegetable diet of the Brahmans, and the flesh-meat of the Kshatriyas, 539; ideal of Brahmanical life as expressed in Manu's system of four orders, 544; three classes of Bráhmans, 550; their occupations, 560; idea that they should be maintained by the public, 561; their spirit of inclusion, 565; ideal of life partially obtained from Buddhism, but not from the Vedic worship, ib.; originated in a belief in a future state, 566; expression in modern humanity, 566-7; punishment of Bráhmans, 581; theory of government, 586; absence of patriotism and public spirit, ib.; religion the only political and national tie, 587; political system based upon fear, ib.; rise of the Brahmanical hierarchy, 640; early antagonism to the Mahárajas, ib.; means by which they attained power, 656; evil results, 657; beneficial influence, 658; opposition to the Buddhists, 659.

Brahmárshi-desa, or country of the Bráhmans, probably a historical name, 428; description of, in Manu, 430.

Brahmávarta, probably a mythical name applied to the country frequented by the Vedic gods, or Aryan people, 428; Manu's geography of, 430.

Buddhism, legends of, connected with the life of Sákya Muni, 408; broad features of Buddhism, 414; expulsion of Buddhism in the age of Brahmanical revival, 416; failed to influence the masses, ib.; chronology of, 418; a religion of the aristocracy, 421; denounced by Manu, 451; devotees resembling Sannyásis, 565; sarcasm levelled at their nuns, 583; opposition of Bráhmans, 659.

Buddhists, Jáváli the logician charged with being one, 215; identified with the Rákshasas, 232; characteristics of, in the sensuality of Rávana, 347; satirical hit in the story of Kumbha-karna, 379.

Caggar, river, 430, *note*.

Calanus, story of his burning himself, 262.

Caste, an engine of ecclesiastical oppression, 413; probable origin of, in the river Saraswatí, 431; division of classes of society into four castes, 529; probable origin of the four castes, ib.; traces of, in the Vedic age, 530; stratification of the system in the Brahmanic age, ib.; no Brahmanical superiority asserted in the Purusha hymn, 531; Vedic myth distorted in Manu's code, ib.; expression of caste distinctions, 532; in salutations, 533; in administering oaths, ib.; marriages, ib.; caste emblems, 534; later prohibition of all marriages between castes, 535; five groups of illustrations of the caste system, ib.; veneration for Bráhmans, ib.; their privileges, 536; their occupations, 537; their diet, 538; scale of punishment for slander, 540; chandalas, or outcastes, 541; increase in the number of castes subsequent to the age of Manu, 542; respective occupations of the three twice-born castes, 560.

Cattle, pastoral law respecting damage to, 611.

Chamber of displeasure, sought by Hindú wives when angry, 941.

Chandálas, 4.

Chandálas, or out-castes, 541.

Chariot, description of Khara's, 269.

Children, Hindú love for, as exemplified in the story of Ráma, 27, 90.

Chitra-kúta, the seat of Válmiki in Bundelkund, 135; recommended to Ráma as a residence, 146; Ráma builds a hermitage there, 148; beautiful description of the hill as it appeared to Bharata and his army, 191; Ráma descants on its beauties to his wife Sítá, 199.

Chronology, sacred, 463; calculation of days, months, and years, 464; calculation of Yugas, or ages, 465; Hindú and European ideas of, compared, 468; influence of the different chronological systems upon the respective religious belief of Hindús and Europeans, 469; system of Manwantaras superadded to the Brahmanic system of Kalpas, ib.; absence of

sequence in the history of ancient India, 620.
Churning of the sea for amrita, legend of, 47.
Civil law, 606.
Civilization, dèscription of the Raj of Kosala, and city of Ayodhyá, 3; the people, 4; palace and throne of the Maháraja, 5; ministers, counsellors, and preceptors, 6; Hindú ideal of a city, 7; necessity for spies, 9; horse sacrifice—*see* Aswamedha; legend of the Rishi Sringa who had never seen a woman, 12; story of the damsels sent to entice him, ib.; rejoicings on the birth of sons, 21; ceremony of giving names, ib.; story of Ráma's childhood, 27; efforts of the women to pacify Ráma, 30; education of boys, 32; unwillingness of Ráma to slay a woman, 42; jealousies and intrigues in the Zenana on the appointment of a Yuvaraja, 73; public reception of Bharata at Girivraja, 78; studies of Bharata, ib.; assembly of a great council to discuss the installation of Ráma, 80; virtues of a young prince as exemplified in the recital of the merits of Ráma, 81; preparations for the installation of a Yuvaraja, 82; planet of Dasaratha threatened by three malignant aspects, 83; universal rejoicings in the city of Ayodhyá on the approaching installation of Ráma, 86; democratic element in the city of Ayodhyá, 87; scenes within the palace on the eve of the installation, 90; curious reference to the chamber of displeasure, 94; description of the Zenana of Maháraja Dasaratha, 95; preparations for the installation of the Yuvaraja, 106; praises bestowed by Sumantra upon the Maháraja, 107; description of the beautiful residence of Ráma, ib.; procession of Ráma to the palace of the Maháraja, 108; sacrifice of Kausalyá to Vishnu, 113; Kausalyá's advice to Ráma to slay the Maháraja, 115; perils of a jungle life, 118; scene in the palace of the Maháraja on the departure of Ráma and Sítá, 123; jungle dresses, 126; general distress at the departure of Ráma and Sítá from Ayodhyá, 130; demonstrative character of family affections amongst the Hindús, 133; filial obedience of Ráma a model, 134; mournful appearance of the city of Ayodhyá, after the departure of Ráma, 137; scene in the palace after Ráma's exile, 152; striking scene after the death of the Maháraja, 155; royal corpse preserved in oil, 156; assembly of a great council, ib.; poetical description of a country without a Maháraja, 157; presents given by Bharata to his grandfather, 164; funeral rites for Maháraja Dasaratha, 170; the days of mourning and performance of a Sraddha, 175; council assembled after the funeral ceremonies for Maháraja Dasaratha, 179; construction of the great road to Chitra-kúta, 180; march of Bharata from Ayodhyá to Chitra-kúta, 181; presents of fish, honey, and flesh, made by the Bhíl Rajá to Bharata, 183; passage of the army of Bharata over the river Ganges, 185; extraordinary entertainment of the army by the sage Bharadwája, 186; sports of Ráma and Sítá on the hill Chitra-kúta, 201; duties of Rajas detailed by Ráma, 205; threat of Ráma to sit in Dharná, 217; curious idea of Bharata ruling the Raj through the shoes of Ráma, 218; gloomy appearance of Ayodhyá described in a succession of Hindú similes, 219; picture of Brahmanical hermitages, 240; description of the forest of Dándaka, 241; cannibalism of Virádha, ib.; extraordinary description of ascetics, 247; Ráma's hermitage at Panchavatí, 257; poetical description of the cold season, 258; shameless proposals of Súrpa-nakhá, 265; chariot of Khara, 269; abuse of Khara by Ráma, 275; ancient law that the wife of the conquered became the prize of the conqueror, 298, 305; burying alive, 310; Sarvarí burns herself, 312; description of the city of Lanká, 331; the palace of Rávana, 333; the inner apartments, 334; the women of Rávana, ib.; treatment of Mandodarí by the Monkeys, 373; story of the ordeal of Sítá, 384; entertainment of the Monkeys by Bharadwája, 387; ceremonies of installing Ráma and Sítá, 391; domestic life of Ráma and Sítá, 394; popularity of the Rámáyana, ib.
Civilization, three phases of, 624; modified by human nature, 625.
Cosmogony. *See* Creation.
Court of Brahma with four faces, 606.
Creation of the universe by Manu and Brahmá, 452; obscurity of the Vedic idea, ib.; cosmogony of the Brahmanic period, 453; Manu's account, 454; compared with that of Moses, 455; contrast between the Hindú idea of Brahma sleeping on the waters with the Hebrew idea of a vivifying wind, 456; the mundane egg, 457; the metaphysical creation, 457; introduction of Manu and the ten Rishis, 460.
Criminal law, 613.

Daiva marriage, 505; its mythical character, 508.
Daksha, the sacrifice of, destroyed by Siva, 54, 55, *note*.
Dándaka, description of the forest, 239, 241.
Dasaratha, Maháraja of Kosala, 2; his virtues, 6; determines to perform an Aswamedha, 11; his three Ránís, ib.; goes to Anga, and brings Sringa to perform the Aswamedha, 15; gives páyasa to his Ránís, 20; birth of his four sons, 21; his anxieties respecting their marriage, 38; permits Ráma and Lakshmana to accompany Viswámitra, 39; proceeds to Mithilá, to the marriage of his sons to the daughters and nieces of Raja Janaka, 55; performs a great Sráddha, 56; intrigues and jealousies excited in his court and zenana by the appointment of a Yuvaraja,

73; entertains Yudhájit, the brother of his wife Kaikeyí, 77; sends his sons Bharata and Satrughna to Girivraja in charge of Yudhájit, ib.; his partiality for Ráma, 79; requested by the Chieftains and people to retire in favour of Ráma, ib.; his feigned anger, ib.; his speech to the great council expressing a desire to appoint Ráma to be Yuvaraja, 80; directs his two priests to prepare for the installation, 82; sends for Ráma, ib.; requests him to become Yuvaraja, 83; his planet threatened by three malignant aspects, ib.; proceeds to the apartments of Kaikeyí, 95; his surprise at finding her absent, ib.; follows her to the chamber of displeasure, ib.; his affectionate speeches to Kaikeyí, ib.; swears to perform her request, 96; his distraction at her request that Bharata should be installed and Ráma exiled, 97; his wrath at her obstinacy, 98; his lamentations and remonstrances, 99; his real feelings, 101; mythical story of the two boons, ib.; summoned by Sumantra to attend the installation, 106; commands him to bring Ráma to the palace, 107; his grief on seeing Ráma, 111; his final parting with Ráma, 123; his lamentations on the departure of Ráma, 131; reproached by Kausalyá, 152; implores her forgiveness, 153; his last words, 154; death, 155; episode respecting his being cursed by a recluse, 159; funeral rites, 171; appears at the ordeal of Sítá, 384.

Daughters, purification by marriage instead of the thread, 547.

Day, Hindú, division of, 464; four different days, ib.

Devatas, or gods worshipped by the Vedic Aryans, sometimes identified with the Aryan people, 426; day of, 465.

Dharma-vrita, hermitages of, 252.

Dharná, custom of, 217.

Diet, of Bráhmans, 538; compromise involved in the laws respecting that of the twice-born castes, ib.; opposition between the milk and vegetable food of the Bráhmans and the flesh-meat of the Kshatriyas, 539; repugnance to flesh-meat, ib.; general use of flesh-meat in ancient times, 650.

Divorce, law respecting, 577; supersession of a wife by a second wife to obtain a son, 578.

Drishadwatí, river, 430, *note*.

Durgá, worship of, 417.

Dúshana, brother of Rávana, his wars against Ráma, 269; his death, 274.

Education of Ráma by Vasishtha, 32; rites of initiation, ib.; daily attendance at school, ib.; alphabet, grammar, arts and sciences, and examinations in the council-hall, ib.; study of the Vedas, 33; studies of Bharata at Girivraja, 78.

Egg, Orphic and Brahmanical idea of, compared, 456; origin of the conception, 457; possible connection with the worship of the Linga, ib.

Egotism, the threefold, 459.

Epochs, four in the religious history of India, 411; chronology of, 418; definite chronology impossible, 419.

Evidence, false, law respecting, 610.

Families, divided and undivided, 612.

Famine in the Raj of Anga, 12; rain produced by Rishi Sringa, 13.

Food. *See* Diet.

Frogs compared with Bráhmans in a Vedic hymn, 443.

Funeral arrangements, 156; narrative of the rites performed for Mahárája Dasaratha, 172; for Jatáyus, 307; for Báli, 322.

Future state of rewards and punishments unknown in the Vedic age, 471; introduced to enforce Brahmanical laws, 472; future existences of the soul dependent upon merits and demerits, 473.

Gambling prohibited, 526.

Gandharva marriages, 504; restricted by Manu to the Kshatriyas, 505; the expression of a woman's independence, 514.

Ganesa, god of good luck, 418.

Ganges, hermitage at its junction with the Sarayú, 41; passage of Ráma and Viswámitra over the river, ib.; legend of its descent from the Himalaya mountain upon the head of Siva, and thence on the earth, 45, 46, *note*; poetical description of the river, 138; Ráma's passage over, 140; Sítá's prayer to the river, 142; passage of the army of Bharata over the river, 185.

Garura, the bird of Vishnu, 257.

Gautama, his wife Ahalyá seduced by Indra, 48; curses her, 49; Ráma frees her from the curse, ib.

Gáyatrí, including three measures, 480; meaning of, 482.

Gayatri, the holy, taught to Ráma, 33.

Geography, Vedic and Brahmanic compared, 425; of the Saraswatí river, 429.

Ghosts, belief in, 411; daily offerings to, 494; origin of the belief in, 495; popular belief in, among the Hindús, ib.; propitiation of, in the daily ritual, 497, 498; associated with the Paisácha form of marriage, 515; feasted in the Sráddhas, 518.

Girivraja, city of, 78, 163.

Godáveri river, 257.

Government, Hindú, contrast between the theory in Manu and the patriarchal and feudal types in Vedic tradition, 586; absence of patriotism and public spirit, ib.; religion the only political and national tie, 587; political system of the Bráhmans based upon fear, ib.; the Rájá, his court and ministers, 588; characteristics of Hindú sovereignty, 595; illustrations to be found in the Mahá Bhárata and Rámáyana, ib.; government of the provinces, 596; a military occupation based upon the village system, ib.; government of villages as laid down by Manu, 601; governors of cities, 602; system of taxation in return for protection, 603; ad-

ministration of justice, 605; laws of war, 613; policy to be pursued in a conquered country, 617; its failure, 618.
Grihastha, or householder, 553; obligation to marry, ib.; domestic life, 560; means of livelihood and moral conduct, ib.; respective occupations of the three twice-born castes, ib.
Guha, Raja of the Bhíls, welcomes Ráma at Sringavera, 139; his conversation with Lakshmana, 140; prepares to oppose the army of Bharata, 182; his interview with Bharata, 183; conducts Bharata's army over the Ganges, 185; his joy at hearing of Ráma's return to Ayodhyá, 387.
Gunas, or the three qualities, their creation, 458.
Guru, the, 550.

Hanuman, the chief counsellor of the Monkey chieftain Sugríva, 319; his adventures in Lanká, 326; receives the marriage ring of Ráma, 328; meets Sampáti, 329; reaches the sea, ib.; his mighty leap, 330; beholds the beautiful city of Lanká, 331; reconnoitres Lanká in the form of a cat, 332; meets with Uggra Chunda, the genius of Lanká, ib.; proceeds through the city to the palace of Rávana, 333; searches for Sítá in the inner apartments, 334; finds her in the Asoka garden, 335; the interview, 339; destroys the grove, 340; combat with Jambu-málí, ib.; slays Aksha, 341; combat with Indrajit, ib.; bound in the irresistible noose of Brahma, ib.; his tricks with the Rákshasas, 342; his appearance before Rávana, ib.; his tail set on fire, 343; returns with the Monkey army to Ráma, ib.; review of his adventures, 344; carries away the Himalaya mountain by the roots, 369; sets Lanká on fire, ib.; his adventure with Kála-nemi, 371; with Bharata at Nundigráma, ib.; carries away the Himalaya a second time, 372.
Happiness, Brahmanical disquisition on, 552.
Hermit. *See* Vánapratha.
Hermitage at the junction of the Ganges and Sarayú, 41; question of the existence of hermitages in the time of Ráma, 150; beautiful description of the hermitage of Ráma, 204; general character of, 229; picture of, 240; those of the sage Dharma-vrita, 252; of the sage Matanga, 311.
Heroic age of Hindú history, 637; meagre relics, 638.
Hindús, four epochs in their history, 407; Vedic and Brahmanic geography, 425; Rishis and Bráhmans, 435; Vedic and Brahmanic conceptions of Manu, 445; creation of the universe by Manu and Brahmá, 452; religion of the Bráhmans, 471; eight forms of marriage, 500; the Sráddha, or feast of the dead, 518; the four castes, 529; the four stages of life, 543; Hindú women, 568; government, 586; historical resumé, 619.—*See* India.
Hospitality, a religious rite, 498.
Householders. *See* Grihastha.
Husbands. *See* Marriage.

Ikshwáku, ancestor of the Rájas of Kosala, 6, 84, *note*.
Ilwala, consumed by the fire of the eye of Agastya, 253.
India, characteristics of the cold weather in, 258.
India, history of, possibility of constructing, 407; materials, ib.; Epics, Vedas, and Puranas, ib.; Buddhist legends, 408; laws of Manu, ib.; Hindú drama and poetry, ib.; Mackenzie manuscripts, ib.; miscellaneous vernacular records, ib.; inscriptions, etc., 409; history of, as distinct from that of Mussulman and British rule, ib.; religions from within, 410; importance of the history, ib.; objects of the present work, 409, *note*; emphatically a religious history, 410; four epochs, 411; chronology of the four epochs, 418; definite chronology impossible, 419; distinction between the age when the Saraswatí flowed into the Indus, and the age when it disappeared in the sand, 428; chronological interval, 432; distinctions between Rishis and Bráhmans, 445; historical significance of the compromise between Vedic and Brahmanic ideas in the code of Manu, 446; Vedic usages forbidden in the age of Kali, 491; changes in the religion between the Vedic and Brahmanic periods, 493; resumé of the ancient history, 619; first scene—the Vedic Aryans in the Punjab, 623; second scene—the Aryan conquest of Hindústan, 623-4; three phases of civilization, 624; modification of the three phases by human nature, 625; the patriarchal age, 626; the heroic age, 637; the monarchical age, 643; probable means by which the Bráhmans attained power, 656; political condition of Hindústan in the Brahmanic age, 659.
Indra, his assumed power of producing rain arrogated by the Bráhmans, 14; his presence at the Aswamedha of Dasaratha, 18; proceeds to the heaven of Brahma to complain of Rávana, ib.; conducted to the abode of Vishnu, 19; legend of the churning of the sea, 47; legend of his adultery with the wife of Garitama, 48; cursed by Gautama, 49; his luminous appearance at the hermitage of Sarabhanga, 245; legend of his tempting a sage to become a warrior, 250; his coat of mail given to Agastya and then to Ráma, 256; sends his chariot to Ráma, 374; Indra, his attributes, 437; worship of, opposed to the worship of the Maruts, 439; regarded as a creator, 452; decline of his worship in the Brahmanic age, 496; myths respecting, 641.
Indrajit, son of Rávana and conqueror of Indra, binds Hanuman in the noose of Brahma, 341; his sacrifices, 364; confines Ráma and Lakshmana in his noose, 365; slain by Lakshmana, 370; significance of his sacrifices, 378.

Jambu-malí, slain by Hanuman, 341.
Janaka, Raja of Mithilá, receives Viswámitra the sage, with Ráma and Lakshmana; 54; exhibits the great bow of Siva, ib.; his daughter Sítá promised to that Raja who could bend the bow, 55; Ráma bends the bow, ib.; the Raja invites Dasaratha to the marriage, ib.; proposes to marry his two daughters to Ráma and Lákshmana, and his two nieces to Bharata and Satrughna, 56; performs the marriage rites, 57, 59.
Jatáyus, son of Garura, allies with Ráma, 257; hears the cries of Sítá in the chariot of Rávana, 292; stops Rávana and fights desperately, 264; his death, 297; his body discovered by Ráma, 307; his funeral rites performed by Ráma, 308; meeting of his brother Sampáti with Hanuman, 329.
Jáváli, the logician, his atheistical speech to Ráma at Chitra-kúta, 211; Ráma's wrathful reply, 214; renewal of the discussion, 215; charged with Buddhism, ib.; his recantation, ib.; review of his character, 224.
Jumná, river, worshipped by Sítá, 147.
Jungle life, perils and sufferings of, described by Ráma to Sítá, 118.
Justice, administration of, 605; Brahmanizing of the old patriarchal system, ib.; conduct of the judge, 606; laws respecting property, ib.
Jyámagha, the submissive husband, legend of, 569, *note*.

Kabandha, the living mountain, his encounter with Ráma, 309; legend of, 310; counsels Ráma to ally with Sugríva, ib.
Kaikeyí, a Rání of Mahárаja Dasaratha, 11; gives birth to Bharata, 21; visit of her brother Yudhájit, 77; her joy at hearing that her son Bharata was to accompany Yudhájit to Girivraja, ib.; her intrigues, 89; description of her slave woman Mantharà, 91; her jealousy at the installation of Ráma excited by Mantharà, ib.; aroused to action, 93; runs away to the chamber of displeasure, 94; induces the Mahárаja to swear that he will grant her request, 96; demands the installation of her son Bharata and the exile of Ráma, ib.; reproached for her cruelty, 97; her remorseless obstinacy, 98; insists upon the Mahárаja keeping his word, 99; lamentations and remonstrances of the Mahárаja, ib.; review of the narrative, 101; curious Brahmanical interpolation that she required Ráma to become a religious devotee, 103; desires Sumantra to summon Ráma to the palace, 107; informs Ráma that he is to be exiled and his brother Bharata installed, 111; reproved by Sumantra, 124; her conduct intended as a warning to younger wives, 134; interview with her son Bharata after his return from Girivraja, 165; reproached by Bharata, 167; her joy at the return of Ráma, 388.
Kakshívat, the Rishi who married ten daughters of a Raja, 438, 503.
Kála-nemi, his adventure with Hanuman, 371; legend concerning, 372.
Kali age, usages prohibited in, 491.
Kálí, worship of, 417.
Kalpa, or day of Brahmá, involves the idea of eternity, 467.
Káma, god of love, 418.
Káma, the god of love, legend of his smiting Siva with his arrows, 41.
Kanouj, city of, legend of its foundation, 45, *note*.
Kártikeya, god of war, 418.
Kásyapa, grandson of Brahma, the mythical ancestor of the Rajas of Kosala, 2; Buddhist legend of, 15, *note*.
Kausalyá, a Rání of Mahárаja Dasaratha, 11; gives birth to Ráma, 21; her fondness for the infant, 29; her joy at Ráma's elevation to the post of Yuvaraja, 84; her sacrifice to Vishnu, 113; informed by Ráma of his exile, 114; her bitter lamentations, ib.; urges Ráma to seize the Raj, and slay the Mahárаja, 115; Ráma's refusal, ib.; reproaches the Mahárаja, 152; acknowledges her transgression, 154; Bharata declares to her his loyal attachment to Ráma, 169; her grief at Chitra-kúta at seeing Ráma offering a coarse cake to Dasaratha, 210.
Khara, brother of Rávana, learns from his sister Súrpa-nakhá that she has been disfigured by Lákshmana, 268; his unsuccessful wars against Ráma 269; disregards the evil omens, 270; slain by Ráma, 275.
Kishkindhyá, the Monkey city of Báli, 319.
Kosala, Raj of, 2; claim of the Rajas to be descended from the Sun and Brahma, ib.; description of the Raj, 3.
Kshatriyas, 4; alleged extirpation of, by Parasu Ráma an exaggeration of some petty local tradition, originating in the theft of a cow, 64.
Kshatriyas, conception of marriage, 502; illegal marriages tolerated, 515; significance of the law which permitted Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages to, ib.; laws against, 524; laws against flesh-meat, 526; their occupations, 560.
Kuhú, goddess of the day, 493.
Kumbha-karna, the great sleeper, his awakening and death, 367; popularity of the story, 379; a satire of the Buddhist dogma of Nirvána, ib.
Kuvera, god of wealth, 418.

Lakshmana, son of Dasaratha and Sumitrá, his birth, 21; accompanies Ráma and Viswámitra, 39; cuts off the ears and nose of Tárak,á 41; married to Urmilá, the sister of Sítá, 57; seconds the counsel of Kausalyá that Ráma should slay the Mahárаja and seize the Raj, 115; proceeds with Ráma and Sítá bare-footed to the palace, 122; attends on Ráma at the Tamasá river, 136; at Sringavera, 140; builds the hut at Chitra-kúta, 148; advises Ráma that Bharata should be slain, 203; builds a hermitage for Ráma at Panchavatí, 257; cuts off the ears and nose of Súrpa-nakhá, 267; reproached by

Sítá for not leaving her to aid Ráma, 287 ; reproached by Ráma, 306 ; accompanies Ráma in the search for Sítá, 307.
Lakshmí, the goddess of beauty, rises out of the sea, and becomes the wife of Vishnu, 47.
Lanká, the capital of Rávana's empire, 290 ; island of, 329 ; description of the city and palace, 331 ; the seven canals and walls, ib. ; reconnoitred by Hanuman, 332 ; combat between the genius of Lanká and Hanuman, 333 ; set on fire by Hanuman, 343, 369.
Lava, his birth, educated by Válmíki, 401 ; with Kusa defeats Ráma, 402 ; acknowledged by Ráma as his sons, ib.
Laws, respecting property, 606 ; miscellaneous, 608 ; neglect of land by cultivators, 611-12 ; criminal, 613 ; laws of war, ib.
Linga worship, 417 ; possibly connected with the idea of a mundane egg, 457.
Linga, worshippers of, Ráma represented as their champion, 233 ; a form of Siva, 234 ; set up by Ráma at Ramisseram, 353.
Lomapáda, Raja of Anga, sends damsels to entice Rishi Sringa from his father's hermitage, 12 ; gives his daughter in marriage to Sringa, 14.

Mackenzie manuscripts, 408.
Madhya-desa, or the middle region, 430 ; its extent, 432.
Máliavat, maternal grandfather of Rávana, counsels him to restore Sítá, 356.
Malyavana mountain, the residence of Ráma and Lakshmana during the rainy season, 319.
Mandakarni, lake of, the abode of the sage Mandakarni and five Apsaras, 251.
Mandákiní river, 149 ; Ráma's description of it, 200.
Mandara mountain, 47, 167.
Mandodarí, wife of Rávana, prevents her husband from slaying Sítá, 338 ; implores him to restore Sítá, 365 ; ill-treated by the Monkeys, 373.
Manthará, the slave nurse of the Rání Kaikeyí, 90 ; her ugliness, 91 ; attempts to excite the jealousy of Kaikeyí at the installation of Ráma, ib. ; declares that Bharata will become the slave of Ráma, 92 ; counsels Kaikeyí to persuade the Maháraja to install Bharata and exile Ráma, 93 ; reminds Kaikeyí of the two boons promised her by the Maháraja, ib. ; ill-treated by Satrughna, 167 ; released by Bharata, 168.
Mantras, or hymns, 448, 449.
Mantras, two powerful ones given by Viswámitra to Ráma, 43.
Manu, Institutes of, 408 ; a stand-point in the history of Brahmanism, 421 ; contains no references to the age of Brahmanical revival, 422 ; geography of, compared with that of the Rig-Veda, 425 ; geography of Brahmávarta mythical, but that of Brahmárshi-desa probably historical, 428 ; places the Vedic deities in subordination to Brahma, ib. ; description of Brahmávarta and Brahmárshi-desa, 430 ; Vedic conception of Manu as the first man, compared with the Brahmanic conception of a divine legislator, 445 ; associated with a legend of the deluge, ib. ; laws of a compromise between Vedic and Brahmanic ideas, 446 ; conflicting character of his authorities, ib. ; four roots of the law, 447 ; his use of the term Veda, 449 ; includes later ordinances, immemorial customs, and approval of conscience as root of the law, 449, 450 ; his spirit of toleration, 450 ; distinction between Sruti, or revelation, and Smriti, or tradition, ib. ; denunciations against Buddhists, 451 ; his code the text book of the Bráhmans, ib. ; conception of father Manu as the progenitor of men, 453 ; his cosmogony compared with that of Moses, 454 ; produced from Viraj, 460 ; his system of chronology, 463 ; his religious system both a development and a compromise, 471 ; daily invocations, 478 ; five daily sacramental rites, 487 ; of the Rishis, 488 ; of the Pitris, 492 ; of the Devatas, 493 ; of the Spirits or Ghosts, 494 ; of mortal Guests, 498 ; canon for reconciling conflicting texts in the Vedas, 491 ; his description of the eight forms of marriage, 505 ; perhaps associated with Prajápati, 511 ; tolerated Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages, 515 ; merits and demerits of the eight forms of marriage, 516 ; significance of the application of the dogma, ib. ; relative merits of different rituals offered at a Sráddha, 527 ; Vedic myth of the origin of caste distorted in the code to represent the Bráhmans as superior to the Kshatriyas, 531 ; Manu's version of the origin of caste, 532 ; caste laws, ib. ; repugnance to flesh-meat, 539 ; toleration of the usages of Kshatriyas and Vaisyas, ib. ; abstinence from lawful pleasures to be rewarded in another life, 540 ; scale of punishments for slander, ib. ; two objects of the code, viz. the establishment of a national ritual and a caste system, 543 ; system of four stages or orders in the life of every man of the twice-born castes, 544 ; the Brahmachári, or student, 544 ; the Grihastha, or householder, 553 ; the Vánaprastha, or hermit, 562 ; the Sannyási, or devotee, 563 ; disquisition on earthly happiness, 552 ; tolerates the law for raising up a son to a deceased brother, 583 ; theory of Hindú government, 586 ; references to the village system, 598, 601.
Manus, the ten, creation of, 455 ; a separate cosmogony from that of Brahmá, 461 ; chronology of their reigns, 469.
Manwantaras, chronological system of, superadded to the Brahmanic system of Kalpas, 469.
Máricha, the Rákshasa, driven into the ocean by Ráma, 44 ; dissuades Rávana from carrying away Sítá, 276 ; urgently entreated by Rávana to assist, 283 ; obeys, 284 ; assumes the form of a deer, 285 ; slain by Ráma, 286.
Marriage, the three Ránís of Maháraja

Dasaratha, 11; story of the damsels who enticed Sringa from his father's hermitage, 13; marriage of Sringa and Santá, 14; the general interest attached to marriages intensified in India, 51; the all-absorbing topic in Hindú households, ib.; paramount duty of Hindú parents to arrange the marriages of their children, ib.; transcendant interest attached to the marriage of Ráma and Sítá, 52; the story of the marriage, ib.; the marriage performed, not by Bráhmans, but by Raja Janaka, 59; the four important rites, ib.; resemblance between the ancient Aryan ceremony and the modern Christian rite, 60; modern story of Ráma's honeymoon, 65, 66; decorations of the bridal chamber, 67; Ráma and Sítá playing at dice, ib.; Ráma compares Sítá with different things in nature, 68; sports of the married pair in the pond, ib.; Ráma and Sítá drink honey together, 68; jealousies and intrigues in the zenana on the selection of a Yuvaraja, 73; the chamber of displeasure, 94; description of the zenana of Maháraja Dasaratha, 95; description of the house of Ráma, 107; picture of Ráma sitting on a couch and being fanned by Sítá, 108; duties of wives, 153; lamentations of the widows on the death of the Maháraja, 156; Hindú idea of wedded happiness, 199, 220; virtuous conduct of Ráma towards the Maháraja's women, 238; taunt of Virádha that Ráma and Lakshmana had but one wife between them, 241; evil nature of women denounced by Agastya, 256; fastidious ideas of physical chastity amongst the Hindús, 302; ancient law by which the wife of the conquered became the property of the conqueror, 298, 505; night visit of Rávana to Sítá surrounded by his women, 335.

Marriage, eight forms of, specified by Manu, 500; their historical significance, ib.; Vedic conceptions of, as expressed in the Epics, 501; marriages in a peaceful community appertaining to Rishis or Bráhmans, ib.; in a warlike community appertaining to Kshatriyas, ib.; polyandry in the Epics, 502; in the hymns of the Rig-Veda, ib.; polygamy in the Epics and the Vedic hymns, 503; the Swayamvara, ib.; Gandharva and Rákshasa marriages, 504; old Kshatriya law that a wife should submit to the conqueror of a husband, 505; list of the eight forms, ib.; four valid, 506; arbitrary distinction between the Devatas, Rishis, and Prajápatis, 507; four illegal, 513; modern marriage customs, 514, *note*; merits and demerits of the eight forms, 516; younger brothers and younger sisters not to be married before elder brothers and sisters, 524; remarriage of widows prohibited, 525; marriages between castes, 534; with a first wife of a low caste prohibited, ib.; later prohibition of all marriages between castes 535; regarded as the purification of daughters, 547; incumbent on all men. 553; regulations for producing a healthy progeny, ib.; relative ages of bridegroom and bride, 554; prohibited marriages, 555; unsuitable families, 556; unsuitable damsels, ib.; qualified damsels, 558; opposition between the Kshatriya and Brahman idea of female beauty, ib.; marriage ceremonies, 559; eleven leading rites, ib.; social condition of Hindú women, 568; marriage relations in the Vedic times, ib.; compensation to the female in the case of irregular unions, ib.; position of a damsel in a polygamous household, 569; superior authority of the legitimate wife, ib.; natural tendency to monogamy, 570; polyandry and the Swayamvara, 550; legend of a submissive husband in a polygamous age, 569, *note*; marriage relations in the Brahmanic period, 571; polyandry and the Swayamvara ignored, ib.; dependence of females upon fathers, husbands, and sons, 571-2; duty of a father to a daughter, 573; story of Ramdoolal Dey, 572, *note*; cases when a damsel might choose her own husband, 573; duties of husbands towards their wives, ib.; wives to be honoured and decorated, 574; duties of a wife, ib.; duties of a widow, 575; duties of a widower, 575-6; restrictions to be placed on women 576; vices of women, ib.; maintenance and conduct of a wife in the absence of her husband, ib.; questions as regards the period of her absence, 757; forced explanation of Kullúka, ib.; law respecting divorce, ib.; supersession of a wife by a second wife to obtain a son, 578; good wives superseded with their own consent, ib.; force of the religious obligation to beget a son, 579; amusing story of Ramdoolal Dey and his second wife, ib.; laws against adultery, 580; punishment of unfaithful wives and their paramours, 581; punishment of seducers who are Bráhmans, ib.; public women and female anchorites, ib.; question of guarded wives, 582; punishment for visiting public women and private mistresses, ib.; conduct of a Hindú towards the wives of his brother, 583; law for raising up a son to a deceased brother, ib.; modern custom of adoption, 585.

Maruts, worship of, opposed to the worship of Indra, 439; enjoined by Manu, 496.

Matanga, the sage, his hermitage on the road to Pampá, 310; teaches the name of "Ráma" to Sarvarí, 312.

Mendicant. *See* Sannyási.

Merits and demerits, dogma of, 473; future existence of the soul dependent upon, ib.; causes of the universality in the belief, 475; form of the conception in the Mosaic law, 476; iniquity of fathers visited upon children, ib.; inferior merit of duties performed in the hope of reward, 477; distinction between higher and lower motives, ib.; merits and demerits of the eight forms of marriage, 516; merits of different victuals offered at a Sraddha, 527.

Metaphysical creation taken from the Sánkhya school of philosophy, 457.
Mithilá, the modern Tirhut, 45; Ráma enters the city, 54.
Monarchical age in Hindú history, 643.
Monkeys on the Rishya-múkha mountain, 298; significance of their alleged alliance with Ráma, 315; circumstances which led to the Hindú belief in the alliance, 316; those of the Rámáyana identical with the aboriginal population of the south, 317; three hypotheses respecting the origin of the confusion, ib.; reason why the Monkey gods of the south may have been represented as fighting for Ráma, 318; nondescript character, 323; adventures in the honey-garden of Sugríva, 343; bring stones to Nala for the great bridge, 352; cross the bridge, 353; restored to life by Sushena, 369; their ill-treatment of Mandodarí, 373; entertained by Bharadwája, 387, *note*.
Monogamy, natural tendency to, 570.
Mosaic cosmogony compared with that of Manu, 454; doctrine of rewards and punishments, 475; iniquity of fathers visited upon children, 476; law as regards marriage, 516, *note*.
Muhúrtta, the Hindú hour, 464.
Müller, Professor Max, his translation of a Vedic hymn comparing the Bráhmans with frogs, 443.

Nahusha, myth respecting, 641.
Nala, builds a bridge of stone over the sea at Lanká, 352.
Nandigráma, the residence of Bharata, 219.
Navigation, regarded with horror by the Bráhmans, 526.
Nemesis, the avenging, conception of, finds expression in the story of Ráma, 89.
Nikashá, mother of Rávana, her trouble about Sítá, 352.
Nirvána, satirized in the story of Kumbhakarna, 379.
Nirvána, the Buddhist ideal of happiness, 415.
Noah, resemblance between his flood and the flood of Manu, 445.

Oaths, administration of, to different castes, 533; laws respecting, 610.
Obindhya, his advice to Rávana after Hanuman's leap, 330.
Om, its meaning, 480.
Omens, evil ones preceding the wars between Ráma and Khara, 270.
Orders, the four stages in the life of the individual, 543; the Brahmachári, or student, 544-5; the Grihastha, or householder, 553; the Vánaprastha, or hermit, 561; the Sannyási, or devotee, 563.
Orphic egg, compared with the Brahmanical egg, 457.
Oude. *See* Ayodhyá.

Paisácha marriages, 506; originated in a belief in ghosts, 515.
Pampá, description of the lake, 312.
Panchavatí, the modern Nasik, near the river Godáveri, 257; Ráma's hermitage there, ib.
Parasu Ráma, son of Jamadagni, his opposition to Ráma, the son of Dasaratha, 60; his terrible appearance during the return journey of Ráma from Mithílá, 62; challenges Ráma to break the bow of Vishnu, 62; acknowledges Ráma to be Vishnu, 63; his alleged extirpation of the Kshatriyas proved to be an exaggeration, 61; the mere hero of some petty local tradition originating in the theft of a cow, ib.
Parvatí, worship of, 417.
Patriarchal age of Hindú history, 626.
Páyasa, a sacred food of rice and milk, presented to Dasaratha, 20; distributed among the Ránís and produces conception, 21: its connection with the incarnation of deity, 23.
Physicians excluded from the Sráddha, 527.
Pindas, or cakes, offerings of, at the Sráddhas, 521.
Pitris, or spirits of ancestors, a day of, 464; daily offering of food to, 492; associated with Prajápati, 512; feasted in the Sráddha, 521.
Polyandry in the Epics, 502; traces of the custom in a hymn of the Rig-Veda, ib; similarity of the legend in the hymn to the Swayamvara of Draupadí, ib.; revolting character, 570.
Polygamy in the Epic traditions, 503; in the hymns of the Rig-Veda, ib.; position of a damsel in a polygamous household, 569; superior authority of the legitimate wife, ib.; amusing story of Jyámagha, the submissive husband, 569, *note*.
Prajápati, identified with the Supreme Spirit, 412; identified with Brahma, 413; perhaps a different conception, 511.
Prajápatya marriages, 506; distinction between them and the rite of the Bráhmans, 511.
Prayága, the modern Alláhabád, the seat of Bharadwája, 135.
Property, laws respecting, 606; neglect of land by cultivators, 611-12; divided and undivided families, 612.
Provinces, government of, 596; a military occupation based upon the village system, ib.
Pulastya, the sage, said to be the progenitor of the Rákshasas, 269.
Puránas, manuscript translations of, by Professor H. H. Wilson, 407.
Purgunnah, comprising a hundred villages, 601.
Purusha hymn, 453; Vedic myth that the four castes were created from the limbs of Purusha, 530; extracts from the hymn, 531; no Brahmanical superiority asserted in the Purusha hymn, ib.

Raja, his court and ministers, 588; Hindú ideal of one, 588, 589; divine attributes, 589; punishment his special duty, 589, 590; his daily duties, 591; public appearance, ib.; secret councils, ib.; precautions against poison and assassination, 592; his city, fort, and palace, 593; queen, priests, and ministers, 593, 594; officials, 594; characteristics of Hindú sovereignty, 595; duties in defensive warfare, 615; duties during actual operations, ib.; alliances, 616; duties in offensive warfare, ib.; policy to be pursued in a conquered country, 617.

Rajas, duties of, detailed by Ráma, 205.

Rákshasa marriages, 505; restricted by Manu to the Kshatriyas, ib.; an old war custom, 515.

Rákshasas, early wars of Ráma against, 37; confusion respecting them, ib.; regarded as ghosts, and represented as descendants from Brahman sages, and as worshippers of Brahma, ib.; origin of their opposition to the Bráhmans, 38; inquiry into the real character of the Rákshasas of the Rámáyana, 231; their empire in the south of India, 232; identified with the Buddhists, ib.; Viradha, the, Rákshasa, 241; said to be the children of Palastya, 269; popularly supposed to be able to assume new forms at will, 279.

Ráma, son of Dasaratha and Kausalyá, his birth, 21; an incarnation of Vishnu, 25; story of his life from infancy to manhood, 27; identified by Vasishtha as an incarnation of Vishnu, 29; anecdotes of his childhood, ib.; his crying for the moon, ib.; pacified by a mirror, 30; begins to talk, 31; his sports with other boys, ib.; educated by Vasishtha, 32; invested with the sacred thread, 33; becomes a Brahmachári for the day, ib.; taught the Gayatri, ib.; studies the Vedas, ib.; his early life a type of the modern Hindú, 35; goes with Viswámitra to protect the Bráhmans against the Rákshasas, 39; Viswámitra acts as his Guru, 40; arrives at the hermitage at the junction of the Ganges and Sarayú, 41; passage over the Ganges, ib.; requested by Viswámitra to slay Táraká, ib.; the combat, 42; his unwillingness to slay a woman, ib.; slays Táraká at the instigation of Viswámitra, ib.; receives divine weapons from Viswámitra, 43; his reception at the hermitage of Viswámitra at Buxar, 41; destroys the Rákshasas, ib.; proceeds with Viswámitra to the sacrifice of Janaka at Mithilá, ib.; crosses the Ganges and halts at Visálá, 46; enters the hermitage of Gautama and releases Ahalyá from a curse, 49; story of his marriage with Sítá, 51; excites the religious sympathies of Hindú families, 52; division of the story, 53; received at Mithilá by Raja Janaka, 54; bends the great bow of Siva, 55; the preliminaries, ib.; the marriage ceremony, 57; ceremonies in the inner apartments, 58; review of the narrative, 59; the marriage performed not by Bráhmans, but by Raja Janaka, ib.; opposition of Ráma, the Kshatriya, to Parasu Ráma, the Brahman, 60, 62, 64 —*see* also Parasu Ráma, modern story of Ráma's honeymoon, 65; review of the story, 69; appointed Yuvaraja, 72; jealousies and intrigues in the zenana of Dasaratha, 73; partiality of the Maháraja for Ráma, 79; his virtues, ib.; resolution to appoint him Yuvaraja, ib.; speech of the Maháraja before the great Council on the appointment of Ráma to be Yuvaraja, 80; joy of the assembly, 81; recital of Ráma's merits, ib.; his wisdom, bravery, and kind words, ib.; his truth, continence, and justice, ib.; Vasishtha directs the preparations for the installation, 82; Ráma summoned to the palace by Dasaratha, ib.; graciously received by the Maháraja, and requested to accept the post of Yuvaraja, 83; directed to keep watch until the morning, ib.; proceeds to his mother's apartments, 84; joy of Kausalyá, ib.; returns to his home, ib.; receives instructions from Vasishtha, 85; worships Vishnu, ib.; keeps watch in the temple of Vishnu, ib.; universal rejoicings, 86; acme of human felicity attained by Ráma, 89; conception of the avenging Nemesis, ib.; story of the intrigues of Kaikeyí for bringing about his exile, and the installation of her son Bharata in his room, 90; curious Brahmanical interpolation that Kaikeyí required that he should become a religious devotee, 103; modern belief in the idea, ib.; story of his visit to the palace on the morning of the installation, 105; his beautiful house, 107; picture of his sitting on a couch fanned by Sítá, ib.; accompanies Sumantra to the palace of the Maháraja, 108; acclamations of the multitude, ib.; his interview with the Maháraja and Kaikeyí, 110; his prompt and cheerful obedience, 111; control of his passions, 112; his interview with his mother Kausalyá, 113; refuses to rebel against his father, 115; his interview with Sítá, 117; yields to her entreaties, 121; proceeds barefooted to the palace, 122; puts on bark garments, 127; leaves Ayodhyá in a chariot, 129; directs Sumantra to excuse himself by a falsehood, 130; route from Ayhodyá to Bundelkund, 135; halt at the Tamasá river, 136; depart in the morning without awaking the people, 137; entertained at Sringavera by Raja Guha, 139; dismisses Sumantra, 140; becomes a devotee and dismisses Guha, 142; passage over the Ganges, ib.; reaches the hermitage of Bharadwája, 145; directed by the sage to live at Chitra-kúta, 146; passage over the Jumná, 147; arrival at Chitra-kúta, ib.; describes the beauties of Chitra-kúta to his wife Sítá, 199; describes the river Mandákiní, 230; sports with his wife Sítá on the hill, 201; hears the approach of the army of Bharata, 203; beautiful description of his hermitage, 204; his speech on the duties of Rajas, 205; demands the reason of Bharata's coming, 208; his affliction on hearing of the death of his father the Mahá-rajá, 208 ; offers water and funeral cakes to the soul of Dasaratha, 209 ; his condescension to Bharata's army, 209 ; his veneration towards his mothers and Vasishtha, 210 ; refuses to accept the Raj, 211 ; atheistical speech of Jáváli, the logician, ib. ; his wrathful reply, 214 ; renewal of the discussion, 215 ; his reply to Vasishtha, 216 ; his shoes adopted by Bharata as an emblem of his sovereignty, 218, 228 ; dismisses his brethren, ib. ; puerile character of his dialogue with Sítá, 221 ; mixture of military pursuits and religious worship involved in the description of his hut, ib. ; strained and artificial character of his dialogues with Bharata and others, 222 ; review of his interview with Jáváli, 224 ; his character as the champion of the Bráhmans against the Buddhists, 227 ; authenticity of his exile, 229 ; locality of the wanderings, ib. ; dubious existence of the sages said to be his contemporaries, 230 ; his three characters as a mortal hero, as an incarnation of Vishnu, and as a champion of the Linga worshippers, 233 ; contradiction involved, 234 ; three elements in the Rámáyana, corresponding to the three characters, ib. ; ten incidents in the narrative of the exile, 235 ; departure from Chitra-kúta, 236 ; journey to the hermitage of Atri, 237 ; praised by Sítá, 238 ; engages to defend the sages from the Rákshasas in the forest of Dándaka, 239 ; joyfully entertained by the sages, 240 ; appearance of Virádha, 241 ; agony at seeing his wife in the grasp of Virádha, 242 ; buries Virádha alive, 243 ; visit to the hermitage of Sarabhanga, 245 ; admires the chariot and horses of Indra, ib. ; sees Sarabhanga burn himself alive, 246 ; entreated by the sages to protect them against the Rákshasas, 247 ; visit to the hermitage of Sutíkshna, 248 ; visit to neighbouring sages, 249 ; dialogue with Sítá on the propriety of making war against the Rákshasas, 249 ; ten years wanderings in the neighbourhood of Sutíkshna's hermitage at Ramtek, 251 ; visits the lake where a sage is sporting with five Apsaras, ib. ; return to the hermitage of Satíkshna, 252 ; visits the sage Agastya near the Vindhya mountains, ib. ; joy of Agastya, 254 ; acknowledged as Raja of the universe, 255 ; receives divine weapons from Agastya, 256 ; resides at Panchavatí, the modern Nasik, 257 ; allies with Jatáyus, ib. ; his large hut with four rooms, ib ; his oblations to the god of dwellings, 258 ; reproves Lakshmana, 259 ; significance of his dialogue with Sítá as to his protecting the Bráhmans, 260 ; his wars respecting Súrpa-nakhá, 264 ; efforts of Súrpa-nakhá to induce him to marry her, 265 ; jests with her, 267 ; resists the attacks of her brothers, Khara and Dúshana, 269 ; his calmness, 272 ; his terrible arrows, 273 ; slays Dúshana, 274 ; slays Khara, 275 ; pursues Márícha, who has taken the form of a deer, 285 ; slays Márícha, 286 ; narrative of his search for Sítá, 306 ; his address to the moon, 307 ; discovers the body of Jatáyus, ib. ; performs funeral rites for him, 308 ; proceeds towards the south, 309 ; encounter with Kabandha, ib. ; advised by Kabandha to ally with Sugríva, 310 ; visits the hermitage of Matanga, and praises the piety of Sarvarí, 311 ; proceeds to the Pampá lake, 312 ; his name taught as a mantra, ib. ; sees Sarvarí burn herself alive, 311 ; change in his character from the divine to the human, 314 ; hypothesis that the son of Dasaratha and Linga-worshipper of the Dekhan are different individuals, 315 ; significance of his alleged alliance with the Monkeys, 315 ; reason why the monkey gods of the south may have been represented as fighting for him, 318 ; proceeds from the lake Pampá to the Rishyamúkha mountain, 319 ; received by Sugríva and Hanuman, ib. ; sees the ornaments of Sítá in the possession of Sugríva, 320 ; engages to slay Báli, ib. ; mortally wounds him, 321 ; breach of the laws of fair fighting, 324 ; marshalling of the armies on the Malyavana mountain, 326 ; gives his ring to Hanuman, 328 ; receives Sítá's jewel from Hanuman, 344 ; his genius for alliances, 349 ; narrative of his war against Rávana, 350 ; progress of the army of Monkeys and Bears towards the sea, 351 ; joined by Vibhíshana, 352 ; the building of the bridge, ib. ; worships Siva, and sets up a Linga in Ramisseram, 353 ; crosses the bridge with his army of Monkeys and Bears, ib. ; permits Rávana's spies to survey his camp, 354 ; his message to Rávana, ib. ; review of the narrative, 357 ; the Lingá, a monument of triumph, and a religious symbol, ib. ; temple to Ráma at Ramisseram, 358 ; his war against Rávana, 361 ; confined with Lakshmana in the noose of snakes, 364 ; his deliverance, 365 ; takes the field against Rávana, ib. ; orders Hanuman to fire the city of Lanká, 369 ; combat with Rávana, 370 ; final overthrow of Rávana, 374 ; his cruel words to Sítá, 383 ; her appeal, ib. ; the god Agni attests her purity, 384 ; receives her as his wife, ib. ; prepares to return to Ayodhyá, 385 ; describes his adventures to Sítá, 386 ; arrives at the hermitage of Bharadwaja, ib. ; the entertainment, 387, *note ;* preparations for his triumphant return to Ayodyhá, 388 ; meeting with Bharata, 389 ; casts aside the garb of a devotee for that of a Raja, 390 ; entry into Ayodhyá, ib. ; the installation ceremonies, 391 ; popularity of the narrative, 394 ; determines to put away Sítá, 399 ; sufferings of Sítá, 400 ; performs an Aswamedha, 402 ; acknowledges his sons, 403 ; is reconciled to his wife, Sítá, ib. ; ascends to heaven, 405.

Rámáyana, opening scene at Ayodhyá, 1 ; scarcity of early family traditions, 2 ; commencement of the poem, 3 ; spiritualized version known as the Adhyátma Rámáyana, 25 ; poetical description of autumn, 40; three elements corresponding to the three characters of Ráma, 234 ; natural conclusion of the story, 381 ; popularity of the story, 394 ; conclusion, 406.

Rambhá, the Apsara, legend of, 244.

Ramdoolal Dey, his Sráddha, 528, *note;* story of his submission to his wife, 572, *note;* conduct as regards a second wife, 579, *note.*

Rámisseram, Linga set up there by Ráma, 353 ; description of the pagoda there, 358

Rávana, Raja of the Rákshasas, rendered invulnerable by Brahma and makes the gods his slaves, 18 ; the gods complain to Brahma, ib. ; Vishnu promises to overthrow him by mortals and monkeys, 19 ; grandson of Pulastya, the son of Brahma, 37 ; hears of Ráma's slaughter of Khara and Dúshana, 276; dissuaded by his minister Márícha from carrying off Sítá, 277 ; narrative of his abduction of Sítá, 278 ; extraordinary conception of his having ten heads and twenty arms, 280; description of him, 281 ; addressed by Súrpa-nakhá, ib.; urged to carry off Sítá, 282 ; induces Márícha to take the form of a deer, 283 ; proceeds to Panchavatí, 285; visits the hermitage of Ráma, 288 ; his proposals to Sítá, 289 ; assumes his proper form, 290; carries away Sítá through the air, 291 ; his chariot stopped by Jatáyus, 296; slays Jatáyus, 297; contrast between his black complexion and the gold complexion of Sítá, 297 ; passes the Rishya-múkha mountain, 298; conducts Sítá to his palace at Lanká, ib. ; refusal of Sítá to listen to his proposals, 300; his alarm at Hanuman's leap, 330 ; his night visit to Sítá surrounded by his women, 335 ; threatens to devour her, 337 ; prevented from slaying her by his wife Mandodarí, 338 ; hears that a Monkey has destroyed his Asoka grove, 340 ; sends out successive armies and warriors to slay Hanuman, ib. ; questions Hanuman, 342 ; orders Hanuman's tail to be set on fire, 343; his Buddhist character, 347 ; his rupture with Vibhishana, who joins Ráma, 352; sends Súka and Sárana to spy out the army of Ráma, 353 ; his wrath at Ráma's message, 354 ; surveys the army of Monkeys and Bears, ib.; prepares to withstand Ráma, 356; counselled by Nikashá and Máliavat, ib.; takes the field in person, 365; entreated by his wife Mandodarí to restore Síta, ib. ; the battle, ib.; combat with Ráma, 366; awakening and death of Kumbha-karna, 367 ; shuts himself up in Lanká, 369 ; combat with Ráma, 370 ; his sacrifice with closed doors, 373 ; ill-treatment of his wife Mandodarí by the Monkeys, ib. ; his final overthrow, 374 ; lamentations of his widows, 382.

Religious history of India, four epochs of, 407, 410 ; chronology of, 418 ; laws of Manu a compromise between Vedic and Brahmanic ideas, 446; historical significance of the compromise, ib.

Religious ideas, legend of the production of rain by Rishi Sringa, 13 ; the churning of the ocean for the possession of amrita, 47; belief connected with the marriage of Ráma and Sítá as incarnations of Vishnu and Lákshmí, 52 ; curious Brahmanical interpolation that Kaikeyí desired that Ráma should become a religious devotee, 103 ; Ráma becomes a devotee, 142 ; Sítá's prayer to the river Ganges, ib. ; offerings of wine and flesh-meat to female deities, 143 ; worship of the Jumná by Sítá, 147; worship of the fig-tree, ib. ; propitiation of the god of dwellings, 148 ; atheistical speech of Jáváli, 211 ; wrathful reply of Ráma, 214 ; Buddhist tenets of Jáváli, 215; his recantation, ib. ; review of his character and arguments, 224 ; Brahma worshipped by Rávana, 232 ; Rákshasas identified as Buddhists, ib. ; Virádha preserved by the blessing of Brahma, 243 ; extraordinary description of ascetics, 247 ; legend of the devotee who was tempted by Indra to become a warrior, 250 ; Ráma's oblation to the god of dwellings, 258 ; worship of Siva by Ráma, 353 ; Linga set up by Ráma at Ramisseram, ib.; Súkra, the preceptor of the Rákshasas, 373 ; belief in the efficacy of sacrifice, 373, 377.

Religious ideas, in the Vedic age, 411 ; belief in ghosts, ib. ; rise of the Aryans from polytheism to monotheism, ib.; identification of the Supreme Spirit with Agni and Prajápati, 412; ideas in the Brahmanic age, ib.; Brahmanic religion distinct from the Vedic religion, ib. ; amalgamation of the two, ib.; doctrines of Buddhism, 414 ; existence an evil, 415 ; idea of Nirvána, ib. ; age of satiety, 416; failure of Buddhism to influence the masses, ib. ; appeal of the Bráhmans to the old gods of India, 417 ; Brahmanism a religion of the people and Buddhism a religion of the nobles, 421; worship of the Saraswatí river by the Vedic Aryans, 429 ; Vedic religion restricted generally to the present life, 435; genial character of the Vedic religion, 437 ; ascendancy of the Bráhmans secured by asceticism, 442 ; distinction between an age of spontaneous devotion and one of ritualism, 448 ; Brahmanical toleration of old usages, 450; creation of the universe—*see* Creation ; influence of the different chronological systems upon the respective religious belief of Hindús and Europeans, 469; religion of the Bráhmans described at length, 471 ; Brahmanical doctrine of rewards and punishments unknown in the Vedic age, ib.; crude conception of sin, 472 ; Brahmanical dogma of merits and demerits, 473; distinction between the religious obligations felt in Europe and those felt in India, 474 ; causes of the universality of the belief in rewards and punishments, 475 , Mosaic conception of the iniquity of fathers visited upon children, 476; inferior merit of duties performed in the hope of reward, 477 ; distinction between natural law and ecclesiastical law, ib.; distinction between higher and lower motives, ib. ; religious worship of the Bráhmans divisible into invocations and sacramental rites, 478 ; significance of the invocations as forming combinations of Three in One; ib.; meaning of Om, the Vyáhritis and the Gáyatrí, 481; the Sun identified with Brahma, 483 ; chain of conceptions involved in the worship of the Sun, 484 ; daily repetition of the invocations, 485; religious value of a daily ritual, ib.; relative effect of present and future punishment in the suppression of heresy, 486; five daily sacramental rites enjoined by Manu, 487 ; placed upon an anomalous basis, ib. ; reading of the Veda to propitiate the Rishis, 488 ; offering of food to propitiate the Pitris, 492; oblations of ghee to propitiate the Devatas, 493 ; offerings of boiled rice to propitiate spirits or ghosts, 494; hospitality in propitiation of guests, 498 ; worship of trees, 496 ; merits and demerits of the eight forms of marriage, 516; ideas involved in the Sráddha, or feast of the dead, 518 ; persons to be excluded, 522; significance of the catalogues of disqualifications, 524 ; confusion of sin and disease, ib.; prohibition of the worship of inferior gods, 525; relative merits of different victuals offered at a Sráddha, 527 ; modifications of the old Vedic belief in the Sraddha by the Bráhmans, 528 ; sacrifice of the antelope peculiar to the Vedic Aryans, 545, *note;* results of the religious training of the Brahmachári, 548 ; religious duties of the Brahmachári, 549 ; Brahmanical disquisition on earthly happiness, 552 ; austerities of the Vánaprastha, or hermit, 562 ; of the Sannyási, or devotee, 563 ; religious contemplation to obtain final beatitude, ib. ; subjects of reflection, 564 ; inferiority of material existence, 565 ; Brahmanical idea of life partially obtained from Buddhism but not from the Vedic worship, 565 ; expression of Vedic and Brahmanic ideas of life in modern humanity, 566, 567.

Religious rites, propitiation of Sustí for the purpose of pacifying children, 30 ; performance of a Sráddha before marriage, 66 ; worship of Vishnu by Kausalyá, 84 ; worship of Vishnu by Ráma, 85 ; Kausalya's sacrifice, 113; worship of Siva by Ráma, 353 ; sacrifice of Indrajit, 364—370 ; sacrifice of Rávana with closed doors, 373.

Revenue, land, 604 ; miscellaneous taxes, ib.

Rig-Veda, geography of the hymns compared with that of Manu, 425 ; geography of the Saraswatí river, 429; genial character of the ceremonial, 437 ; character of the Vedic bards, 438 ; opposition in the hymns between a peaceful and a warlike community, 439 ; between the worship of the Maruts and that of Indra, ib. ; express both fear and contempt of the Bráhmans, 442, 443 ; comparison of the Bráhmans with frogs, 443.

Rishis, distinguished from the Bráhmans, 435; religious ideas expressed in their hymns, 436 ; their popularity and power, 437 ; married the daughters of Rajas, 438 ; resembled the Hebrew psalmists, ib. ; daily propitiation of, by the study of the Veda, 488 ; conception of marriage, 501 ; marriage rite of, 505 ; difference between their rite and the rite of the Rishis, 509 ; the most ancient rite, 512.

Rishya-múkha mountain, the abode of the Monkeys, 298 ; Sugríva, the Monkey chieftain, 310, 319.

Ritwij, or sacrificer, 551.

Rumá, wife of Sugríva, 320, 323.

Sacramental rites, five daily, enjoined by Manu, 487 ; of the Rishis, 44 ; of the Pitris, 488; of the Devatas, 493 ; of the Spirits or Ghosts, 494 ; of mortal Guests, 498; review of the rites. ib.

Sacrifice, description of, at the Aswamedha of Dasaratha, 17 ; domestic sacrifice of Vishnu, 113.

Sagara, Raja, his sixty thousand sons, legend of, 46, *note*.

Saivyá, her power over her husband Jyamagha, 569, *note.*

Sákya Muni, the great teacher of Buddhism in India, 408 ; characteristics of his teachings, 414 ; existence an evil, 415.

Salutations to men of different castes, 533.

Sampáti, brother of Jatáyus, informs Hanuman that Rávana has carried Sítá to Lanká, 329.

Sánkhya philosophy expressed in the cosmogony of Manu, 457.

Sannyási, a devotee, 563 ; life of religious contemplation to obtain final beatitude, ib. ; means of subsistence, 564 ; subjects of reflection, ib. ; resemblance to the Buddhist devotees, 565.

Sarabhanga, the sage, visit of Ráma and Sítá to his hermitage, 245; visited by Indra, ib. ; burns himself alive, and ascends to the heaven of Brahma, 246.

Saramá, wife of Vibhíshana, serves Sítá, 352.

Sárana, sent by Rávana with Súka to spy upon Ráma's army, 353.

Saraswatí, goddess of learning, worshipped by school-boys, 32 ; decay in her worship consequent on the introduction of printed books, 36, *note.*

Saraswatí river, a line of separation between the Vedic and Brahmanic settlements, 425 ; distinction between the age when it flowed into the Indus, and the age when it disappeared in the sand, 428 ; geographical notices of, in the Rig-Veda, 429.

Sarayú river, the modern Gogra, 1, 3 ; holy hermitages at its junction with the Ganges, 41 ; funeral place on its bank, 174.

Sarvarí, the female disciple of Matanga, 311 ; relates her story to Ráma, ib. ; burns herself alive, 312.

Satí, rite of, 633.

Satrughna, son of Dasaratha and Sumitrá, his birth, 21; accompanies his brother Bharata to the city of Raja Aswapati, 77, 78; ill-treats Manthará, 168; restrained by Bharata, ib.; defeated and wounded by Lava and Kusa, 402.

Sávitrí, the Sun, identified with Brahma, 483.

Scythian custom resembling the rite of Sati, 634.

Sea, legend of the churning of, 47.

Sea voyages, existence of, proved by the law of Bottomry, 609.

Sersooty river, mistakes concerning, in modern geography, 431, *note*.

Sin, crude conception of, by the Vedic Aryans, 472; confounded with disease, 524.

Sítá, daughter of Janaka, Raja of Mithilá, promised in marriage to the Raja who could bend the great bow of Siva, 55; Ráma bends the bow, ib.; married to Ráma, 57; mythical story of her birth, 58; modern story of her honeymoon, 66; plays at dice with Ráma, 67; drinks honey, 68; her prayer when Ráma leaves her to be installed Yuvaraja, 108; Ráma returns from the palace and informs her of his exile, 117; declares that she will accompany him to the jungle, 118; her solemn appeal to Ráma, 119; her wrath, 120; Ráma yields to her entreaties, 121; accompanies Ráma and Lákshmana in a farewell visit to the Maháraja, ib.; weeps over the bark clothing, 127; accompanies her husband in a chariot, 129; her prayer to the river Ganges, 142; her prayer to the river Jumná and fig-tree, 147; sports with her husband Ráma on the hill Chitra-kúta, 199; episode of the tíká, 201; her interview with Anasúyá, the wife of Atri, 237; praised for her devotion to her husband, ib.; praises Ráma, 238; receives an ointment which renders her ever young and beautiful, 238; seized by Virádha the cannibal, 242; rescued by Ráma and Lakshmana, 243; reproaches Ráma for waging war against the Rákshasas, 249; attacked by Súrpa-nakhá, 267; placed in a case throughout the wars, 271, 275; entreats Ráma to pursue a beautiful deer, 285; taunts Lákshmana into leaving her, 287; addressed by Rávana, 289; her wrathful reply, 290; carried away by Rávana, 291; her cries heard by Jatáyus, 297; poetical contrast of her golden complexion with the black complexion of Rávana, ib.; her lamentations for Ráma, ib.; drops her ornaments amongst the Monkeys on Rishya-múkha, 298; conducted to the palace of Rávana, ib.; wrathfully refuses to receive the addresses of Rávana, 300; her ornaments shown to Ráma by Sugríva, 320; discovered by Hanuman in the Asoka garden at Lanká, 335; night visit of Rávana surrounded by his women, ib.; Rávana threatens to slay her, 338; threatened by the Rákshasí women, ib.; her interview with Hanuman, 339; difficulty as regards her purity after her imprisonment in the palace of Rávana, 381; narrative of her ordeal, 382; restored to Ráma, 383; cruel words of Ráma, ib.; her appeal, ib.; enters the fire, 384; the god Agni attests her purity, ib.; Ráma receives her as his wife, 385; installed as Rání, 391; gives her necklace to Hanuman, 392; story of her separation and exile, 398; her sufferings, 400; found by Válmíki, gives birth to Lava and Kusa, 401; is reconciled to Ráma, 403; questionable authenticity of the story of Sítá, 405.

Siva, the god, legend of his being smitten by the love-inspiring arrows of Káma, 41; legend of the descent of the Ganges upon his head, 45; legend of the great bow with which he destroyed the sacrifice of Daksha, 54; worshipped by Ráma, who sets up a Linga at Ramisseram, 353; worshipped in the age of Brahmanical revival, 417.

Slander, scale of punishments for, 540.

Smriti, or tradition, 450.

Soma, the moon god, daily oblation to, 493.

Spies considered necessary under Hindú government, 7, 9.

Spirits. *See* Ghosts.

Sráddha, performance of, before marriage, 56; on the death of Maharaja Dasaratha, 175; performed by Ráma, 209; curious reasoning of Jáváli against its performance, 225.

Sráddha, the daily, 492; description of the Sráddha, or feast of the dead, 518; origin of the idea, ib.; a pleasing expression of natural religion, 519; three distinct Sráddhas, ib.; ceremonies to be performed at a monthly Sráddha, 520; persons to be invited to a Sráddha, 522; persons to be excluded, ib.; significance of the catalogues of disqualifications, 524; relative merits of different victuals offered at, 527; the funeral Sráddha, ib.; modifications of the old Vedic belief in, by the Bráhmans, 528; description of the Sráduha of Ramdoolal Dey, ib., *note*.

Sringa, Rishi, legend of his never having seen a woman, 11; enticed from his father's hermitage by damsels sent by the Raja of Anga, 12; causes rain in Anga, 13; marries Sántá, the daughter of the Raja, 14; performs the Aswamedha of Maháraja Dasaratha, 16.

Sringavera, the modern Sungroor, the frontier town between Kosala and the Bhíl country, 135; Ráma and Sítá halt there, 139; halt of the army of Bharata, 182.

Sruti, or revelation, 450.

Subala mountain in the island of Lanká, 330.

Súdras, 4.

Sugríva, the Monkey chieftain on the Rishya-múkha mountain, 310; receives Ráma and Lakshmana, 319; shows Sítá's ornaments to Ráma, 320; relates the story of his grievances against Báli, ib.; proceeds to Kishkindhya, and fights Báli, 321; Bali slain by Ráma, ib.; takes the wife of Báli and is installed Raja of Kishkindhyá, 323; his neglect to assist Ráma, 326; joins Ráma with his army, ib.; adventures of the Monkeys in his honey garden, 343; his joy at their return, 344.

Súka, sent by Rávana with Sárana to spy upon the army of Ráma, 353; returns to Rávana and dismissed from his service, 355.

Súkra, the preceptor of the Rakshasas, 373.

Sumantra, chief counsellor of Maháraja Dasaratha, 6; makes known the ancient prophecy that the Aswamedha was to be performed by Rishi Sringa, 11; relates the legend of the Rishi Sringa who had never seen a woman, ib.; pacifies the infant Ráma with a mirror, 30; sent by Vasishtha to summon the Maháraja to the installation of Ráma, 106; praises the Maháraja, 107; commanded by Kaikeyí and the Maháraja to bring Ráma to the palace, ib.; brings Ráma, 108; reproaches Kaikeyí, 124; drives Ráma and Sítá out of Ayodhyá in the royal chariot, 129; returns to Ayodhyá, 140; delivers Ráma's message to Dasaratha, 152.

Sumitrá, a Rání of Maháraja Dasaratha, 11; gives birth to Lakshmana and Satrughna, 21.

Sun, identified with the Supreme Spirit, 412; identified with Brahma, 483; chain of conceptions involved in his worship, 484.

Sun-god. *See* Súrya.

Supreme Spirit, identified with the Sun, Agni, and Prajápati, 412; identified with Brahma, 483; contemplation of, by the religious devotee, 563, 564.

Sureties, law respecting, 609; its moral significance, 610.

Súrpa-nakhá, sister of Rávana, admires the beauty of Ráma, 265; her efforts to induce Ráma to marry her, ib.; advised by Ráma to marry Lakshmana, 267; rushes upon Sítá and loses her ears and nose, ib.; escapes to her brother Khara, 268; the wars between Khara and Dúshana and Ráma, 269; her angry address to Rávana, 281; urges him to carry off Sítá, ib.; curses Rávana, 374.

Súrya, or the Sun, the mythical ancestor of the Rajas of Kosala, 2.

Sushena, the physician, restores the dead Monkeys to life by herbs brought from the Himalaya mountain, 369; a second time, 372.

Sustí, the goddess, propitiated for the purpose of quieting the infant Ráma, 30.

Sutíkshna, the ascetic, visited by Ráma, Sítá, and Lakshmana, 248.

Suvahu, the Rákshasa, destroyed by Ráma, 44.

Swayamvara, associated with polyandry, 502; its origin, 503; referred to in the hymns of the Rig-Veda, 504; no allusion to it in Manu, ib.; pleasing idea involved, 570; an exaggerated expression of chivalry, 571.

Tamasá river, Ráma's encampment there, 136.

Tárá, wife of Báli, entreats her husband not to fight Sugríva, 321; her lamentations over him, 322; becomes the wife of Sugríva, 323.

Táraka, the Rakshasí, haunts the wilderness, 41; slain by Ráma at the request of Viswamitra, 42.

Taxes, system of, in return for protection, 603; assessment on yearly savings, ib.; land revenue, etc., 604.

Thread, the distinguishing symbol of the three higher castes, 529, 545.

Tíká, pressed on Ráma's breast from Sítá's forehead, 201.

Time, Hindú calculations of, 464.

Traditions, various modes of interpretation, different phases of civilization, 624.

Treasure trove, law respecting, 607.

Tree, Ingudí, encampment of Ráma and Sítá under, 139; juice of the fig tree employed to mat the hair of devotees, 142; worshipped by Sítá, 147.

Trees, daily worship of, 494; spirits of, 495.

Trijatá, the Rákshasí woman, protects Sítá, 339.

Twilight of the Vedic deities, 466.

Uggra Chunda, the genius of Lanká, her combat with Hanuman, 333.

Upádhyá, or schoolmaster, 550.

Urmilá, daughter of Janaka, married to Lakshmana, 57.

Usury, law respecting, 608.

Vaisyas, 4; their occupations, 561.

Válmíki, the author of the Rámáyana, his seat at Chitra-kúta, 135; visited by Ráma, 148; chronological difficulties connected with him, 230; finds Sítá, 401; educates her sons, ib.

Vámadeva, preceptor of Maháraja Dasaratha, 6.

Vánaprastha, life of, as described in the Vishnu Purána, 104.

Vánaprastha, or hermit, as distinguished from the Sannyási, or devotee, 561; his religious austerities, 562.

Varuna, the god of waters, advises Ráma that Nala can bridge the sea at Lanká, 352.

Váruní, the goddess of wine, rises out of the sea, 47.

Vasishtha, his satire upon the Bráhmans, 443.

Vasishtha, preceptor of Maháraja Dasaratha, 6; identifies Ráma as an incarnation of Vishnu, 29; educates Ráma and his brothers, 32; invests him with the sacred thread and teaches him the Gayatri, 33; directs the necessary preparations for the installation of Ráma as Yuvaraja, 82; his instructions to Ráma; 84; a later Brahmanical interpolation, 87; preparations on the morning of the installation, 106; sends Sumantra to summon the Maháraja, ib.; reproaches Kaikeyí, 127; his proceedings on the death of Maháraja

Dasaratha, 156; sends messengers for Bharata, 158; directs the funeral ceremonies of Maháraja Dasaratha, 172; appearance at Chitra-kúta, 210; endeavours to persuade Ráma to accept the Raj, 216; conducts the installation of Ráma after his return from exile, 391; advises Ráma, 401.

Vásuki, the serpent, 47.

Vátápi and Ilwala, legend of, 253.

Vedangas, the six, 550.

Vedas, four, corresponding to the four faces of Brahma, 447; character of the four Vedas, 447, *note;* the Mantras and Bráhmanas, 448; daily study of, in propitiation of the Rishis, 488; preparatory ceremonial, ib.; effect of the ceremonial upon the young Bráhman, 489; right of interpretation claimed by the Bráhmans, 489, 490; mode of interpretation, 490.

Vedic age, characteristics of, 411; distinct from the Brahmanic, 412; compromise between the two, ib.; deities recognized, but placed subordinate to Brahma, 413; Vedic period illustrated by the Brahmanic period, 414; appeal of the Vedic deities in the age of Brahmanical revival, 416; chronology of the Vedic age, 418; Vedic geography compared with that in the code of Manu, 425; Vedic gods identified with the Vedic Aryans, 426; inferior to Brahma, 428; Vedic psalmists as distinct from Bráhman priests, 435; Vedic religion restricted generally to the present life, ib.; genial character of the ceremonial, 437; popularity and power of the Vedic psalmists, ib.; wide interval between Vedic and Brahmanic ideas, 438; effect produced on the Vedic Aryans by the asceticism of the Bráhmans, 442; compare the Bráhmans with frogs, 443; conception of Manu compared with the Brahmanic conception, 445; idea of the creation, 452; Brahmanical doctrine of rewards and punishments unknown, 471; crude conception of sin, 472; Vedic gods included in Om, the Vyáhritis, and the Gáyatrí, 481; daily oblations of ghee to the Vedic gods, 493; Vedic conceptions of marriage as expressed in the two Epics, 501; polyandry, 502; polygamy, 503; inferior gods, 525; modifications of the old belief in the Sráddha by the Bráhmans, 528; traces of caste, 530; myth that the four castes were created from the limbs of Purusha, ib.; sacrifice of the antelope peculiar to the Vedic Aryans, 545, *note;* marriage relations in, 568; ideas of government contrasted with those in Manu, 586; absence of chronological sequence, 620.

Vedic deities, oppressed by Rávana, 18; complain to Brahma, ib.; promised relief by Vishnu, 19; become incarnate as Monkeys and Bears, 20; commanded by Vishnu to churn the sea, 47.

Vena, Raja, his fondness for women, 584.

Vibhándaka, father of the Rishi Sringa, 13.

Vibhíshana, the younger brother of Rávana, a worshipper of Vishnu, 333; interferes in behalf of Hanuman, 342; part played by him in the original tradition, 348; joins Ráma and promised the Raj of Lanká, 352; his proceedings after the death of Rávana, 382; installed Raja of Lanká, 383.

Village, the Hindú, comprising both a district and a town, 596; village communities, 597; officials, ib.; assemblies, ib.; emoluments of village officials, 598; antiquity and permanence of the system, ib.; law respecting the surrounding pasture land, 599; boundaries and land-marks, 600; investigation of disputes, ib.; government of, as laid down by Manu, 601.

Vinasana, or disappearance of the Saraswatí, a land-mark adopted by Manu, 428.

Virádha, the cannibal Rákshasa, his horrible appearance, 241; taunts Ráma and Lakshmana with having only one wife, ib.; preserved from slaughter by the blessing of Brahma, 243; buried alive, ib.; legend respecting, 244.

Viráj, produced from Brahmá, 460; progenitor of Manu, ib.

Visálá, Raja of, welcomes the arrival of Ráma and Lakshmana, 48.

Vishnu, appears from the sea of milk, and promises to relieve the Vedic deities from the oppression of Rávana, 19; promises to become incarnate as the four sons of Dasaratha, 20; becomes incarnate through the agency of páyasa, 23; distinguishing marks of, 29; legend of his taking three steps in the Dwarf incarnation for the destruction of Bali, 43; desires Indra and the gods to churn the sea for amrita, 47; the goddess Lakshmí rises from the sea and becomes his wife, ib.; gives the amrita to Indra and the gods, 48; propitiated by Kausalyá, 84; worshipped by Ráma, 85; dubious stress laid upon his worship, 87; sacrifices of Kausalyá, 113; character of Ráma as an incarnation of, 233; bow of, 256.

Vishnu, worshipped in the age of Brahmanical revival, 417.

Viswakarma, the architect of the gods, provides Bharadwája with the means of entertaining the army of Bharata, 186.

Viswámitra, son of Gádhi, his visit to Mahéraja Dasaratha, 38; originally a Kshatriya, 39; requests that Ráma may be sent to protect his Brahmanical settlement against the Rákshasas, ib.; Ráma and Lakshmana permitted to accompany him, ib.; acts as Guru to Ráma, 40; commands Ráma to slay Táraká, 41; removes his scruples about killing a woman, 42; presents divine weapons and mantras to Ráma, 43; conducts Ráma and Lakshmana to his hermitage, ib.; his anomalous character, 49; probably a Buddhist Kshatriya who had become a Bráhman, ib. *note;* accompanies Ráma and Lakshmana to Mithilá, 54—56; proceeds to the Himalaya mountain, 61.

Vyáhritis, comprising earth, sky, and heaven, 480; meaning of, 481.

War, fortifications of Ayodhyá, 4.
War, laws of, 613; duties of a Raja in defensive warfare, 615; duties during actual operations, ib.; alliances, 616; duties in offensive warfare, ib.; policy to be pursued in a conquered country, 617.
Weapons, divine, given by Viswámitra to Ráma, 43; the great bow of Siva, 54; the great bow of Vishnu, 62; divine, given by Agastya to Rámá, 256.
Widows. *See* Marriage.
Winter, poetical description of, 258.
Witnesses of different castes, examination of, 533, *note*.
Women, their social condition amongst the Hindús, 568. *See* Marriage.
Yudhájit, brother of Kaikeyí, entertained by Mahárája Dasaratha, 77; returns to the city of Girivraja, accompanied by Bharata and Satrughna, ib.
Yugas, or ages, four, 465; simplicity of the conception involved, 465, 466; the Mahá Yuga, or great age, 466.
Yuvaraja, appointment of the heir-apparent during the life-time of a Raja, 72; threefold object of the custom, ib.; jealousies excited in the zenana, 73; palace intrigues, 76; narrative of the appointment of Ráma, 77; joy of Kausalyá, 84; Vasishtha's directions to Ráma, 85; general rejoicings, 86.

INDIA OF THE VEDIC AGE

With Reference to the Mahabharata

By **J. Talboys Wheeler**

This volume under the Cultural History of Indian Civilization comprises the Vedic period, and the traditions preserved in the Mahabharata. It should be remarked that the primary object of the author is not so much to draw up a history of the literature and the religion of the Hindus, or to exhibit the results of comperative philology, as to delineate the civilization & institution of the people of India.

The book deals exhaustivly with the Aryan worship of the Vedic deities, their ways of the day to day life etc.; and their early conflicts with the original aborigines of India such as Dasyus, Asures, Krishuas and the Pisachis, Danavas & Daityas etc., etc. The book will be found of immence value by the scholars and students of comperative philology and social and political history of the Vedic times.

Rs. 75.00

THE CHRONOLOGY OF INDIAN HISTORY

From the Earliest Times to the Beginning of the 16th century.

C. Mabel Duff

This is a most important work of reference containing the principal *FASTI* of Indian history from 3102 B. C. to the sixteenth century. Based on a careful and critical study of the original source Material, it attempts a scientific and objective assessment of the main process of historical development in India from the time immemorial.

The book is based on the famous historical works of Dr. J. Mc Crindle, Dr. M. Stein, Dr. Buhler & the authority of the travels of Fa-Hein, Hiuen-Tsang and I-tsing and the numerous Sanskrit MSS.

Rs. 65.00

THE CHRONOLOGY OF INDIAN HISTORY

MEDIEVAL & MODERN

James Burgess

This volume forms the complement to the other book by C. Mabel Duff, both of which forms a continues chronology of the events of civil and literary history of India from the earliest times till the end of the ninteenth century. The present volume covers the events of history from the Lodi to Mughal dynesty down to the close of the ninteenth century.

This book alongwith Mabel Duff's work makes an excellent work of reference.

Rs. 65.00

THE INDIAN VILLAGE COMMUNITY

With Special Reference to the Physical,
Ethnographic and Historical conditions of India.

B. H. Baden-Powell

The Indian Village Community is still the pivotal institution in rural Indian Society and a picture is given in this book of the way this institution has developed in its present form from the Pre-Aryan times. This work does not confine itself to Aryan but Non-Aryan races also and their Customs, Cults, Beliefs, Religious practices alongwith land systems and Economy etc.

In great details are discussed the Tibeto-Burman, The Kolarian, Dravidian, Aryans, the Indo-Scythic, the Northern Tribes and the invading Turki, Pathans and the Mughals and their effect on the over all development of Indian Village and their integeration with the local communities.

Rs. 65.00

COSMO PUBLICATIONS
10178, Library Road, DELHI-6 (INDIA)